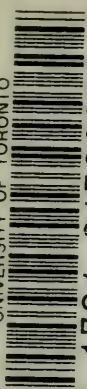


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01563950 3













864

46

6958

The Lay of  
Havelok the Dane.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. IV.

1868.

DUBLIN: WILLIAM MCGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET.  
EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.  
GLASGOW: OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.  
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 20.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.  
BOSTON, U.S.: DUTTON & CO.

# The Lay of Havelok the Dane:

COMPOSED IN THE REIGN OF EDWARD I, ABOUT A.D. 1280.

FORMERLY EDITED BY SIR F. MADDEN FOR THE ROXBURGHE CL

AND NOW RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. LAUD MISC. 108,  
IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD ;

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,

AUTHOR OF "A MÆSO-GOTHIC GLOSSARY," EDITOR OF "PIERS PLOWMAN,"  
"WILLIAM OF PALERNE," &c.



LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXVIII.

PR  
2065  
H3  
1868

18413  
21291

6

Extra Series,

IV.

---

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.







## P R E F A C E.

§ 1. THE English version of the Lay of Havelok, now here reprinted, is one of the few poems that have happily been recovered, after having long been given up as lost. Tyrwhitt, in his Essay on the Language and Versification of Chaucer, has a footnote (No. 51) deploring the loss of the Rime concerning Gryme the Fisher, the founder of Grymesby, Hanelok [*read* Havelok] the Dane, and his wife Goldborough; and Ritson, in his Dissertation on Romance and Minstrelsy—(vol. i. p. lxxxviii. of his Metrical Romanceës)—makes remarks to the same effect. It was at length, however, discovered by accident in a manuscript belonging to the Bodleian library, which had been described in the old Catalogue merely as *Vitæ Sanctorum*, a large portion of it being occupied by metrical legends of the Saints. In 1828, it was edited for the Roxburghe Club by Sir F. Madden, the title-page of the edition being as follows:—"The Ancient English Romance of Havelok the Dane, accompanied by the French Text: with an introduction, notes, and a glossary, by Frederick Madden, Esq., F.A.S. F.R.S.L., Sub-Keeper of the MSS. in the British Museum. Printed for the Roxburghe Club, London. W. Nicol, Shakspeare Press, MDCCCXXVIII." This volume contains a very complete Introduction, pp. i—lvi; the English version of Havelok, pp. 1—104; the French text of the Romance of Havelok, from a MS. in the Heralds' College, pp. 105—146; the French Romance of Havelok, as abridged and altered by Geffrei Gaimar, pp. 147—180; notes to the English text, pp. 181—207; notes to the French

text, pp. 208—210; and a glossary, &c., pp. 211—263. But there are sometimes bound up with it two pamphlets, viz. “Remarks on the Glossary to Havelok,” by S. W. Singer, and an “Examination of the Remarks, &c.,” by the Editor of Havelok. In explanation of this, it may suffice to say, that the former contains some criticisms by Mr Singer (executed in a manner suggestive of an officious wish to display superior critical acumen), of which a few are correct, but others are ludicrously false; whilst the latter is a vindication of the general correctness of the explanations given, and contains, incidentally, some valuable contributions to our general etymological knowledge, and various remarks which have proved of service in rendering the glossary in the present edition more exactly accurate.<sup>1</sup>

§ 2. Owing to the scarcity of copies of this former edition, the committee of the Early English Text Society, having first obtained the approval of Sir Frederic Madden, resolved upon issuing a reprint of it; and Sir Frederic having expressed a wish that the duty of seeing it through the press should be entrusted to myself, I gladly undertook that responsibility. He has kindly looked over the revises of the whole work,<sup>2</sup> but as it has undergone several modifications, it will be the best plan to state in detail what these are.

§ 3. With respect to the text, the greatest care has been taken to render it, as nearly as can be represented in print, an exact copy of the MS. The text of the former edition is exceedingly correct, and the alterations here made are few and of slight importance. Sir F. Madden furnished me with some, the results of a re-comparison, made by himself, of his printed copy with the original; besides this, I have myself carefully read the proof sheets with the MS. *twice*, and it may therefore be assumed that the complete correctness of the text is established. It seems to me that this is altogether the most important part of the work

<sup>1</sup> In particular, we find there a complete proof, supported by some fifty examples, that, *as* can be traced, through the forms *ase*, *als*, *alse*, *also*, to the A.S. *eall-scea*; a proof, that in the difficult phrase *lond and lithe*, the word *lithe* [also spelt *lede*, *lude*] is equivalent to the French *tenement*, *rente*, or *fe*; and, thirdly, a complete refutation of Mr Singer's extraordinary notion that the adverb *æcith* means *a sword*!

<sup>2</sup> In the same way, *William of Palerne* was prepared by me for the press, subject to his advice; see *William of Palerne*, Introduction, p. ii.

of a *Text Society*, in order that the student may never be perplexed by the appearance of words having no real existence. For a like reason the letters þ and p (the latter of which I have represented by an italic *w*) have now been inserted wherever they occur, and the expansions of abbreviations are now denoted by italics. For further remarks upon the text, see the description of the MS. below, § 26. Sidenotes and headlines have been added, but the numbering of the lines has not been altered. The French text of the romance, the title of which is *Le Lai de Aveloc*, and the abridgment of the story by Geffrei Gaimar, have not been here reprinted; the fact being, that the French and English versions differ very widely, and that the passages of the French which really correspond to the English are few and short. *All* of these will be found in the Notes, in their proper places, and it was also deemed the less necessary to print the French text, because it is tolerably accessible; for it may be found either in vol. i. of *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, ed. Petrie, 1848, in the reprint by M. Michel (1833) entitled "*Le Lai d'Havelok*," or in the edition by Mr T. Wright for the Caxton Society, 1850. An abstract of it is given at p. xxiii. The Notes are abridged from Sir F. Madden's, with but a very few additions by myself, which are distinguished by being placed within square brackets. The Glossarial Index is, for the most part, reprinted from Sir F. Madden's Glossary, but contains a large number of *slight* alterations, re-arrangements, and additions. The references have nearly all been verified,<sup>1</sup> and the few words formerly left unexplained are now either wholly or partially solved. I have now only to add that a large portion of the remainder of this preface, especially that which concerns the historical and traditional evidences of the story (§ 4 to § 18), is abridged or copied from Sir F. Madden's long Introduction, which fairly exhausts the subject.<sup>2</sup> All extracts included between marks of quotation are taken from it without alteration. But I must be considered responsible for the re-

<sup>1</sup> I say *nearly*, because I have not been able to verify *every* reference to *every* poem quoted. I have verified and critically examined all the citations from the *poem itself*, from Ritson's Romances, Weber's Romances, Layamon, Beowulf, Chaucer, Langland, and Sir Walter Scott's edition of Sir Tristrem (3rd edition, 1811).

<sup>2</sup> To this, the reader is referred for fuller information.



arrangement of the materials, and I have added a few remarks from other sources.

§ 4. NOTICES OF THE STORY OF HAVELOK BY EARLY WRITERS. There can be little doubt that the tradition must have existed from Anglo-Saxon times, but the earliest mention of it is presented to us in the full account furnished by the French version of the Romance. Of this there are two copies, one of which belongs to Sir T. Phillipps; the other is known as the Arundel or Norfolk MS., and is preserved in the Heralds' College, where it is marked E. D. N. No. 14; the various editions of the latter have been already enumerated in § 3. This version was certainly composed within the first half of the twelfth century. From the fact that it is entitled a *Lai*, and from the assertion of the poet—"Qe vn lai en firent li Breton"—"whereof the Britons made a lay"—we easily conclude that it was drawn from a British source. From the evident connection of the story with the Chronicle called the *Brut*, we may further conclude that by *Breton* is not meant Armorican, but belonging to *Britain*. The story is in no way connected with France; the tradition is British or Welsh, and the French version was doubtless written in England by a subject of an English king. That the language is French is due merely to the accident that the Norman conquerors of England had acquired that language during their temporary sojourn in France. From every point of view, whether we regard the British tradition, the Anglo-Norman version, or the version printed in the present volume, the story is wholly English. It is not to be connected too closely with the Armorican lays of *Marie de France*.<sup>1</sup>

§ 5. We next come to the abridgment of the same as made by Geffrei Gaimar, who wrote between the years 1141 and 1151. In one place, Geffrei quotes Gildas as his authority, but no conclusion can easily be drawn from this indefinite reference. In another place, he mentions a feast given by Havelok after his defeat of Hodulf—*si cum nus dit la verai estoire*—"as the true

<sup>1</sup> "The word Breton, which some critics refer to Armorica, is here applied to a story of mere English birth." Hallam; *Lit. of Europe*, 6th ed. 1860; vol. i. p. 36. See the whole passage.

history tells us." As this feast is not mentioned in the fuller French version, and yet reappears in the English text, we perceive that he had some additional source of information; and this is confirmed by the fact that he mentions several additional details, also not found in the completer version. That the lay of Havelok, as found in Gaimar, is really his, and not an interpolation by a later hand, may fairly be inferred from his repeated allusions to the story in the body of his work. There are three MS. copies containing Gaimar's abridgment, of which the best is the Royal MS. (Bibl. Reg. 13 A xxi.) in the British Museum; the two others belong respectively to the Dean and Chapter of Durham (its mark being C. iv. 27) and to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln (its mark being H. 18). It is curious that the Norfolk MS. contains not only the fuller French version of the story, but also the Brut of Wace, and the continuation of it by Gaimar. Gaimar's abridgment, as printed in Sir F. Madden's edition, is taken from the Royal MS., supplemented by the Durham and Lincoln MSS. See also *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, vol. i. p. 764. It is important to mention that Gaimar speaks of the Danes as having been in Norfolk since the time that Havelok was King, after he has been relating the combats between the Britons and the Saxons under the command of Cerdic and Cynric. Another allusion makes Havelok to have lived long before the year 800, according to every system of chronology. (✓)

§ 6. The next mention of Havelok is in the French Chronicle of Peter de Langtoft, of Langtoft in Yorkshire, who died early in the reign of Edward II., and whose Chronicle closes with the death of Edward I. Here the only trace of the story is in the mention of "Gountere le pere Hauelok, de Danays Ray clamez"—Gunter, father of Havelok, called King of the Danes. The allusion is almost valueless from its evident absurdity; for he confounds Gunter with the Danish invader defeated by Alfred, and who is variously called Godrum, Gudrum, Guthrum, or Gurmound. He must have been thinking, at the moment, of a very different Gurmund, viz. the King of the Africans, as he is curiously called, whose terrible devastations are described very fully in *Lazamon*, vol. iii. pp. 156—177, and who may fairly be supposed to have lived much nearer to the time of Havelok; and he must further

have confounded this Gurmund with Gunter. For the account of Robert of Brunne's translation of Langtoft's Chronicle, see below, § 10.

§ 7. But soon after this, we come to a most curious account. In MS. Harl. 902 is a late copy, on paper, of a Chronicle called *Le Bruit Dengleterre*, or otherwise *Le Petit Bruit*, compiled A. D. 1310, by Meistre Rauf de Boun, at the request of Henry de Lacy, earl of Lincoln. It is a most worthless compilation, put together in defiance of all chronology, but with respect to our present inquiry it is full of interest, as it soon becomes obvious that one of his sources of information is the very English version here printed, which he cites by the name of *l'estorie de Grimesby*, and which is thus proved to have been written before the year 1310. "The Chronicler," says Sir F. Madden, "commences, as usual, with Brute, B. C. 2000, and after taking us through the succeeding reigns to the time of Cassibelin, who fought with Julius Cæsar, informs us, that after Cassibelin's death came Gurmound out of Denmark, who claimed the throne as the son of the eldest daughter of Belin, married to Thorand, King of Denmark. He occupies the kingdom 57 years, and is at length slain at *Hunteton*, called afterwards from him *Gurmoundcestre*. He is succeeded by his son Frederick, who hated the English, and filled his court with Danish nobles, but who is at last driven out of the country, after having held it for the short space of 71 years. And then, adds this miserable History-monger: 'Et si entendrez vous, que par cel primer venue de auant dit Roy Gormound, et puis par cele hountoux exil de son fitz Frederik, si fu le rancour de Daneis vers nous enpendaunt, et le regne par cel primere accion vers nous enchalangount plus de sept C auns apre, *iekis a la venue Haneloke, fitz le Roy Birkenebayne de Dannemarche, q̃ le regne par mariage entra de sa femme.*'—f. 2 b.

"After a variety of equally credible stories, we come to Adelstan II.<sup>1</sup> son of Edward [the Elder], who corresponds with

<sup>1</sup> "The Chronicler writes of him, f. 6. 'Il feu le plus beau bacheleir qe vnques reigna en Engleterre, *ceo dit le Bruit*, par quoy ly lays ly apellerunt *King Adelstane with gilden kroket*, pour ce q'il feu si beaus.' We have here notice of another of those curious historical poems, the loss of which can never

the real king of that name, A. D. 925—941. He is succeeded by his son [brother] Edmund, who reigned four years [A. D. 941—946], and is said to have been *poisoned* at Canterbury; after whom we have ADELWOLD, whose identity with the Athelwold of the English Romance, will leave no doubt as to the source whence the writer drew great part of his materials in the following passage :

Après ceo vient Adelwold son fitz q̃ reigna xvj et demie, si engendroit ij feiz et iij filis, dount trestoutz murrissent frechement fors q̃ sa pune file, le out a nom *Goldburgh*, del age de vj aunz kaunt son pere Adelwold morust. Cely Roy Adelwold quant il doit morir, comaunda sa file a garder a vn Count de Cornewayle, al heure kaunt il quidouïe (sic) hountousment auoir deparagé, quaunt fit *Haeloke*, fitz le Roy Byrkenbayne de Denmarche, esposer le, encountre sa volonté, q̃ primis fuit Roy Dengleterre et de Denmarch tout a vn foitz, par quele aliaunce leis Daneis queillerunt gendr̃ (sic) mestrie en Engleterre, et long temps puise le tindrunt, *si cum vous nouncie l'estorie de Grimesby*, come *Grime* primez nurist Haeloke en Engleterre, depuis cel heure q'il feut chasé de Denmarche &c. deqis al heure q'il vint au chastelle de Nichole, q̃ cely auaunt dit traître *Goudriche* out en garde, en quel chastel il auaunt dit Haeloke espousa l'auaunt dit Goldeburgh, q̃ fuit heir Dengleterre. Et par cel reson tynt cely Haeloke la terre de Denmarche auxi comme son heritage, et Engleterre auxi par mariage de sa femme; et si entendrez vous, q̃ par la reson q̃ ly auaunt dit Gryme ariua primez, kaunt il amena l'enfaunt Haeloke hors de Denmarche, par meyme la reson resent cele vile son nom, de Grime, quel noun ly tint vnquore Grimisby.

'Après ceo regna meyme cely Haeloke, q̃ mult fuit prodhomme, et droiturelle, et bien demenoit son people en reson et ley. Cel Roy Haeloke reigna xlj. aunz, si engendroit ix fitz et vij filis, dount trestoutz murrerount ainz q̃ furunt d'age, fors seulement iiij de ses feitz, dont l'un out a noun *Gurmound*, cely q̃ entendy auoir son heire en Engleterre; le secound out a noun *Knout*, quen fitz feffoit son pere en le regne de Denmarche, quant il estoit del age de xvij aunz, et ly mesme se tynt a la coroune Dengleterre, quel terre il entendy al oeps son ainez fitz *Gurmound*

be sufficiently deplored. The term *crochet* (derived by Skinner from the Fr. *crochet*, *uncinulus*) points out the period of the poem's composition, since the fashion alluded to of wearing those large rolls of hair so called, only arose at the latter end of Hen. III. reign, and continued through the reign of Edw. I. and part of his successor's."



auoir gardé. Mes il debusa son col auxi comme il feu mounté vn cheval testous q̃ poindre volleyt, en l'an de son regne xxiiij entrant. Le tiers fitz ont a noun Godard, q̃ son pere feffoit de la Seneschacie Dengleterre, q̃ n'auoūt (sic) taunt come ore fait ly quart. Et le puisnez fitz de toutz out a noun Thorand, q̃ espousa la Countesse de Hertouwe en Norway. Et par la reson q̃ cely Thorand feut enherité en la terre de Norway, ly et ses successors sont enheritez iekis en sa p̃ee (sic) toutdis, puis y auoit affinité de alliaunce entre ceulx de Denmarche et ceulx de Norway, a checun venue q̃ vnkes firent en ceste terre pur chalenge ou clayme mettre, iekis a taunt q̃ lour accion feut enseyne destrut par vn noble chevallere *Guy de Warwike*, &c. Et tout en sy feffoit Haueloke sez quatre fitz : si gist a priorie de *Grescherche* en Loundrez.'—f. 6 b.

"The *Estorie de Grimesby* therefore, referred to above, is the identical English Romance before us, and it is no less worthy of remark, that the whole of the passage just quoted, with one single variation of import, has been literally translated by Henry de Knyghton, and inserted in his Chronicle.<sup>1</sup> Of the sources whence the information respecting Havelok's sons is derived, we are unable to offer any account, as no trace of it occurs either in the French or English texts of the story."

§ 8. "About the same time at which Rauf de Boun composed his Chronicle, was written a brief Genealogy of the British and Saxon Kings, from Brutus to Edward II., preserved in the same MS. in the Heralds' College which contains the French text of the Romance. The following curious rubric is prefixed:—*La lignée des Bretons et des Engleis, queus il furent, et de queus nons, et coment Brut vint premerement en Engleterre, et combien de tens puis, et dont il vint. Brut et Cornelius furent chevalers chacez de la bataille de Troie, m. cccc. xvii. anz deuant qe dieus nasquit, et vindrent en Engleterre, en Cornewaille, et riens ne fut trouee en la terre fors qe geanz, Geomagog, Hastripoldius, Ruscalbundy, et plusurs autres Geanz.* In this Genealogy no mention of Havelok occurs under the reign of Constantine, but after the names of the Saxon Kings Edbright and Edelwin, we read: 'ATHELWOLD auoit vne fille *Goldeburgh*, et il regna vi. anz. HAUelok esposa meisme

<sup>1</sup> See below, § 16.



cele Goldeburgh, et regna iij. anz. ALFRED le frere le Roi Athelwold enchaca Haeloc par Hunehere, et il fut le primer Roi corone de l'apostolle, et il regna xxx. anz.'—fol. 148 b. By this account Athelwold is clearly identified with Ethelbald, King of Wessex, who reigned from 855 to 860, whilst Havelok is substituted in the place of Ethelbert and Ethered."

§ 9. "Not long after the same period was written a Metrical *Chronicle of England*, printed by Ritson, Metr. Rom. V. ii. p. 270. Two copies are known to exist,<sup>1</sup> the first concluding with the death of Piers Gavestone, in 1313 (MS. Reg. 12. C. xii.), and the other continued to the time of Edw. III. (Auchinleck MS.). The period of Havelok's descent into England is there ascribed to the reign of King Ethelred (978—1016), which will very nearly coincide with the period assigned by Rauf de Boun, viz. A. D. 963—1004."

' *Haeloc* com tho to this lond,  
With gret host & eke strong,  
Ant sloh the Kyng Achelred,  
At Westmustre he was ded,  
Ah he heuede reigned her  
Seuene an tuenti fulle 3er.

MS. Reg. 12. C. xii.'

"This date differs from most of the others, and appears founded on the general notion of the Danish invasions during that period."

§ 10. Before proceeding to consider the *prose* Chronicle of the Brute, it is better to speak first of the translation of Peter de Langtoft's Chronicle by Robert of Brunne, a translation which was completed A. D. 1338. At p. 25 of Hearne's edition is the following passage :

'3it a nother Danes Kyng in the North gan aryue.  
Alfrid it herd, thidere gan he dryue.  
*Haelok* <sup>2</sup> fader he was, *Gunter* was his name.  
He brent citees & tounes, ouer alle did he schame.  
Saynt Cutbertes clerkes tho Danes thei dred.  
The toke the holy bones, about thei tham led.

<sup>1</sup> The poems in MSS. Camb. Univ. Lib. Ff. 5. 48 and Dd. 14. 2 resemble this Chronicle, but do not mention Havelok's name.

<sup>2</sup> *Hanelok* in Hearne, throughout, but undoubtedly *contra fidem* MSS.

Seuen ȝere thorgh the land wer thei born aboute,  
 It comforted the kyng mykelle, whan he was in doute  
 ¶ Whan Alfrid & Gunter had werred long in ille,  
 Thorgh the grace of God, Gunter turned his wille.  
 Cristend wild he be, the kyng of fonte him lift,  
 & thritty of his knyghtes turnes, thorgh Godes gift.  
 Tho that first were foos, and com of paien lay,  
 Of Cristen men haf los, & so thei wend away.'

"This is the whole that appears in the original, but after the above lines immediately follows, in the language of Robert of Brunne himself (as noted also by Hearne, Pref. p. lxxvii.), the following curious, and to our inquiry, very important passage: "

'Bot I haf grete ferly, that I fynd no man,  
 That has writen in story, how Hauelok this lond wan.  
 Noither *Gildas*, no Bede, no Henry of Huntinton,  
 No William of Malmesbiri, ne Pers of Bridlynton,  
 Writes not in ther bokes of no kyng Athelwold,  
 Ne Goldeburgh his douhtere, ne Hauelok not of told,  
 Whilk tyme the were kynges, long or now late,  
 Thei mak no menyng whan, no in what date.  
 Bot that thise *lowed men vpon English tellis*,  
 Right story can me not ken, the certeynte what spellis. /  
 Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges ȝit a stone,  
 That Hauelok kast wele forbi euer ilkone  
 & ȝit the chapelle standes, ther he weddid his wife,  
 Goldeburgh the kynges douhter, *that saw is ȝit rife*.  
 & of Gryme a fissue, *men redes ȝit in ryme*,  
 That he bigged Grymesby Gryme that ilk tyme.  
 Of alle stories of honoure, that I haf thorgh souht,  
 I fynd that no compiloure of him tellis ouht.  
 Sen I fynd non redy, that tellis of Hauelok kynde  
 Turne we to that story, that we writen fynde.'

"There cannot exist the smallest doubt, that by the 'Ryme' here mentioned 'that lowed men vpon English tellis,' the identical English Romance, now before the reader, is referred to. It must therefore certainly have been composed prior to the period at which Robert of Brunne wrote,<sup>1</sup> in whose time the traditions respecting Havelok at Lincoln were so strongly preserved, as to

<sup>1</sup> This proof is rendered unnecessary by the citations from it by Rauf de Boun in 1310, and by the age of our MS. itself.

point out various localities to which the story had affixed a name, and similar traditions connected with the legend, as we shall find hereafter, existed also at Grimsby. The doubts expressed by the Chronicler, as to their authenticity, or the authority of the 'Ryme,' are curious, but only of value so far as they prove he was ignorant of the existence of a French Romance on the subject, or of its reception in Gaimar's historical poem."

§ 11. "But on consulting the Lambeth copy of Rob. of Brunne, in order to verify the passage as printed by Hearne from the Inner Temple MS. we were not a little surprised to ascertain a fact hitherto overlooked, and indeed unknown, viz. that the Lambeth MS. (which is a folio, written on paper, and imperfect both at the beginning and close)<sup>1</sup> does not correspond with the Edition, but has evidently been revised by a later hand, which has abridged the Prologues, omitted some passages, and inserted others. The strongest proof of this exists in the passage before us, in which the Lambeth MS. entirely omits the lines of Rob. of Brunne respecting the authenticity of the story of Havelok, and in their place substitutes an abridged outline of the story itself, copied apparently from the French Chronicle of Gaimar. The interpolation is so curious, and so connected with our inquiry, as to be a sufficient apology for introducing it here."

¶ Forth wente Gounter & his folk, al in to Denemark,  
 Sone fel ther hym vpon, a werre styth & stark,  
 Thurgh a Breton kyng, th<sup>t</sup> out of Ingeland cam,  
 & asked the tribut of Denmark, th<sup>t</sup> Arthur whylom nam.  
 They wythseide hit schortly, & non wolde they zelde,  
 But rather they wolde dereyne hit, wyth bataill y the felde.  
 Both partis on a day, to felde come they stronge,  
 Desconfit were the danes, Gounter his deth gan fonge.  
 When he was ded they schope brynge, al his blod to schame,  
 But Gatferes doughter the kyng, *Eleyne* was hure name,  
 Was kyng Gounteres wyf, and had a child hem bytwene,  
 Wyth wham scheo scapede vnethe, al to the se with tene.  
 The child hym highte HAUelok, th<sup>t</sup> was his moder dere,  
 Scheo mette with grym atte hauene, a wel god marinere,

<sup>1</sup> The writing in the earlier portion (concerning Havelok) is hardly later than A.D. 1400.

He hure knew & highte hure wel, to helpe hure with his might,  
 To bryng hure saf out of the lond, wythinne th<sup>t</sup> ilke night.  
 When they come in myd se, a gret meschef gan falle,  
 They metten wyth a gret schip, lade wyth outlawes alle.  
 Anon they fullen hem apon, & dide hem Mikel peyne,  
 So th<sup>t</sup> wyth strengthe of their assaut, ded was quene Eleyne.  
 But 3yt ascapede from hem Grym, wyth Hauelok & other fyue,  
 & atte the hauene of Grymesby, ther they gon aryue.  
 Ther was brought forth child Hauelok, wyth Grym & his fere,  
 Right als hit hadde be ther own, for other wyste men nere.  
 Til he was mykel & mighti, & man of mykel cost,  
 Th<sup>t</sup> for his grete sustinaunce, nedly serue he most.  
 He tok leue of Grym & Seburc, as of his sire & dame,  
 And askede ther blessinge curteysly, ther was he nought to blame.  
 Thenne drow he forth northward, to kynges court Edelsie,  
 Th<sup>t</sup> held fro Humber to Rotland, the kyngdam of Lyndesye.  
 Thys Edelsy of Breton kynde, had Orewayn his sister bright  
 Married to a noble kyng, of Northfolk Egelbright.  
 Holly for his kyngdam, he held in his hand,  
 Al the lond fro Colchestre, right in til Holand.  
 Thys Egelbright th<sup>t</sup> was a Dane, & Orewayn the quene,  
 Hadden gete on Argill, a doughter hem bytwene.  
 Sone then deyde Egelbright, & his wyf Orewayn,  
 & therefore was kyng Edelsye, bothe joyful & fayn.  
 Anon their doughter & here Eyr, his nece dame Argill,  
 & al the kyngdam he tok in bande, al at his owene will.  
 Ther serued Hauelok as quistron, & was y-cald Coraunt,  
 He was ful mykel & hardy, & strong as a Geaunt.  
 He was bold Curteys & fre, & fair & god of manere,  
 So th<sup>t</sup> alle folk hym louede, th<sup>t</sup> auewest hym were.  
 But for couetise of desheraison, of damysele Argill,  
 & for a chere th<sup>t</sup> the kyng sey, scheo made Coraunt till,  
 He dide hem arraye ful symplely, & wedde togydere bothe,  
 For he ne rewarded desparagyng, were manion ful wrothe.  
 A while they dwelt after in court, in ful pore degre,  
 The schame & sorewe th<sup>t</sup> Argill hadde, hit was a deol to se.  
 Then seyde scheo til hure maister, of whenne sire be 3e?  
 Haue 3e no kyn ne frendes at hom, in 3oure contre?  
 Leuer were me lyue in pore lyf, wythoute schame & tene,  
 Than in schame & sorewe, lede the astat of quene.  
 Thenne wente they forth to Grymesby, al by his wyues red,  
 & founde th<sup>t</sup> Grym & his wyf, weren bothe ded.  
 But he fond ther on Aunger, Grymes cosyn hend,  
 To wham th<sup>t</sup> Grym & his wyf, had told word & ende.



How th<sup>t</sup> hit stod wyth Haelok, in all manere degre,  
 & they hit hym telde & conseilled, to drawe til his contre,  
 Tasaye what grace he mighte fynde, among his frendes there,  
 & they wolde ordeyne for their schipyng, and al th<sup>t</sup> hem nede were.  
 When Aunger hadde y-schiped hem, they seilled forth ful swythe,  
 Ful-but in til Denemark, wyth weder fair & lithe.  
 Ther fond he on sire Sykar, a man of gret pousté,  
 Th<sup>t</sup> hey styward somtyme was, of al his fader fe.  
 Ful fayn was he of his comyng, & god help him behight,  
 To recouere his heritage, of Edulf kyng & knyght.  
 Sone asembled they gret folk, of his sibmen & frendes,  
 Kyng Edulf gadered his power, & ageyn them wendes.  
 Desconfyt was ther kyng Edulf, & al his grete bataill,  
 & so conquered Haelok, his heritage saunz faille.  
 Sone after he schop him gret power, in toward Ingelond,  
 His wyues heritage to wynne, ne wolde he nought wonde.  
 Th<sup>t</sup> herde the kyng of Lyndeseye, he was come on th<sup>t</sup> cost,  
 & schop to fighte wyth hym sone, & gadered hym gret host.  
 But atte day of bataill, Edelsy was desconfit,  
 & after by tretys gaf Argentill, hure heritage al quit.  
 & for scheo was next of his blod, Haelokes wyf so feyr,  
 He gaf hure Lyndesey after his day, & made hure his Eyr.  
 & atte last so byfel, th<sup>t</sup> vnder Haelokes schelde,  
 Al Northfolk & Lyndeseye, holy of hym they helde.'

MS. Lamb. 131. leaf 76.

§ 12. We now come to the prose Chronicle called *The Brute*, which became exceedingly popular, and was the foundation of "Caxton's Chronicle," first printed by Caxton A. D. 1480, but of which Caxton was not the author, though he may have added some of the last chapters. The original is in French, and was probably compiled a few years *before* Robert of Brunne's translation of Langtoft was made, as it concludes with the year 1331, or, in some copies, with 1332. The author of it is not known, but it was probably only regarded as a compilation from the Chronicles of the earlier Historians. "In this Chronicle, in all its various shapes, is contained the Story of Havelock, *engrafted on the British History of Geoffrey of Monmouth*, and in its detail, following precisely the French text of the Romance. The only variation of consequence is the substitution of the name of Birkabeyn (as in the English text) for that of Gunter, and in some copies, both of the French and English MSS. of the Chronicle, the name of

*Goldeburgh* is inserted instead of *Argentille*; which variations are the more curious, as they prove the absolute identity of the story. For the sake of a more complete illustration of what has been advanced, we are induced to copy the passage at length, as it appears in the French Chronicle, taken from a well-written MS. of the 14th century, MS. Reg. 20 A 3, fol. 165 b.”<sup>1</sup>

‘ *Des Rois Adelbright & Edelfi*, Cap. IIIJ<sup>xx</sup>. XIX.

Après le Roi Constantin estoient deux Rois en graunt Brutaigue, dount li vns out a noun Aldelbright, & fust Danois, & [tint] tut le pais de Norff & de Suffolk, & ly altre out a noun Edelfi, qe fust Brittone, & tint Nicol & Lindesey, & tote la terre desques a Humber. Ceux deux Rois soi entreguerroierent, [& moult s’entrehaierent] mais puis furent il entre acordez & soi entreamerent, taunt com s’il vssent estee freres de vn ventre neez. Le Roi Edelfi out vne soer, Orewenne par noun, & la dona par grant amour al Roi Aldelbright a femme. Et il engendra de ly vne fille qe out a noun Argentille. En le tiercz an apres vne greue Maladie ly suruint, si deuereit morrir, & maunda par vn iour al Roi Edelfi, soun frere en lei, q’il venist a ly parler, & cil ly emparla volentiers. Donqe ly pria le Roi Aldelbright et ly coniuira en le noun [de] Dieu, q’il apres sa mort preist Argentille sa fille, & sa terre, & q’il la feist honestement garder [& nurrir] en sa chambre, & quant ele serreit de age, q’il la feist marier al plus fort hom & plus vaillaunt q’il porroit trouver, & qe a donqe ly rendist sa terre. Edelfi ceo graunta, & par serment afferma sa priere. Et quant Adelbright fust mort, & enterree, Edelfi prist la damoysele, & la norrist en sa chambre, si deuynt ele la plus beale creature qe hom porreit trouver.

*Coment le Roi Edelfi Maria la damoisele Argentille a vn quistroun de sa quisine.* Cap<sup>m</sup>. C.

Le Roi Edelfi, qe fust vnclre a la Damoysele Argentille, pensa fausement coment il porreit la terre sa Nece auoir pur touz iours, & malueisement countre soun serment pensa a deceiure la pucelle, si la maria a vn quistroun de sa quisyne qe fust apellée Curan, si esteit il le plus haut, le plus fort, & le plus vaillaunt de corps, qe hom sauoit nulle part a cel temps, & la quidoit hountousement marier, pur auoir sa terre a remenaunt, Mais il fust deceu. Car

<sup>1</sup> Sir F. Madden adds—“collated with another of the same age, MS. Cott. Dom. A. x, and a third, of the 15th century, MS. Harl. 200.” I omit the collations; the words within square brackets are supplied from these other copies.

cest Curan fust [le Roi] Hauelok, filz le Roi Kirkebain de Denemarche, & il conquist la terre sa femme [en Bretagne], & occist le Roi Edelfi, vncle sa femme, & conquist tote la terre, *si com aillours est trouée plus pleinement [en l'estorie]*, & il ne regna qe treis aunuz. Car Saxsouns & Danoys le occirent, & ceo fust grant damage a tote la grant Brutaigne. Et les Brutouns le porterent a Stonhenge, & illoeqes ly enterrerent a grant honour.'

§ 13. "With the above may be compared the English version, as extant in MS. Harl. 2279, which agrees with the Ed. of Caxton, except in the occasional substitution of one word for another."<sup>1</sup>

'MS. Harl. 2279, f. 47. *Of the kinges Albright & of Edelf.*  
Ca<sup>o</sup> IIII<sup>xx</sup>. XI<sup>o</sup>.

After kyng Constantinus deth, ther were .ij. kynges in Britaigne, that one men callede Adelbright, that was a Danoys, and helde the cuntray of Northfolk and Southfolk, that other hight Edelf, and was a Britoun & helde Nichole, Lindeseye, and alle the lande vnto Humber. Thes .ij. kynges faste werred togeders, but afterward thei were acorded, and louede togedere as thei had ben borne of o bodie. The kyng Edelf had a suster that men callede Orewenne, and he yaf here thurghe grete frenshipe to kyng Adelbright to wif, and he begate on here a doughter that men callede Argentille, and in the .iiij. yeer after him come vppon a strong sekenesse that nedes he muste die, and he sent to kyng Edelf, his brother in lawe, that he shulde come and speke with him, and he come to him with good wille. Tho prayed he the kyng and coniured also in the name of God, that after whan he were dede, he shulde take Argentil his doughter, and the lande, and that he kepte hir wel, and noreshed in his chambre; and whan she were of age he shulde done here be mariede to the strongest and worthiest man that he myzt fynde, and than he shulde yelde vp her lande ayen. Edelf hit grauntid, and bi othe hit confermede his prayer. And whan Adelbright was dede and Enterede, Edelfe toke the damesel Argentil, and noreshid her in his chambre, and she become the fayrest creature th<sup>t</sup> myzt lif, or eny man finde.

*How kyng Edelf mariede the damysel Argentil to a knaue of his kichyn.* Ca<sup>o</sup> IIII<sup>xx</sup>. XII.

This kyng Edelf, that was vncle to the damesel Argentil, bithought how that he myzte falsliche haue the lande from his nece

<sup>1</sup> I omit the collations with MSS. Harl. 24 and 753. Sir F. Madden proves that this English version was made A. D. 1435, by *John Maundevile*, rector of Burnham Thorp in Norfolk.



for euermore, and falsly ayens his othe thouȝte to desceyue the damysel, and marie here to a knave of his kichon, that men callede Curan, and he become the worthiest and strengest man of bodie that eny man wist in eny lande that tho leuede. And to him he thouȝt here shendfully haue mariede, for to haue had here lande afterward; but he was clene desceyuede. For this Curan that was Hauelokis son that was kyng of Kirkelane in Denmark, and this Curan Conquerede his wifes landes, and slow kyng Edelf, that was his wifes vncle, and had alle here lande, as in a-nother stede hit [MS. but] telleth more oponly, and he ne regnede but iij. yeer, for Saxones and Danoyes him quelde, and that was grete harme to al Britaigne, and Britouns bere him to Stonehenge, and ther thei him interede with mochel honour and solempnite.'

"It must not be concealed, that in some copies, viz. in MSS. Harl. 1337, 6251, Digby 185, Hatton 50, Ashmole 791 and 793, the story is altogether omitted, and Conan made to succeed to Arthur. In those copies also of the English Polychronicon, the latter part of which resembles the above Chronicle, the passage is not found." "Among the Harl. MSS. (No. 63) is a copy of the same Chronicle in an abridged form, in which the name of *Goldesburghe* is substituted for that of *Argentille*." Sir F. Madden now adds—that "the story occurs also in some interpolated copies of Higden (the Latin text, viz. MSS. Harl. 655, Cott. Jul. E. 8, Reg. 13 E. 1. In an earlier form it is found in a Latin Chronicle of the 13th century, MS. Cott. Dom. A. 2, fol. 130."

§ 14. "It was, in all probability, to this Chronicle also, in its original form, that Thomas Gray, the author of the *Scala Cronica* (or *Scale Cronicon*), a Chronicle in French prose, composed between the years 1355 and 1362, is indebted for his knowledge of the tale." The original MS. is No. 132 in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and was edited by Stevenson for the Maitland Club in 1836. The passage relative to Havelok is translated by Leland, *Collectanea*, vol. i. pt. 2, p. 511. This account resembles the others, and involves no new point of interest.

§ 15. I may here introduce the remark, that the story is also to be found in the *Eulogium Historiarum*, ed. Haydon, 1860, vol. ii. p. 378. I here quote the passage at length, as it is not referred to in Sir F. Madden's edition. The date of the Chronicle is about 1366. For various readings, see Haydon's edition.



Non enim est prætermittendum de quodam Dano generoso ætate juvenili florente, qui tempore regis Edelfridi casualiter Angliam adiit, qui a propria patria expulsus per quendam ducem falsissimum, cui pater ejus illum commiserat ipso moriente et ducem rogavit ut puerum nutriret usque dum posset Denemarchiæ regnum viriliter gubernare. Dux vero malitiam machinans juvenem hæredem rectum, Hæwelok nomine, voluit occidisce. Puer vero comperiens aufugit per latibula usque dum quidam Anglicus et mercator in illis partibus adventaret; nomen autem mercatoris Grym vocitabatur. Hæwelok autem, Grym rogans ut ipsum in Angliam transvectaret, ipse autem annuens, puerum secum conduxit et cum eo per aliquot tempus apud Grymesby morabatur. Tandem ipsum ad curiam regis Edelfridi conduxit et ibi in coquina regis moratus est.

Rex autem Edelfridus quamdam habuit sororem nomine Orwen et illam maritavit regi Athelberto, quod conjugium inter duos reges vinculum amoris catenavit. Rex autem Athelbert terram citra Trentam cum regio diademate occupavit, cum terra de Northfolk' et de Southfolk' et eis adjacentibus. Rex vero Edelfrid comitatum Lincolnæ et Lyndeseye et eis spectantibus. Ante maritagium puellæ Orwen illi duo reges semper debellabant, post matrimonium factum nulla fuit divisio, nec in familia inter eos nec in dominio.

Rex vero Ethelbert de uxore sua quamdam filiam genuit, nomine Argentile, pulcherrimam valde. Athelberto obiente, vel ante mortem ejus, regem rogavit Edelfridum ut filiam suam homini fortissimo ac validiori totius sui regni in conjugium copularet, nihil doli vel mali machinans.

Rex autem Adelfrid omnem malitiam ingeminans de conjugio puellæ malitiose disponens, cogitans se habere unum lixam in coquina sua qui omnes homines regni sui in vigore et fortitudine superabat, et juxta votum patris puellæ ad illum hominem fortissimum illam generosam juvenculam toro maritali copulavit, ob cupiditatem regni puellæ ipsam ita enormiter maritabat. Hæwelok in patria Danemarchiæ et Argentile in Britannia æquali sorte ad custodiendum deputati sunt, totum tamen nutu Divino cedebat eis in honorem. Nam Hæwelok post paucos annos regnum Britannæ adoptus est, et a Saxonibus tandem occisus et apud le Stonhenge est sepultus. Pater ejus Kirkebau vocabatur.

This agrees closely with the accounts given above (§ 12 and § 13). The chief point to be noticed is that this account identifies Edelfrid with the Æthelfrith son of Æthelric who was king of the Northumbrians from A.D. 593 to 617, according to the

computation of the A. S. Chronicle, and who was succeeded by Eadwine son of Ælle, who drove out the æthelings or sons of Æthelfrith. It may be remarked further, that the same Æthelfrith is called Æluric by Lazamon, who gives him a very bad character ; see Lazamon, ed. Madden, vol. iii. p. 195.

§ 16. The story is also mentioned by Henry de Knyghton, a canon of Leicester abbey, whose history concludes with the year 1395. But his is no fresh evidence, as it is evidently borrowed from the French Chronicle of Rauf de Boun ; see § 7. It is also alluded to in a blundering manner in a short historical compilation extending from the time of Brutus to the reign of Henry VI., and preserved in MS. Cotton Calig. A. 2. At fol. 107 *b* is the passage—"Ethelwolde, qui generavit filiam de (*sic*) Haueloke de Denmarke, per quem Danes per ceccc. annos postea fecerunt clameum Anglie." Some omission after the word *de* has turned the passage into nonsense ; but it is noteworthy as expressing the claim of the Danes to the English crown by right of descent from Havelok ; a claim which is more clearly expressed in MS. Harl. 63, in which the King of Denmark is represented as sending a herald to Æthelstan (A.D. 927)—"to witte wheder he wold fynde a man to fight with Colbrande<sup>1</sup> for the righ[t]e of the kyngdom Northumbre, that the Danes had claymed byfore by the title of kyng Haueloke, that wedded Goldesburghe the kyngis daughter of Northumbre"—fol. 19.<sup>2</sup> Four hundred years before this date would intimate some year early in the sixth century. Finally, the story is found at a later period in Caxton's Chronicle (A.D. 1480) as above intimated in § 12 ; whence it was adopted by Warner, and inserted into his poem entitled Albion's England ; book iv. chap. 20, published in 1586. Warner called it the tale of "Argentile and Curan ;" and in this ballad-shape it was reprinted in Percy's Reliques of Ancient Poetry (vol. ii. p. 261 ; ed. 1812) with the same title. Not long after, in 1617, another author, William Webster, published a larger poem in six-line stanzas ; but this is a mere paraphrase of Warner. The title is—"The most

<sup>1</sup> Colbrande is the giant defeated by Guy in the Ballad of "Guy and Colebrande." See *Percy Folio MS.* ; ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. ii. p. 528, where *Auelocke* means *Anlaf*.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted in a note in Sir F. Madden's preface, p. xxiii.

pleasant and delightful historie of Curan, a prince of Danske, and the fayre princesse Argentile," &c. John Fabyan, in his *Concordance of Historyes*, first printed in 1516, alludes to the two kings Adelbryght and Edill, only to dismiss the "longe processe" concerning them, as not supported by sufficient authority. See p. 82 of the reprint by Ellis, 4to, 1811.

§ 17. The only other two sources whence any further light can be thrown upon our subject are the traditions of Denmark and Grimsby. A letter addressed by Sir F. Madden to Professor Rask elicited a reply which was equivalent to saying that next to nothing is known about it in Denmark. This seems to be the right place to mention a small book of 80 pages, published at Copenhagen in the present year (1868), and entitled "*Sagnet om Havelok Danske; fortalt af Kristian Köster.*" It contains (1) a version, in Danish prose, of the English poem; (2) a version of the same story, following the French texts of the *Arundel* and *Royal MSS.*; and (3) some elucidations of the legend. The author proposes a theory that Havelok is really the Danish king Amlet, i. e. Hamlet; but I have not space here to state all his arguments. As far as I follow them, some of the chief ones are these; that Havelok ought to be found in the list of Danish kings;<sup>1</sup> that Hamlet's simulation of folly or madness is paralleled by Havelok's behaviour, as expressed in ll. 945—954 of our poem; and that both Hamlet and Havelok succeeded in fulfilling the revenge which they had long cherished secretly. But I am not much persuaded by these considerations, for, even granting some resemblance in the names,<sup>2</sup> the resemblance in the stories is very slight. But I must refer the reader to the book itself.

§ 18. Turning however to local traditions, we find that Camden briefly alludes to the story in a contemptuous manner

<sup>1</sup> So then ought Hamlet; but the editor of *Saxo Grammaticus* says, "in antiquioribus regum Daniæ genealogiis Amlethus non occurrit." See *Saxo Gram.* ed. Müller, Havniæ, 1839; end of lib. iii. and beginning of lib. iv.; also the note on p. 132 of the *Notæ Uberiores*. The idea that Havelock is Amlet is to be found in *Grundtvig, North. Myth.* 1832, p. 565.

<sup>2</sup> Havelok [*or* Hanelock, as it is sometimes read] is quite as like Anlaf, whence the blunder noticed in note 1, p. xviii. In the form Hablok, it is not unlike *Blecca*, who was a great man in *Lindesey* soon after the days of *Æthelberht* of Kent; see *Saxon Chronicle*, An. DCXXVII.



(p. 353; ed. Svo, Lond. 1587); but Gervase Holles is far from being disposed to regard it as fabulous. "In his MSS. collections for Lincolnshire, preserved in MS. Harl. 6829, he thus speaks of the story we are examining.<sup>1</sup>

"And it will not be amisse, to say something concerning y<sup>e</sup> Common tradition of her first founder Grime, as y<sup>e</sup> inhabitants (with a Catholique faith) name him. The tradition is thus. *Grime* (say they) a poore Fisherman (as he was launching into y<sup>e</sup> Riuer for fish in his little boate vpon Humber) espyed not far from him another little boate, empty (as he might conceaue) which by y<sup>e</sup> fauour of y<sup>e</sup> wynde & tyde still approached nearer & nearer vnto him. He betakes him to his oares, & meetes itt, wherein he founde onely a Childe wrapt in swathing clothes, purposely exposed (as it should seeme) to y<sup>e</sup> pittylesse [rage] of y<sup>e</sup> wilde & wide Ocean. He moued with pittie, takes itt home, & like a good foster-father carefully nourisht itt, & endeauoured to nourishe it in his owne occupation: but y<sup>e</sup> childe contrarily was wholly deuoted to exercises of actiuity, & when he began to write man, to martiall sports, & at length by his signall valour obteyned such renowne, y<sup>t</sup> he marryed y<sup>e</sup> King of England's daughter, & last of all founde who was his true Father, & that he was Sonne to y<sup>e</sup> King of Denmarke; & for y<sup>e</sup> comicke close of all; that *Haueloke* (for such was his name) exceedingly aduanced & enriched his foster-father Grime, who thus enriched, builded a fayre Towne neare the place where Hauelocke was founde, & named it Grimesby. Thus say some: others differ a little in y<sup>e</sup> circumstances, as namely, that Grime was not a Fisherman, but a Merchant, & that Hauelocke should be preferred to y<sup>e</sup> King's kitchen, & there liue a longe tyme as a Scullion: but however y<sup>e</sup> circumstances differ, they all agree in y<sup>e</sup> consequence, as concerning y<sup>e</sup> Towne's foundation, to which (sayth y<sup>e</sup> story) Hauelocke y<sup>e</sup> Danish prince, afterward graunted many immunities. This is y<sup>e</sup> famous Tradition concerning Grimsby w<sup>ch</sup> learned Mr. Cambden gives so little credit to, that he thinkes it onely *illis dignissima, qui anilibus fabulis noctem solent protrudere.*"

And again, after shewing that *by* is the Danish for *town*, and quoting a passage about Havelock's father being named Gunter, which may be found in Weever (Ancient Funerall Monuments, fol. Lond. 1631, p. 749), he proceeds: "that Hauelocke did sometyes reside in Grimsby, may be gathered from a great blew

<sup>1</sup> His account has been printed in the *Topographer*, V. i. p. 241. sq. 8vo, 1789. We follow, as usual, the MS. itself, p. 1.

Boundry-stone, lying at y<sup>e</sup> East ende of Briggowgate, which retaines y<sup>e</sup> name of *Havelock's-Stone* to this day. Agayne y<sup>e</sup> great priuiledges & immunityes, that this Towne hath in Denmarke aboue any other in England (as freedome from Toll, & y<sup>e</sup> rest) may fairely induce a Beleife, that some preceding favour, or good turne called on this remuneration. But lastly (which prooffe I take to be *instar omnium*) the Common Seale of y<sup>e</sup> Towne, & that a most auncient one," &c. [Here follows a description of the Seal.]

"The singular fact," adds Sir F. Madden, "alluded to by Holles, of the Burgesses of Grimsby being free from toll at the Port of Elsinour, in Denmark, is confirmed by the Rev. G. Oliver, in his *Monumental Antiquities of Grimsby*, Svo, Hull, 1825, who is inclined from that, and other circumstances, to believe the story is not so totally without foundation." There is also an absurd local story that the church at Grimsby, which has now but one turret, formerly had four, three of which were kicked down by Grim in his anxiety to destroy some hostile vessels. The first fell among the enemy's fleet; the second dropped in Wellowgate, and is now Havelock's stone; the third fell within the churchyard, but the fourth his strength failed to move. Perhaps amongst the most interesting notices of the story are the following words by Sir Henry Havelock, whose family seems to have originally resided in Durham. His own account, however, is this. "My father, William Havelock, descended from a family which formerly resided at Grimsby in Lincolnshire, and was himself born at Guisborough in Yorkshire."<sup>1</sup> And it may at least be said with perfect truth, that if the name of *Havelock* was not famous formerly, it is famous now.

§ 19. The last evidence for the legend is the still-existing seal of the corporation of Great Grimsby. The engraving of this seal, as it appears in the present edition, was made from a copy kindly furnished to the E. E. T. S. by the Mayor of Grimsby, and I here subjoin a description of it, communicated to me by J. Hopkin, Esq., Jun., of Grimsby, which was first printed, in a slightly different form, in *Notes and Queries*, 2nd Series, vol. xi. p. 41; see also p. 216.

<sup>1</sup> Quoted in Brock's *Biography of Sir H. Havelock*, 1858; p. 9.

“The ancient Town Seal of Great Grimsby is engraven on a circular piece of brass not very thick; and on the back, which is rather arched, is a small projecting piece of brass, placed as a substitute for a handle, in order when taking an impression the more easily to detach the matrix from the Wax. This seal is in an excellent state of preservation, and is inscribed in Saxon characters ‘Sigillvm Comunitatis Grimebye’ and represents thereon Gryme (‘Gryem’) who by tradition is reported to have been a native of Souldburg in Denmark, where he gained a precarious livelihood by fishing and piracy; but having, as is supposed, during the reign of Ethelbert,<sup>1</sup> been accidentally driven into the Humber by a furious storm, he landed on the Lincolnshire Coast near Grimsby, he being at this time miserably poor and almost destitute of the common necessities of life; for Leland represents this ‘poor fisschar’ as being so very needy that he was not ‘able to kepe his sunne Cuaran for poverty.’ Gryme, finding a capacious haven adapted to his pursuits, built himself a house and commenced and soon succeeded in establishing a very lucrative Trade with Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. Other Merchants having in process of time settled near him, attracted by the commercial advantages offered by this excellent Harbour, they jointly constructed convenient appendages for extensive Trade, and the colony soon rose into considerable importance, and became known at an early period by the name of Grimsby. For not only was Grimsby constituted a borough so early as the seventh century, but Peter of Langtoft speaks of it as a frontier Town and the boundary of a Kingdom erected by the conquests of Egbert in the year 827, which he states included all that portion of the Island which lay between ‘the maritime Towns of Grymsby and Dover.’ So that even at that period, Grimsby must have been a place of peculiar strength and importance. Gryme is represented on the seal as a man of gigantic stature with comparatively short hair, a shaven chin, and a moustache, holding in his right hand a drawn sword and bearing on his left arm a circular shield with an ornate boss and rim. The sleeveless tunic above his under vest is most probably the panzar or panzara of the Danes. Between his feet is a Conic object, possibly intended for a helmet, as it resembles the chapelle-de-fer worn by William Rufus on his Great Seal, and which in the laws of Gula is distinguished as the Steel hufe. On the right hand of Gryme stands his protégé Haveloc (‘Habloc’), whom, during one of his mercantile excursions soon after his arrival in Lincolnshire, Gryme had the good fortune to save

<sup>1</sup> Æthelberht of Kent reigned from A.D. 560—616 (56 years).



from imminent danger of Shipwreck, and who proved to be the Son of Gunter, King of Denmark, and who was therefore conveyed to the British Court, where he subsequently received in marriage Goldburgh, the Daughter of the British Sovereign. Above Gryme is represented a hand, being emblematical of the hand of providence by which Haveloc was preserved, and near the hand is the star which marks the point where the inscription begins and ends. Haveloc made such a favourable representation of his preserver at the British and Danish Courts, that he procured for him many honours and privileges. From the British Monarch Gryme, who had already realised an abundance of wealth, received a charter, and was made the chief governor of Grimsby; and the Danish Sovereign granted to the Town an immunity (which is still possessed by the Burgesses of Grimsby) from all Tolls at the Port of Elsinour. Gryme afterwards lived in Grimsby like a petty prince in his Hereditary Dominions. Above Haveloc is represented a crown and in his right hand is a battle axe, the favourite weapon of the Northmen, and in his left hand is a ring which he is presenting to the British Princess Goldburgh ('Goldebvrgh'), who stands on the left side of Gryme and whose right hand is held towards the Ring. Over her head is a Regal Diadem, and in her left hand is a Sceptre. Sir F. Madden states that it is certain that this seal is at least as old as the time of Edward I. (and therefore contemporaneous with the MS.) as the legend is written in a character which after the year 1300 fell into disuse, and was succeeded by the black letter, or *Gothic*."

#### § 20. SKETCH OF THE STORY OF "Le Lai d'Aueloc."<sup>1</sup>

It is my intention to offer some remarks on the probable sources of the legend, and to fix a conjectural date for the existence of Havelok. But it is obviously convenient that a sketch of the story should first be given. It appears, however, that the resemblance between the French and English versions is by no means very close, and it will be necessary to give separate abstracts of them. I begin with the French version, in which I follow the Norfolk MS. rather than the abridgment by Gaimar. I have already said that the former is printed in Sir F. Madden's edition, and that it was reprinted by M. Michel with the title "*Lai d'Havelok le Danois*," Paris, 1833, and by Mr Wright for the Caxton Society in 1850.

<sup>1</sup> For this latter portion of the Preface I am entirely responsible.

The Britons made a lay concerning King Havelok, who is surnamed Cuaran. His father was Gunter, King of the Danes. Arthur crossed the sea, and invaded Denmark. Gunter perished by the treason of Hodulf, who gained the kingdom, and held it of Arthur. Gunter had a fine castle, where his wife and son were guarded, being committed to the protection of Grim. The child was but seven years old; but ever as he slept, an odorous flame issued from his mouth. Hodulf sought to kill him, but Grim prepared a ship, and furnished it with provisions, wherein he placed the queen and the child, and set sail from Denmark. On their voyage they encountered pirates ("outlaghes"), who killed them all after a hard fight, excepting Grim, who was an acquaintance of theirs, and Grim's wife and children. Havelok also was saved. They at last arrived at the haven, afterwards named "Grimesbi" from Grim. Grim there resumed his old trade, a fisherman's, and a town grew up round his hut, which was called Grimsby. The child grew up, and waxed strong. One day Grim said to him, "Son, you will never thrive as a fisherman; take your brothers with you, and seek service amongst the King's servants." He was soon well apparelled, and repaired with his two foster-brothers to Nicole [Lincoln].<sup>1</sup> Now at that time there was a king named Alsi, who ruled over all Nicole and Lindesie;<sup>2</sup> but the country southward was governed by another king, named Ekenbright, who had married Alsi's sister Orewen. These two had one only daughter, named Argentille. Ekenbright, falling ill, committed Argentille to the care of Alsi, till she should be of age to be married to the strongest man that can be found. At Ekenbright's death, Alsi reigned over both countries, holding his court at Nicole. Havelok, on his arrival there, was employed to carry water and cut wood, and to perform all menial offices requiring great strength. He was named Cuaran, which means—in the British language—a scullion. Argentille soon arrived at marriageable age, and Alsi determined to marry her to Cuaran, which would sufficiently fulfil her father's wish—Cuaran being confessedly the strongest man in those parts. To this marriage he compelled her to consent, hoping thereby to disgrace her for ever. Havelok was unwilling that his wife should perceive the marvellous flame, but soon forgot this, and ere long fell asleep. Then had Argentille a strange vision—that a savage bear and some foxes attacked Cuaran, but dogs and boars defended him. A boar having killed the bear, the foxes cried for quarter from Cuaran,

<sup>1</sup> *Nicole* is a French inversion of Lincoln. It is not uncommon.

<sup>2</sup> The northern part of Lincolnshire is called *Lindsey*.



who commanded them to be bound. Then he would have put to sea, but the sea rose so high that he was terrified. Next she beheld two lions, at seeing which she was frightened, and she and Cuaran climbed a tree to avoid them; but the lions submitted themselves to him, and called him their lord. Then a great cry was raised, whereat she awoke, and beheld the miraculous flame. "Sir," she exclaimed, "you burn!" But he reassured her, and, having heard her dream, said that it would soon come true. The next day, however, she again told her dream to a chamberlain, her friend, who said that he well knew a holy hermit who could explain it. The hermit explained to Argentille that Cuaran must be of royal lineage. "He will be king," he said, "and you a queen. Ask him concerning his parentage. Remember also to repair to his native place." On being questioned, Cuaran replied that he was born at Grimsby; that Grim was his father, and Saburc his mother. "Then let us go to Grimsby," she replied. Accompanied by his two foster-brothers, they came to Grimsby; but Grim and Saburc were both dead. They found there, however, a daughter of Grim's, named Kelloc, who had married a tradesman of that town. Up to this time Havelok had not known his true parentage, but Kelloc thought it was now time to tell him, and said: "Your father was Gunter, the King of the Danes, whom Hodulf slew. Hodulf obtained the kingdom as a grant from Arthur. Grim fled with you, and saved your life; but your mother perished at sea. Your name is HAVELOK. My husband will convey you to Denmark, where you must inquire for a lord named 'Sigar l'estal;' and take with you my two brothers." So Kelloc's husband conveyed them to Denmark, and advised Havelok to go to Sigar and show himself and his wife, as then he would be asked who his wife is. They went to the city of the seneschal, the before-named Sigar, where they craved a night's lodging, and were courteously entertained. But as they retired to a lodging for the night, six men attacked them, who had been smitten with the beauty of Argentille. Havelok defended himself with an axe which he found, and slew five, whereupon the sixth fled. Havelok and his party fled away for refuge to a monastery, which was soon attacked by the townsmen who had heard of the combat. Havelok *mounted the tower*, and defended himself bravely, *casting down a huge stone on his enemies*.<sup>1</sup> The news soon reached the ears of Sigar, who hastened to see what the uproar was about. Behold-

<sup>1</sup> Hence the obvious origin of the legend of "Havelok's stone," and the local tradition about Grim's casting down stones from the tower of Grimsby church.

ing Havelok fixedly, he called to mind the form and appearance of Gunter, and asked Havelok of his parentage. Havelok replied that Grim had told him he was by birth a Dane, and that his mother perished at sea; and ended by briefly relating his subsequent adventures. Then Sigar asked him his name. "My name is Havelok," he said, "and my other name is Cuaran." Then the seneschal took him home, and determined to watch for the miraculous flame, which he soon perceived, and was assured that Havelok was the true heir. Therefore he gathered a great host of his friends, and sent for the horn which none but the true heir could sound, promising a ring to any one who could blow it. When all had failed, it was given to Havelok, who blew it loud and long, and was joyfully recognized and acknowledged to be the true King. Then with a great army he attacked Hodulf the usurper, whom he slew with his own hand. Thus was Havelok made King of Denmark.

But after he had reigned four years, his wife incited him to return to England. With a great number of ships he sailed there, and arrived at Carleflure;<sup>1</sup> and sent messengers to Alsi, demanding the inheritance of Argentille. Alsi was indeed astonished at such a demand as coming from a scullion, and offered him battle. The hosts met at Theford,<sup>2</sup> and the battle endured till nightfall without a decisive result. But Argentille craftily advised her lord to support his dead men by stakes, to increase the apparent number of his army; and the next day Alsi, deceived by this device, treated for peace, and yielded up to his former ward all the land, from Holland<sup>3</sup> to Gloucester. Alsi had been so sorely wounded that he lived but fifteen days longer. Thus was Havelok king over Lincoln and Lindsey, and reigned over them for twenty years. Such is the lay of Cuaran.

§ 21. The chief points to be noticed in Gaimar's abridgment are the few additional particulars to be gleaned from it. We there find that Havelok's mother was *Alvive*, a daughter of King *Gaifer*; that the King of Nicole and Lindeseie was a *Briton*, and was named Edelsie; that his sister, named Orwain, was married to Adelbrit, a *Dane*, who ruled over Norfolk; and that Edelsie and Adelbrit lived in the days of Costentin (Constantine), who

<sup>1</sup> Possibly Saltfleet, suggests Mr Haigh. Such, at least, is the position required by the circumstances.

<sup>2</sup> In the Durham MS. it is Tiedfort, i. e. Tetford, not far from Horncastle, in Lincolnshire.

<sup>3</sup> A name given to the S.E. part of Lincolnshire.

succeeded Arthur. It is also said that the usurper Hodulf was brother to Aschis, who is the Achilles of Geoffrey of Monmouth. Another statement, that Havelok's kingdom extended from Holland to *Colchester*, seems to be an improvement upon "from Holland to *Gloucester*."

The words of Mr Petrie, in his remarks upon the lay in *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, vol. i., may be quoted here. "Although both [French versions] have the same story in substance, and often contain lines exactly alike, yet, besides the different order in which the incidents are narrated, each has occasionally circumstances wanting in the other, and such too, it should seem, as would leave the story incomplete unless supplied from the other copy. Thus, the visit to the hermit, which is omitted in Gaimar, was probably in the original romance; for without it Argentille's dream tells for nothing; and in the Arundel copy there is a particular account of Haveloc's defence of a tower by hurling stones on his assailants, which in Gaimar is so obscurely alluded to as to be hardly intelligible. On the other hand, instead of the description of the extraordinary virtues of Sygar's ring in Gaimar, it is merely said in the Arundel copy that Sygar would give his *anel d'or* to whoever could sound the horn; and, to omit other instances, a festival is described in Gaimar on the authority of *l'Estorie*, of which no notice whatever occurs in the Arundel MS."

## § 22. SKETCH OF THE ENGLISH POEM.

The "Lay of Havelok" has been admirably paraphrased by Professor Morley, in his "English Writers," vol. i. pp. 459—467, a book which should be in every reader's hands, and which should by all means be consulted. I only intend here to give a briefer outline, for the sake of comparing the main features of our poem with those of the French *Lai*.

Hear the tale of Havelok! There was once a good king in England, named Athelwold, renowned and beloved for his justice. He had but one child, a daughter named Goldborough. Knowing that his end was approaching, he sent for all his lords to assemble at Winchester, and there committed Goldborough to the care of Godrich, the earl of Cornwall; directing him to see her married



to the strongest and fairest man whom he could find. But Godrich imprisoned her at Dover, and resolved to seize her inheritance for his own son. At that time there was also a King of Denmark, named Birkabeyn, who had one son, Havelok, and two daughters, Swanborough and Helfled. At the approach of death, he committed these to the care of Earl Godard. But Godard killed the two girls, and only spared Havelok because he did not like to kill him with his own hand. He therefore hired a fisherman, named Grim, to drown Havelok at sea. But Grim perceived, as Havelok slept, a miraculous light shining round the lad, whereby he knew that the child was the true heir, and would one day be king. In order to avoid Godard, Grim fitted up a ship, and provisioned it, and with his wife Leve, his three sons, his two daughters, and Havelok, put out to sea. They landed in Lindesey at the mouth of the Humber, at a place afterwards named Grimsby after Grim. Grim worked at his old trade, a fisherman's, and Havelok carried about the fish for sale. Then arose a great dearth in the land, and Havelok went out to seek his own livelihood, walking to Lincoln barefoot. He was hired as a porter by the earl of Cornwall's cook, and drew water and cut wood for the earl's kitchen. One day some men met to contend in games and to "put the stone." At the cook's command, Havelok also put the stone, hurling it further than any of the rest.<sup>1</sup> Godrich, hearing the praises of Havelok's strength, at once resolved to perform his oath by causing him to marry Goldborough; and carried his design into execution. As soon as the pair were married, Havelok suddenly quitted Lincoln with his wife, and returned to Grimsby, where he found that Grim was dead, but that his five children are yet alive. At night, Goldborough perceived a light shining round about Havelok, and observed a cross upon his shoulder. At the same time she heard an angel's voice, telling her of good fortune to come. Then he awoke, and told her a dream; how he had dreamt that all Denmark and England became his own. She encouraged him, and urged him to set sail for Denmark at once. He accordingly called to him Grim's three sons, and narrated to them his own history, and Godard's treachery, asking them to accompany him to Denmark. To this they assented, and sailed with him and Goldborough to Denmark. There he sought out a former friend of his father's, Earl Ubbe, who invited him and his friends to a sumptuous feast. After the feast, Havelok and Goldborough and Grim's sons went to the house of one Bernard Brown, whose house was that night attacked by sixty thieves. By dint of

<sup>1</sup> Here again is an allusion to "Havelok's stone."

great prowess, the friends at length slew all their sixty assailants, and Ubbe was so amazed at Havelok's valour that he resolved to dub him a knight, and invited him to sleep in his own castle. At night, he peeped into Havelok's chamber, and beheld the marvellous light, and saw a bright cross on his neck. Rejoiced at heart, he did homage to Havelok, and commanded all his friends and dependents to do the same. He also dubbed him knight, and proclaimed him King. With six thousand men he set out to attack Godard, whom he defeated and made prisoner, and afterwards caused to be flayed, drawn, and hung. Then Havelok swore that he would establish at Grimsby a priory of black monks, to pray for Grim's soul; and Godrich, having heard that Havelok has invaded England, raised a great army against him. An indecisive combat took place between Ubbe and Godrich, but a more decisive one between Godrich and Havelok; for Havelok cut off his foe's hand and made him prisoner. Then the English submitted to Goldborough, and acknowledged her as queen; but Godrich was condemned and burnt. Havelok rewarded both his own friends and the English nobles; for he caused Earl Reynier of Chester to marry Gunild, Grim's daughter, and Bertram, formerly Godrich's cook, to marry Leive, another of Grim's daughters; bestowing upon Bertram the earldom of Cornwall. Then were Havelok and Goldborough crowned at London, and a feast was given that lasted forty days. The kingdom of Denmark was bestowed upon Ubbe, who held it of King Havelok. Havelok and Goldborough lived to the age of a hundred years, and their reign lasted for sixty years in England. They had fifteen children, who were all kings and queens. Such is the *geste* of Havelok and Goldborough.

### § 23. POSSIBLE DATE OF HAVELOK'S REIGN.

The various allusions to the story of Havelok already cited naturally lead us to consider the question as to what date we should refer such circumstances of the story as may have some foundation in truth, or such circumstances as may have originated the story. I do not look upon this as altogether a hopeless or profitless inquiry, for it seems to me that a theory may be constructed which will readily and easily fit in with most of the statements of our authorities. In the first place, to place Havelok's father in the time of Alfred, as is done by Peter de Langtoft and his translators, is absurd, and evidently due to the confusion between the names of Gunter and Godrum or Guthrum. We

may even adduce Langtoft's evidence against himself, as he alludes to Grimsby as being the boundary of Egbert's kingdom; and indeed, the mere fact of its being a British lay points to a time before the establishment of the Heptarchy. As already suggested in § 16, some of the authorities point to the sixth century. But the evidence of the French poem and of Gaimar points still more steadily to a similar early date. There we find Gunter appearing as the enemy, not of Alfred, but of Arthur. The French prose chronicle of the Brute places Adelbriht and Edelfi after the death of Constantine, and it is clear that there is some close connection between the British lay of Havelok and the British Chronicle. The *Godrich* of the English version is the *Alsi* of the French poem, the *Edelsi* of Gaimar, the *Adelfrid*<sup>1</sup> or *Edelfrid* of the Eulogium Historiarum, the *Elfroi* of Wace, the *Æluric* of Laȝamon, the *Æthelfrith* who succeeded to the throne of Northumbria A. D. 593, according to the Saxon Chronicle. The *Athelwold* of the English version is the *Adelbriht* of Gaimar, the *Ekenbriht* of the French poem, the *Athelbert* of the Eulogium Historiarum, the *Aldebar* of Wace, and the *Æthelbert* of Laȝamon, i. e. no other than the celebrated *Æthelberht* of Kent, who was baptized by St Augustine A. D. 596, according to the Saxon Chronicle. This is the right clue to the *names*, from which, when once obtained, the rest follows easily. The variations between the English and French versions are very great, and it is clear that each poet proceeded much as poets are accustomed to do. Taking a legend as the general guide or thread of a narrative, it is the simplest and easiest plan to dress it up after one's own fashion, and to draw upon the materials that are supplied by the *general surroundings* of the story. I feel confident that the narrators of the Lay of Havelok must have used materials not much unlike those used by Laȝamon, and a mere comparison of the French and English lays with Laȝamon will amply suffice to elucidate this. *Æluric* is first mentioned at p. 195 of vol. iii. of Laȝamon, as edited by Sir F. Madden; if we allow ourselves a margin on both sides of this, we may find many things akin to the lay of Havelok

<sup>1</sup> Hence, by confusion, the placing of Havelok's father in the time of *Ælfred*.



between pages 150 and 282 of that volume, as I will now shew. The character of the good king Athelwold is taken from that of Æthelberht of Kent, and his love of justice may remind us of the ancient collection of laws which are still extant as having been made by that king. His extensive rule, such as is also attributed to Godrich and Havelok, may point to the title of *Bretwalda*, which Æthelberht so long coveted, and at last obtained. Our poet, in describing Birkabeyn, repeats this character so exactly, and makes the circumstances of the deaths of Athelwold and Birkabeyn so similar, that they are almost indistinguishable; a fault which he doubles by repeating the character of Godrich in describing that of Godard. Both of these answer to Lazamon's Æluric, who was "the wickedest of all kings" (Laz. iii. 195). So far, perhaps, the connection of the various stories is not very evident, but I will now mention an obvious coincidence. The quarrel and reconciliation between Athelbert and Edelfrid, as told in the *Eulogium Historiarum*, &c., exactly answers to the quarrel and reconciliation between Cadwan and Æluric as told in Lazamon (vol. iii. p. 205); where Cadwan has come forward in place of Æthelbert, who has by this time dropped out of Lazamon's narrative. Again, the Gunter or Gurmond who was Havelok's father reminds us of the Gurmund of Lazamon (p. 156), who is curiously described as king of Africa; but the name is Danish. The character of Grim is fairly paralleled by that of Brian, who makes sea-voyages, and goes about as a merchant (Lazamon, iii. 232). In several respects Havelok may have been drawn from Cadwalan, whose gallant attempts to gain the king of Northumberland are recorded in Lazamon (iii. 216—254); his opponent being Edwin, who has replaced Ethelfrid as Lazamon's narrative proceeds. At last he overthrows him and slays him in the great battle of Heathfield or Hatfield, which took place, according to the Saxon Chronicle, A. D. 633. This great battle resembles the decisive one between Havelok and Godrich. As Cadwalan was well supported by his liegeman Penda (Lazamon, iii. 251), so was Havelok by Ubbe. Again, Cadwalan marries Helen, whom he found at

—þan castle of Deoure  
on þere sæ oure; (Lazamon, iii. 250),

which reminds us of Havelok's wife Goldborough, who was imprisoned at

—doure  
þat standeth on þe seis oure ; (l. 320).

The very name Helen, though not the name of Havelok's wife, was that of his mother, who was killed by the pirates. For the connection between Lazamon's Helen and pirates, see Sir F. Madden's note, vol. iii. p. 428. There is a most curious contradiction in the English lay about Havelok's religion ; in l. 2520 he is a devout Christian, but in l. 2580 Godrich speaks of him as being a cruel pagan. Now it was just about this very time that Paulinus preached in Lindsey, "where the first that believed was a powerful man called *Blecca*, with all his followers" (A.S. Chron. ed. Thorpe, vol. ii. p. 21 ; A. D. 627). Havelok, according to some, was buried at Stonehenge ; but so was Constantine (Lazamon, iii. 151). A dearth is mentioned in the English lay (l. 824) ; cf. Lazamon, iii. 279. And I may here add another coincidence, of an interesting but certainly of a very circuitous nature. A close examination of the Lay of King Horn shews that there is no real connection between the story therein contained and that of Havelok. Yet there is a connection after a sort. Though by different authors, and in different metre, both lays are found in English in the same MS. ; both versions belong to the same date ; both are from French versions, written by Englishmen from British sources ; and now, if we compare King Horn with the very part of Lazamon now under consideration, there is at once seen to be a most exact resemblance in one point. The story of the ring given by Horn to Rymenhild (K. Horn, ed. Lumby, ll. 1026—1210) is remarkably like that of the ring whereby Brian is recognized by his sister (Lazamon, iii. 234—238). But it is hardly worth while to pursue the subject further. It may suffice to suppose that the period of the existence of Havelok and Grim may be referred to the times of Æthelberht of Kent and Æthelfrith and Eadwine of Northumbria.<sup>1</sup> It is exceedingly probable that Havelok was never more than a chief or a petty prince, and

<sup>1</sup> Or, as I should prefer to say, earlier than those times. The two kings spoken of in the Lay may have had names somewhat similar to these, which may have been replaced by the more familiar names here mentioned.



whether he was a Danish or only a British enemy of the Angles is not of very great importance. If, however, more exact dates be required, they may be found in "The Conquest of Britain by the Saxons," by Daniel P. Haigh, London, Svo, 1861, pp. 363—367; where the following dates are suggested. Havelok's father slain, A. D. 487; his expedition to Denmark, A. D. 507; his reign in England, A. D. 511—531, or a little later. These dates follow a system which is here about 16 years earlier than the dates in the A.S. Chronicle. His results are obtained from totally different considerations. On the whole, let us place Havelok in the *sixth* century, at *some* period of his life.

§ 24. It is, perhaps, worthy of a passing remark that some of the circumstances in the Lay may have been suggested by the romantic story of Eadwine of Northumbria, who was also born at the close of the sixth century. For he it was who really married the *daughter of Æthelberht*, and it was the *archbishop of York*, Paulinus, who performed the ceremony. The relation of how Eadwine was persecuted by *Æthelfrith*, how he fled and was protected by Rædwald, king of the East Angles, how he saw a vision of an angel who promised his restoration to the throne and that his rule should exceed that of his predecessors, how, with the assistance of Rædwald, he overthrew and *slew Æthelfrith* in a terrible battle beside the river Idle, may be found in Beda's Ecclesiastical History, bk. II. ch. 9—16.<sup>1</sup> In the last of these chapters there is again mention of *Blecca, the governor of the city of Lincoln*. Sir F. Madden, in his note to l. 45, speaks of the extraordinary proofs of the peaceable state of the country in the reign of Ælfred; but Beda uses similar language in speaking of the reign of Eadwine; and the earlier instance is even more remarkable. "It is reported that there was then such perfect peace in Britain, wheresoever the dominion of King Edwin extended, that, as *is still proverbially said*, a woman with her new-born babe might walk throughout the island, from sea to sea, without receiving any harm. That king took such care for the good of his nation, that in several places where he had seen clear springs near the highways, he caused stakes to be fixed, with brass dishes hanging

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lappenberg's History of England, tr. by Thorpe, vol. i. pp. 145—154.

at them, for the conveniency of travellers ; nor durst any man touch them for any other purpose than that for which they were designed, either through the dread they had of the king, or for the affection which they bore him, &c.”<sup>1</sup> Readers who are acquainted with the pleasing poem of “Edwin of Deira,” by the late Alexander Smith, will remember his adventures ; and it may be noted, as an instance of the manner in which poets alter names at pleasure, that Mr Smith gives to Æthelfrith the name of Ethelbert, to Eadwine’s wife Æthelburh, that of Bertha, and to his father Ælle, that of Egbert. My theory of the Lay of Havelok is then simply this, that I look upon it as the general result of various narratives connected with the history of Northumbria and Lindesey at the close, or possibly the beginning, of the sixth century, gathered round some favourite local (i. e. Lincolnshire) tradition as a nucleus. A similar theory may be true of the Lay of Horn.

#### § 25. ON THE NAMES “CURAN” AND “HAVELOK.”

The French version tells us that *Coaran*, *Cuaran*, or *Cuheran* is the British word for a scullion. This etymology has not hitherto been traced, but it may easily have been perfectly true. A glance at Armstrong’s Gaelic Dictionary shews us that the Gaelic *cearn* (which answers very well to the Old English *hirne*, a corner) has the meaning of a *corner*, and, secondly, of a *kitchen* ; and that *cearnach* is an adjective meaning *of or belonging to a kitchen*. But we may come even nearer than this ; for by adding the diminutive ending *-an* to the Gaelic *cocaire*, a cook, we see that *Cuheran* may really have conveyed the idea of *scullion* to a British ear, and this probably further gave rise to the story of Havelok’s degradation. It is a common custom—one which true etymologists must always deplore—to invent a story to account for a derivation ; and such a practice is invariably carried out with greater boldness and to a greater extent if the said derivation chances to be false. For it is possible that Curan may be simply the Gaelic *curan*, a brave man, and the Irish *curanta*, brave. The derivation of Havelok is certainly puzzling.

<sup>1</sup> See the same statement in Fabyan’s Chronicles, p. 112 ; ed. Ellis, 1811.

Professor Rask declared it to have no meaning in Danish. It bears, however, a remarkable resemblance to the Old English *gavelok*, which occurs in Weber's *Kyng Alisaunder*, l. 1620, and which is the A.S. *gafeluc*, Icel. *gaflak*, Welsh *gaflach*, a spear, dart, or javelin. This is an appropriate name for a warrior, and possibly reappears in the instance of Hugh *Kevelock*, earl of Chester (Bp. Percy's Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, i. 128). It is remarkable that the Gaelic and Irish *corran* has the same sense, that of a *spear*, whilst *curan*, as above-mentioned, means a *brave man*. It is best, perhaps, to stop here; for etymology, when pursued too far, is wont to beguile the pursuer into every possible quagmire of absurdity.

#### § 26. DESCRIPTION OF THE MS., &c.

The MS. from which the present poem is printed is in the Laudian collection in the Bodleian Library, where its old mark is K 60, and its present one Misc. 108. Being described in the old printed catalogue merely as *Vitæ Sanctorum*, the romance was in consequence for a long time overlooked. The Lives of the Saints occupy a large portion of the volume, and are probably to be ascribed to the authorship of Robert of Gloucester. "These Lives or Festivals," says Sir F. Madden, "are [here] 61 in number, written in long Alexandrine verse. Then succeed the Sayings of St Bernard and the Visions of St Paul, both in six-line stanzas; the *Disputatio inter Corpus et Animam*, the English Romance of Havelok, the Romance of Kyng Horn, and some additions in a hand of the 15th century, including the lives of St Blaise, St Cecilia, and St Alexius, and an alliterative poem intitled *Somer Soneday*, making in all the Contents of the Volume to amount to 70 pieces." The lays of Havelok and Horn are written out in the same handwriting, of an early date, certainly not later than the end of the thirteenth century. The Havelok begins on fol. 204, and is written in double columns, each column containing 45 lines. A folio is lost between fol. 211 and 212, but no notice of this has been taken in numbering the folios; hence the catchword which should have been found at the bottom of fol. 215 *b*, appears at the bottom of fol. 214 *b* (see l. 2164). The poem terminates at the

27th line on fol. 219 *b*, and is immediately followed by Kyng Horn in the same column. The character of the handwriting is bold and square, but the words are very close together. The initial letter of every line is written a little way apart from the rest, as in William of Palerne, and other MSS. Both the long and short *s* (*f* and *s*) are used. The long *s* is in general well distinguished from *f*, and on this account I have taken the liberty of printing both *esses* alike, as my experience in printing the Romans of Partenay proved that the difficulty of avoiding misprints is greater than the gain of representing the difference between them. The chief point of interest is that, as in *early* MSS., the long *s* is sometimes found at the *end* of a word, as in “uf” in l. 22, and “if” in l. 23. The following are all the examples of the use of this letter in the first 26 lines; fo (4), wictefte (9), ftede (10), crift, fchilde (16), Krift, fo (17), fo (19), fchal (21), Krift, uf (22), if (23), ftalworpi (24), ftalworpefte (25), ftede (26). With this exception, the present reprint is a faithful representation of the original; for, as the exact fidelity of a text is of the first importance, I have been careful to compare the proof-sheets with the MS. twice throughout; besides which, the original edition is itself exceedingly correct, and had been re-read by Sir F. Madden with the MS. His list of errata (nearly all of them of minor importance) agreed almost exactly with my own. A great difficulty is caused by the use of the Saxon letter *w* (*p*). This letter, the thorn-letter (*þ*), and *y*, are all three made very nearly alike. In general, the *y* is dotted, but the dot is occasionally omitted. Wherever the letter really appears to be a *w*, I have denoted it by printing the *w* as an italic letter. The following are, I believe, the *only* examples of it. *Wit*-drow = withdrew, l. 502; *we*, 1058; *was*, 1129 (cf. “him was ful wa,” *Sir Tristr.* f. iii. st. 43); *berwen*, 1426 (written “berwen” in l. 697); *wat* = known, 1674; *we*, miswritten for *wo* = who, 1914; to which perhaps we may add *wit*, 997. This evidence is interesting as shewing that this letter was then fast going out of use, and I think that we may safely date the final disappearance of this letter from MSS. at about the year 1300. As regards the *th*, we may remark that at the end of a word both *þ* and *th* are used, as in “norþ and suth,”



l. 434; sometimes *th* occurs in the middle of a word, as "sithen," l. 1238, which is commonly written "sipen," as in l. 399. The words *pe*, *pat*, *per*, &c., are hardly ever written otherwise. But the reader will remark many instances in which *th* final seems to have the hard sound of *t*, as in *brouth*, 57, *nouth*, 58, *lith*, 534, *pouth*, 1190, &c.; cf. § 27. The letter *t* is sometimes shortened so as nearly to resemble *c*, and *c* is sometimes lengthened into *t*. The letters *n* and *u* are occasionally alike, but the difference between them is commonly well marked. The *i* has a long stroke over it when written next to *m* or *n*. On the whole, the writing is very clear and distinct, after a slight acquaintance with it. The poem is marked out into paragraphs by the use of large letters. I have introduced a slight space at the end of each paragraph, to shew this more clearly.

#### § 27. ON THE GRAMMATICAL FORMS OCCURRING IN THE POEM.

The following peculiarities of spelling may be first noted. We frequently find *h* prefixed to words which it is usual to spell without one. Examples are: *holde* for *old*, *hete* for *ete* (eat), *het* for *et* (ate), *heure* for *euere*, *Henglishe* for *Englishe*, &c.; see the Glossary, under the letter H. This enables us to explain some words which at first appear puzzling; thus *her* = *er*, *ere*; *hayse* = *ayse*, ease; *helde* = *elde*, old age; *hore* = *ore*, grace; *hende* = *ende*, which in one passage means *end*, but in another *a duck*. The forms *hof*, *hus*, *hure*, for *of*, *us*, *ure* are such as we should hardly have expected to find. On the other hand, *h* is omitted in the words *auelok*, *aueden*, *osed*, and in *is* for *his* (l. 2254). These instances, and other examples such as follow, may readily be found by help of the Glossarial Index. Again, *d* final after *l* or *n* was so slightly sounded as to be omitted even in writing. Examples are: *lon* for *lond*, *hel* for *held*, *bihel* for *biheld*, *shel* for *sheld*, *gol* for *gold*. But a more extraordinary omission is that of *r* final in *the*, *neythe*, *othe*, *douthe*, which does not seem to be satisfactorily explained even by the supposition that the scribe may have omitted the small upward curl which does duty for *er* so frequently in MSS. For we further find the omission of *l* final, as in *mike* for *mikel*, *we* for *wel*, and of *t* final, as in *bes* for *best*; from which



instances we should rather infer some peculiarity of pronunciation rendering final letters indistinct, of which there are numerous examples, as *fiel* for *field*, in modern provincial English. Cf. *il* for *ilk*, in ll. 818, 1740; and *twel* for *twelf*. "From the same license," says Sir F. Madden, "arises the frequent repetition of such rhythm as *riden* and *side*, where the final *n* seems to have been suppressed in pronunciation. Cf. ll. 29, 254, 957, 1105, 1183, 2098, &c., and hence we perceive how readily the infinitive verbal Saxon termination glided into its subsequent form. The broad pronunciation of the dialect in which the poem was written is also frequently discernible, as in *slawen*, l. 2676, and *knaue*, l. 949, which rhyme to *Rauen* and *plawe*.<sup>1</sup> So likewise, *bothe* or *bethe* is, in sound, equivalent to *rede*, ll. 360, 694, 1680." Other peculiarities will be noticed in discussing the Metre. Observe also the Anglo-Saxon *hw* for the modern *wh*, exemplified by *hwo*, 368, *hwan*, 474, *hweper*, 294, *hwere*, 549, *hwil*, 301; compare also *qual*, *qui*, *quan*, meaning *whale*, *why*, *when*.<sup>2</sup> The letter *w* (initial) is the modern provincial 'oo, as in *wlf*, *wluine*, *wman*; cf. *hw*, *w*, both forms of *how*; and *lowerd* for *louerd*. In particular, we should notice the hard sound of *t* denoted by *th* in the words *with*, *rithe*, *brouth*, *nouth*, *ricth*, *knich*, meaning *white*, *right*, *brought*, *naught*, *right*, *knight*; so too *douter*, daughter, *neth*, a net, *uth*, out, *woth*, wot, *leth*, let, *lauthe* (*laught*), caught, *nither-tale* (*nighter-tale*), night-time.<sup>3</sup> On the other hand, *t* stands for *th* in *hauet*, 564, *seyt*, 647, *herknet*, 1, *wit*, 100. When *th* answers to the modern sound, it seems equivalent to A.S. *ð* rather than to A.S. *þ*; examples are *mouth*, 433, *oth*, 260, *loth*, 261. *Y* and *g* are interchangeable, as in *yaf*, *gaf*, *youen*, *gouen*; *g* even occurs for *k*, as in *rang*, 2561. In MSS., *e* is not uncommonly written by

<sup>1</sup> "Cf. K. Horn, 1005, where *haue* rhymes with *plawe*."—M. Mr A. J. Ellis would consider *slawen*, *knaue*, &c., as assonances—"Do not think of the pronunciation of modern *draven*. Read *sla-wen*, *kna-ue*, an assonance. *Brfe* does not rhyme to *reden*; it is only an assonance."—Ellis. On the other hand, we find the spellings *rathe*, *rothe* instead of *rede* in ll. 1335 and 2817.

<sup>2</sup> "*Qual* = *quhal*, the aspirate being omitted; and *quhal* = *whal*."—Ellis.

<sup>3</sup> The use of *th* for *t* is not uncommon. In the *Romans of Partenay*, we have *thorn*, *thaken*, *thouchyng*, &c., for *torn*, *taken*, *touching*; see Preface, p. xvi. In the copy of *Piers Plowman* in MS. Camb. Univ. Lib. Dd 1. 17, I have observed several similar examples. Cf. Eng. *tea*, Ital. *tè*, Span. *té*, with Fr. *thé*, Swed. *the*, G. Du. Dan. *thee*.

mistake for *o*; this may perhaps account for *helde*, 2472, *meste*, 233, *her*, 1924, which should rather be *holde*, 30, *moste*, and *hor*, 235; there is a like confusion of *weren* and *woren*; and perhaps *grotinde* should be *gretinde*.<sup>1</sup> The vowel *u* is replaced by the modern *ou* in the words *prud*, 302, *suth*, 434, *but*, 1040, *hus*, 740, *spusen*, 1123; cf. *hws* in l. 1141. Mr Ellis shews, in his *Early English Pronunciation*, chap. v, that in pure specimens of the *thirteenth* century, there is no *ou* in such words, and in the *fourteenth* century, no simple *u*. This furnishes a ready explanation of the otherwise difficult *sure*, in l. 2005; it is merely the adverb of *sour*, *sourly* being used in the sense of *bitterly*; to *bye it bitterly*, or *bye it bittre*, is a common phrase in *Piers Plowman*. Other spellings worth notice occur in *ouerga*, 314, *stra*, 315 (spelt *strie* in l. 998), *have*, 1188, *plawe*, 950, *sal*, 628 (commonly spelt *shal*). Note also *arum* for *arm*, *harum* for *harm*, *boren* for *born*, 1878, and *koren* for *corn*, 1879. There are several instances of words joined together, as *hawi*, 2002, *bidli*, 484; *shaltu*, 2186, *wiltu*, 905, *wenestu*, 1787; *wilte*, 528, *thenkeste*, 578, *shaltou*, 1800; *thouth*, 790, *hauedet*, *younet*, *hauenet*; *sawe*, 338; *latus*, 1772; where the personal pronouns *i*, *þu*, *he*, *it*, *we*, *us* are added to the verb. Hence, in l. 745, it is very likely that *calleth* is written for *callet*, i. e. call it; and on the same principle we can explain *dones*; see *Es* in the Glossary. In like manner *goddot* is contracted from *God wot*; and *þerl* from *þe erl*.

*Nouns.* As regards the nouns employed, I may remark that the final *e* is perhaps always sounded in the oblique cases, and especially in the dative case; as in *nedè*, *stedè*, &c. (see ll. 86—105), *willè*, 85, *gyuè*, 357, *blissè*, 2187, *cricè*, 2450; cf. the adjectives *longè*, 2299, *wisè*, 1713; also the nominatives *rosè*, 2919, *newè*, 2974. *Frend* is a pl. form; cf. *hend*, which is both a plural (2444) and a dat. sing. (505). In the plural, the final *e* is fully pronounced in the adjectives *allè*, 2, *hardè*, 143, *starkè*, 1015, *fremdè*, 2277, *bleike*, 470, and in many others; cf. the full form *bopen*, 2223. Not only does the phrase *none kines*, of no kind, occur in ll. 861, 1140, but we find the unusual phrase *neuere kines*, of

<sup>1</sup> "Is *e* for *o* a mistake, or may it be compared with *preue* for *prove*, &c.?"—Ellis. I would observe that *greting* is the spelling of the *substantive* in l. 166.

never a kind, in l. 2691. Among the numerals, we find not only *pre*, but *prinne*.

*Pronouns.* The first personal pronoun occurs in many forms in the nominative, as *i*, *y*, *hi*, *ich*, *ie*, *hie*, and even *ihe*; the oblique cases take the form *me*. For the second person, we have *þu*, *pou*, in the nominative, and also *tu*, when preceded by *þat*, as in l. 2903. We may notice also *hij*s for *his*, l. 47; *he* for *they*; *sho*, 112, *scho*, 126, *sche*, 1721, for *she*; and, in particular, the dual form *unke*r, of you two, 1882. The most noteworthy possessive pronouns are *minè*, pl. 1365, *þinè*, pl. 620; *his* or *hise*, pl. *hisè*, 34; *ure*, 606; *youres*, 2800; *hirè*, 2918, with which cf. the dat. sing. *hirè* of the personal pronoun, 85, 300. *þis* is plural, and means *these*, in l. 1145. As in other old English works, *men* is frequently an impersonal pronoun, answering to the French *on*, and is followed by a singular verb; as in *men ringes*, 390, *men seyt and suereth*, 647, *men fetes*, 2341, *men nam*, 900, *men birþe*, 2101, *men dos*, 2434; cf. *folk sau*, 2410; but there are a few instances of its use with a plural verb, as *men haueden*, 901, *men shulen*, 747. The former is the more usual construction.

*Verbs.* The infinitives of verbs rarely have *y-* prefixed; two examples are *y-lere*, 12, *y-se*, 334. Nor is the same prefix common before past participles; yet we find *i-gret*, 163, *i-groten*, 285, and *i-maked*, 5, as well as *maked*, 23. Infinitives end commonly in *-en* or *-e*, as *riden*, 26, *y-lere*; also in *-n*, as *don*, 117, *leyn*, 718; and even in *-o*, as *flo*, 612, *slo*, 1364. The present singular, 3rd person, of the indicative, ends both in *-es* or *-s*, and *-eth* or *-th*, the former being the more usual. Examples are *longes*, 396, *leues*, 1781, *haldes*, 1382, *fedes*, 1693, *bes*, 1744, *comes*, 1767, *glides*, 1851, *þarnes*, 1913, *haues*, 1952, *etes*, 2036, *dos*, 1913; also *eteth*, 672, *haueþ*, 804, *bikenneth*, 1269, *doth*, 1876, *lip*, 673. The full form of the 2nd person is *-est*, as *louest*, 1663; but it is commonly cut down to *-es*, as *weldes*, 1359, *slepes*, 1283, *haues*, 688, *etes*, 907, *getes*, 908; cf. *dos*, 2390, *mis-gos*, 2707, *slos*, 2706. The same dropping of the *t* is observable in the past tense, as in *refþes*, 2394, *feddes and claddes*, 2907. Still more curious is the ending in *t* only, as in *þu bi-hetet*, 677, *þou mait*, 689; cf. ll. 852, 1348. In the subjunctive mood the *-st* disappears as in Anglo-Saxon,



and hence the forms *bute pou gonge*, 690, *pat pu fonge*, 856, &c. ; cf. *bede*, 668. In the 3rd person, present tense, of the same mood, we have the *-e* fully pronounced, as in *shildè*, 16, *yeuè*, 22, *leuè*, 334, *redè*, 687 ; and in l. 544, *wreken* should undoubtedly be *wrekè*, since the *-en* belongs to the plural, as in *moten*, 18. The plural of the indicative present ends in *-en*, as, *we hauen*, 2798, *ye witen*, 2208, *pei taken*, 1833 ; or, very rarely, in *-eth*, as *ye bringeth*, 2425, *he (they) stranglèth*, 2584. Sometimes the final *-n* is lost, as in *we haue*, 2799, *ye do*, 2418, *he (they) brenne*, 2583. There is even a trace of the plural in *-es*, as in *haues*, 2581. The present tense has often a future signification, as in *etes*, 907, *eteth*, 672, *getes*, 908.

*Past tense.* Of the third person singular and plural of the past tense the following are selected examples. WEAK VERBS : *hauede*, 770, *sparedè*, 898, *yemedè*, 975, *semedè*, 976, *sparkèdè*, 2144, *pankedè*, 2189 ; pl. *loueden*, 955, *leykeden*, 954, *woundeden*, 2429, *stareden*, 1037, *yemede* (rather read *yemededen*), 2277, *makeden*, 554, *sprauleden*, 475 ; also *calde*, 2115, *gredde*, 2417, *herde*, 2410, *kepte*, 879, *fedde*, 786, *ledde*, 785, *spedde*, 756, *clapte*, 1814, *kiste*, 1279 ; pl. *herden*, *brenden*, 594, *kisten*, 2162, *ledden*, 1246 ; and, thirdly, of the class which change the vowel, *aute*, 743, *laute*, 744, *bitauhte*, 2212. Compare the past participles *osed*, 971, *mixed*, 2533, *parred*, 2439, *gadred*, 2577 ; *reft*, 1367, *wend*, 2138, *hyd*, 1059 ; *told*, 1036, *sold*, 1638, *wrouth* = *wrout*, 1352. There are also at least two past participles in *-et*, as *slenget*, 1923, *grethet*, 2615, to which add *weddeth*, *beddeth*, 1127. In l. 2057, *knaued* seems put for *knawen*, for the rime's sake.

STRONG VERBS : third person singular, past tense, *bar*, 815, *bad*, 1415, *yaf*, or *gaf*, *spak* ; *kam*, 766 (spelt *cham*, 1873), *nam*, *kneu*, *hew*, 2729, *lep*, 1777, *let*, 2447 (spelt *leth*, 2651), *slep*, 1280, *wex*, 281 ; *drou*, 705, *for*, 2943, *low*, 903, *slow*, 1807, *hof*, 2750, *stod*, 983, *tok*, 751, *wok*, 2093 ; pl. *beden*, 2774, *youen*, or *gouen* ; *comen*, 1017 (spelt *keme*, 1208), *nomen*, 2790 (spelt *neme*, 1207), *knewen*, 2149, *lopen*, 1896, *slepen*, 2128 ; *drowen*, 1837, *foren*, 2380, *lowen*, 1056, *slowen*, 2414, &c. And secondly, of the class which more usually change the vowel in the plural of the preterite, we find the singular forms *bigan*, 1357, *barw*, 2022, *karf*, 471, *swank*, 788, *warp*, 1061, *shon*, 2144, *clef*, 2643, *sau*, 2409, *grop*, 1965, *drof*, 725, *shof*,

892; pl. *bigunnen*, 1011, *sowen*, 1055, *gripen*, 1790, *driue*, for *driuen*, 1966; also *bunden*, 2436, *scuten*, 2431 (spelt *schoten*, 1864, *shoten*, 1838), *leyen*, 2132, &c. Compare the past participles *boren*, 1878, *youen* or *gouen*, *cumen*, 1436, *nomen*, 2265 (spelt *numen*, 2581), *laten*, 1925, *waxen*, 302, *druwen*, 1925, *slawen*, 2000, which two last become *drawe*, *slawe* in ll. 1802, 1803.

We should also observe the past tenses *spen*, 1819, *stirt*, 812, *fauth* for *faut* or *fauht*, 1990, *citte*, 942, *bere*, 974, *kipte*, 1050, *flow*, 2502, *plat*, 2755; and the past participles *demd* for *demed*, 2488, *giue* for *giuen*, 2488, *henge*, 1429, *keft*, 2005.

*Imperative Mood.* Examples of the imperative mood singular, 2nd person, are *et*, *sit*, 925, *nim*, 1336, *yif*, 674; in the plural, the usual ending is *-es*, as in *lipen*, 2204, *comes*, 1798, *folwen*, 1885, *lokes*, 2292, *bes*, 2246, to which set belong *slos*, 2596, *dos*, 2592; but there are instances of the ending *-eth* also, as in *cometh*, 1885, *yeueþ*, 911, to which add *doth*, 2037, *goth*, 1780. Indeed both forms occur in one line, as in *Cometh swiþe*, and *folwen me* (1885). Instead of *-eth* we even find *-et*, as in *herknet*, 1. These variations afford a good illustration of the unsettled state of the grammar in some parts of England at this period; we need not suppose the scribe to be at fault in all cases where there is a want of uniformity.

Of reflexive verbs, we meet with *me dremede*, 1284, *me met*, 1285, *me pinkes*, 2169, *him hungrede*, 654, *him semede*, 1652, *him stondes*, 2983, *him rewede*, 503. The present participles end most commonly in *-inde*, as *fastinde*, 865, *grotinde* (? *gretinde*), 1390, *lauhwinde*, 946, *plattinde*, 2282, *starinde*, 508; but we also find *gangande*, 2283, *driuende*, 2702. Compare the nouns *tipande*, 2279, *offrende*, 1386, which are Norse forms, *tíðindi* (pl.) being the Icelandic for *tidings*, and *offrandi* the present participle of *offra*, to offer. But the true Icelandic equivalent of the substantive *an offering* is *offran*, and the old Swedish is *offer*; and hence we see at how very early a date the confusion between the noun-ending and the ending of the present participle arose; a confusion which has bewildered many generations of Englishmen. Yet this very poem in other places has *-ing* as a noun-ending *only*, never (that I remember) for the present participle. Examples of it are



*greting*, 166, *dreping*, i. e. slaughter, 2684, *buttinge*, *skirming*, *wrastling*, *putting*, *harping*, *piping*, *reding*; see ll. 2322—2327. Such words are frequently called *verbal nouns*, but the term is very likely to mislead. I have found that many suppose it to imply *present participles used as nouns*, instead of *nouns of verbal derivation*. If such nouns could be called by some new name, such as *nouns of action*, or by any other title that can be conventionally restricted to signify them, it would, I think, be a gain. Amongst the auxiliary verbs, may be noted the use of *cone*, 622, as the subjunctive form of *canst*; *we mone*, 840, as the subjunctive of *mowen*; cf. *ye mowen*, 11; but especially we should observe the use of the comparatively rare verbs *birþe*, it behoves, pt. t. *birde*, it behoved, and *þurte*, he need, the latter of which is fully explained in the Glossary to William of Palerne, s. v. *þort*.

The prefix *to-* is employed in *both* senses, as explained in the same Glossary, s. v. *To-*. In *to-brised*, *to-deyle*, &c., it is equivalent to the German *zer-* and Mæso-Gothic *dis-*; of its *other* and *rarer* use, wherein it answers to the German *zu-* and Mæso-Gothic *du-*, there is but *one* instance, viz. in the word *to-yede*, 765, which signifies *went to*; cf. Germ. *zugehen*, to go to, *zugang* (A.S. *to-gang*), access, approach. There are some curious instances of a peculiar syntax, whereby the infinitive mood active partakes of a passive signification, as in *he made him kesten*, and *in feteres festen*, he caused him to be cast in prison (or *perhaps*, overthrown), and to be fastened in fetters; l. 81. But it is probable that this is to be explained by considering it as a phrase in which we should *now* supply the word *men*, and that we may interpret it by “he caused [men] to cast him in prison, and to fasten him with fetters;” for in ll. 1784, 1785, the phrase is repeated in a less ambiguous form. See also l. 86. So also, in ll. 2611, 2612, I consider *keste*, *late*, *sette*, to be in the infinitive mood. Such a construction is at once understood by comparing it with the German *er liess ihn binden*, he caused him to be bound. In l. 2352, appears the most unusual form *ilker*, which is literally *of each*, and hence, *apiece*; cf. *unker*, which also is a genitive plural. It will be observed that the verb following is in the plural, the real nominative to it being *þei þre*. In l. 2404, the expression *þat þer þrette*, “that there threat,” recalls a colloquialism

which is still common. The word *prie*, 730, is, apparently, the O.E. adverb *thrie*, thrice; *liues*, 509, is an adverb ending in *-es*, originally a genitive case. *pus-gate* is, according to Mr Morris, unknown to the Southern dialect; it occurs in ll. 785, 2419, 2586. I may add that Havelok contains as many as five expressions, which seem to refer to *proverbs* current at the time of writing it. See ll. 307, 648, 1338, 1352, 2461.

## § 28. ON THE METRE OF HAVELOK.

The poem is written in the familiar rhythm of which I have already spoken elsewhere, viz. at p. xxxvii of the Preface to Mr Morris's edition of *Genesis and Exodus*. The metre of Havelok is rather more regular, but many of the remarks there made apply to it. The chief rule is that every line shall contain four accents,<sup>1</sup> the two principal types being afforded (1) by the eight-syllable and nine-syllable lines—

(a) For hém | ne yé|dë góld | ne fé, 44 ;

(b) It wás | a kíng | bi á|rë dâwës, 27 ;

and (2) by the seven-syllable and eight-syllable lines—

(c) Hérk|net tó | me gó|dë men, 1 ;

(d) Al|lë thát | he míc|h|ë fyndë, 42.

To one of these four forms every line can be reduced, by the use of that slighter utterance of less important syllables which is so very common in English poetry. It is not the number of *syllables*, but of *accents*, that is essential. In *every* line throughout the poem there are four accents, with only two or three excep-

<sup>1</sup> "This *four accents* I consider to be a wrong way of stating the fact. . . The metre consists of four measures, each generally, not always, of *two* syllables, the first often *one* syllable, the others often of *three* syllables, and each measure has generally more stress on the last than on any other, but the accents or principal stresses in the verse are usually 2, sometimes 3, perhaps never 4."—A. J. Ellis. I need hardly add that such a statement is more exact, and that I here merely use the word *accent* in the loose sense it often bears, viz. as denoting the "stress," more or less heavy, and sometimes imperceptible, which is popularly supposed to belong to the last syllable in a measure. I must request the reader to remember that this present sketch of the metre is very slight and imperfect, and worded in the usual not very correct popular language. For more strict and careful statements the reader is referred to Mr A. J. Ellis's work on *Early English Pronunciation*. Until readers have made themselves acquainted with that work, they will readily understand what I *here* mean by "accents;" afterwards, they can easily adopt a stricter idea of its meaning.

tions, viz. ll. 1112, 1678, &c., which are defective. In a similar manner, we may readily scan any of the lines, as e. g. ll. 2—4 ;

(c) Wi|uēs, mayd|nēs, and all|lē men

(b) Of a ta|lē þat | ich you | wile tellē<sup>1</sup>

(b) Wo-so | 't wil' her' | and þer|to duellē, &c.

Here the syllables *-nes* and in l. 3, of *a* in l. 4, and *it wile* in l. 5, are so rapidly pronounced as to occupy only the room of one unaccented syllable in lines of the strict type. However awkward this appears to be in theory, it is very easy in practice, as the reciter readily manages his voice so as to produce the right rhythmical effect ; and, indeed, this variation of arrangement is a real improvement, preventing the recitation from becoming monotonous. Those who have a good ear for rhythm will readily understand this, and it seems unnecessary to dwell upon it more at length. But it may be remarked, that the three lines above quoted are rather *more irregular than usual*, and that the metre is such as to enable us to fix the instances in which the final *-e* is pronounced with great accuracy, on which account I shall say more about this presently. I would, however, first enumerate the rimes which seem to be more or less inexact or peculiar, or otherwise instructive.

I. *Repetitions*. Such are *men, men* ; *holden, holde*, 29 ; <sup>2</sup> *erþe, erþe*, 739 ; *heren, heren*, 1640 ; *nithes, knithes*, 2048 ; *youres, youres*, 2800. To this class belong also *longe, londe*, 172, *heye, heie*, 1151, 2544 ; where *longe, londe* is, however, only an assonance.

II. *Assonant rimes*. Here the rime is in the vowel-sound ; the consonantal endings differ. Such are *rym, fyn*, 21 ; *yeme, quene*, 182 ; *shop, hok*, 1101 (where *shop* is probably corrupt) ; *odrat, bad*, 1153 ; *fet, ek*, 1303 ; *yer, del*, 1333 ; *maked, shaped*, 1646 ; *beþe, rede*, 1680 ; *riche, chinche*, 1763, 2940 ; *feld, swerd*, 1824, 2634 ; *seruede, werewed*, 1914 ; *wend, gent*, 2138 ; *þank, rang*, 2560 ; *bopen, ut-drowen*, 2658. To the same class belong *name, rauē*,

<sup>1</sup> "You cannot scan this line in any way. This method of doing it is quite impossible ; it is a mere chopping to make a verse like this. The line is corrupt. Omit *þat*, and you have

or better,  
Of | a tal' | ich you | wile telle  
Of | a tal' | ich wil|e telle."—Ellis.

<sup>2</sup> The number is that of the *first* line of the pair.



1397, *grauen*, name, 2528; *slawen*, *rauen*, 2676. *Henged*, *slenget*, 1922, should rather be called an imperfect rime.<sup>1</sup> There is also found the exact opposite to this, viz., an agreement or *consonance* at the end, preceded by an apparent diversity in the vowel; as *longe*, *gange*, 795 (but see *longe*, *gonge*, 843), *bidde*, *stede*, 2548, *open*, *drepen*, 1782, *gres*, *is*, 2698, *bope*, *rathe*, 2936 (but see *rathe*, *bathe*, 1335, 2542), *fet* (long *e*), *gret*, 2158; and not unlike these are some instances of loose rimes, as *bepe*, *rede*, 360, *knaue*, *plawe*, 949, *sawe*, *hawe* (where *hawe* is written for *have*), 1187, *sawe*, *wowe*, 1962 (but see *wowe*, *lowe*, 2078, *lowe*, *sawe*, 2142, *wawe*, *lowe*, 2470). Observe also *bouth*, *oft* (read *vt* or *ut* = *out*?), 883, *tun*, *barun*, 1001 (cf. *toun*, *brun*, 1750, *champiouns*, *barouns*, 1032); *plattinde*, *gangande*, 2282, &c. *Eir*, *tope*, 410, *harde*, *crakede*, 567, are probably due to mistakes.<sup>2</sup>

III. Rimes which shew that the final *-en* was pronounced so slightly as to be nearly equivalent to *-e*. Examples: *holden*, *holde*, 29; *gongen*, *fonge*, 855; *bringe*, *ringen*, 1105; *mouthen*, *douth*, 1183; *riden*, *side*, 1758; *wesseylen*, *to-deyle*, 2098; *slawen*, *drawe*, 2476. In the same way *hon* rimes to *lond*, 1341, owing to the slight pronunciation of the final *d*.<sup>3</sup>

IV. Rimes which appear imperfect, but may be perfect. *Riche* answers to *like*, 132, but the true spelling is *rike*, answering to *sike*, 290. *Mithe*, 196, should probably be *moucte*, as in l. 257, and it would thus rime with *poucte*. *Blinne*, 2670, should certainly be *blunne*; cf. A.S. *blinnan*, pt. t. s. *ic blan*, pt. t. pl. *we blunnon*; and thus it rimes to *sunne*. *Misdede*, 993, is clearly an error for

<sup>1</sup> "You have omitted the curious *harde*, *krakede*, 567, here; it is only an assonance, not a mistake, I believe."—Ellis. But see note to l. 567.

<sup>2</sup> "On *i*, *e* rhymes, see p. 271, last line and following, of my Chap. IV. The *o*, *a* depend on a provincialism, and this applies to *sawe*, *wowe*, *bepe*, *rede*, *knaue*, *plawe*, *sawe*, *have*, &c. *Bouth*, *oft* is a case of assonance, *bouth* being *bought*, where properly the *ugh* is the voiced sound of Scotch *quh*, and easily passes into *f*. The assonance is therefore nearly a rhyme. *Plattinde*, *gangande* is probably a scribal error. *Eir*, *tope* is certainly a mistake; read

Swanborow, helfed, his sistres fair."—Ellis.

We may then perhaps alter *gangande* to *ganginde*. I do not quite like writing the modern form *fair* instead of the old plural *fayre* in order to gain a rime to *eir*. Cf. ll. 1095, 2300, 2538, 2768.

<sup>3</sup> "*Hon*, *lond* may arise from a Danism, or from an English custom at that time of not pronouncing *d* after *n* in *nd* final; Danish *Mand* and German *Mann* are identical."—Ellis. I prefer to call it Danish; we English, now at least, often add a *d*, as in *sound*, *gownd*, from *soun*, *gown*.

*misseyde*, as appears from the parallel passage in ll. 49, 50; and it then rimes with *leyde*. So in l. 1736, for *deled* read *deyled*, as in l. 2098. *Boþe*, 430, has no line answering to it, and a line may have been lost. *Nieth*, *lict*, 575, is a perfect rime. *Halde*, *bolde*, 2308, may also be perfect. *For-sworen* answers to *for-lorn* (pronounced *for-loren*), 1423; *bitawte* to *authe* (pronounced *aute*), 1409; *yemede* (pronounced *yem-dè*) is not an improper rime to *fremde*, 2276; *anon* rimes with *iohan* (if pronounced *ion* or *John*, as indicated by the spelling *ion* in l. 177), 2562, 2956. Yet in another instance it seems to be two syllables, *Jo-han*; see *wimman*, *iohan*, 1720.<sup>1</sup> *Speche* should be *speke*, and thus rimes to *meke*, 1065. *Stareden* should perhaps be *stradden*, or some such form, rightly riming to *ladden*, 1037. Under this head we may notice some rimes which throw, possibly, some light on the pronunciation. Thus, for the sound of *ey*, *ei*, observe *hayse*, *preyse*, 60; *leyke*, *bleike*, 469; *laumprei*, *wei*, 771; *deye* rimes to *preye*, 168; *day* to *wey*, 663; *seyd* to *brayd*, 1281; but we also find *hey*, *fri*, 1071; *hey*, *sley*, 1083, *heye*, *heie*, 1151; *heye*, *eie*, 2544; *leye*, *heye*, 2010; *heye*, *fleye*, 2750. *Fram* rimes to *sham*, 55; yet the latter word is really *shame*, 83; *gange* is also spelt *gonge*, *halde* rimes with *bolde*, 2308. The pronunciation of *ware*, *were*, or *wore*, seems ambiguous; we find *sore*, *wore*, 236; *wore*, *more*, 258; *ware*, *sare*, 400; *wore*, *sore*, 414; *were*, *pere*, 741; *more*, *pore*, 921. For the sound of *e*, observe *suere*, *gere*, 388; *suereth*, *dereth*, 648; *eten*, *geten*, 930; *yet*, *fet*, 1319; *stem*, *bem*, 592; *glem*, *bem*, 2122; also *yeue*, *liue*, 198; *liue*, *gyue*, 356; *lyue*, *yeue*, 1217; *her*, *ther*, 1924; *fishere*, *swere*, 2230. For that of *i*,

<sup>1</sup> “*Johan* is almost *Jan* in Chaucer, however written, but l. 177 wants a measure; read—

Bi [Jhesu] crist, and bi seint ion.

In l. 1720 also the verse is defective; omit *al*, and read—

In denemark nis wimman [non]

So fayr so sche, bi seint Johan,

where *seint* is a dissyllable; see p. 264 of my *Early English Pronunciation*. *Hey*, *fri*, 1071, is an error; read *hy*, and see p. 285 of my book. The other instances of *ei*, *ai* are all regular, the confusion of *ei*, *ai* being perfect in the thirteenth century. *Shame*, l. 83, is dative, and would prove nothing, but *shame* in Ormin is conclusive. Hence in *sham*, 56, we have an *e* omitted; compare p. 323 of my book, and the German *Ruh*.”—Ellis. In other places, the spelling *heye* occurs, rather than *hy*; see ll. 719, 987, 1071, 1083, 1289, 1685, 2431, 2471, 2544, 2724, 2750, 2945, &c.



observe *cri, merci*, 270 ; *sire, swire*, 310 ; *swipe, vnblipe*, 140 ; *fir, shir*, 587 ; *sire, hire*, 909 ; *rise, bise*, 723 ; *fyr, shir*, 915 ; *lye, stric*, 997 ; *hey, fri*, 1071 ; *for-pi, merci*, 2500. For that of *o*, observe *two, so*, 350 ; *do, so*, 713 ; *shon, on*, 969 ; *hom, grom*, 789 ; *lode, brode*, 895 ; *anon, ston*, 927 ; *ston, won*, 1023 ; *do, sho* (shoe), 1137 ; *do, sho* (she), 1231 ; *stod, mod*, 1702 ; *ilkon, ston*, 1842 ; *shon* (shoon), *ston*, 2144 ; *croud, god*, 2338 ; *don, bon*, 2354 ; *sone* (soon), *bone*, 2504 ; *bole, hole*, 2438.<sup>1</sup> Only in a few of these instances would the words rime in modern standard English. For the *ou* and *u* sounds, observe *coupe, moupe*, 112 ; *yow, now*, 160 ; *wolde, fulde*, 354 ; *yw, nou*, 453 ; *bounden, wnden*, 545 ; *sowel, couel*, 767 ; *low, ynow*, 903 ; *sowen, lowe*, 957 ; *strout, but*, 1039 ; *pou, nou*, 1283 ; *doun, tun*, 1630 ; *erus, hous*, 1966 ; *wounde, grunde*, 1978 ; *bour, tour*, 2072 ; *spuse, huse*, 2912. *Lowe*, 1291, 2431, 2471, should rather be *lawe*, as in l. 2767. These hints will probably suffice for the guidance of those who wish to follow up the subject. It is evident that full dependence cannot be placed upon the *exactness* of the rimes.

### § 29. ON THE FINAL -E, &c.

There can be little doubt that the final *-e* is, in general, fully pronounced in this poem wherever it is written, with but a very few exceptions ; but at the same time it is liable to be elided when followed by a vowel or (sometimes) by the letter *h*, as is usual in old English poetry. In the following remarks, I shall use an apostrophe to signify that *e* is *written, but not pronounced* ; thus “*wil*” signifies that “*wile*” is the MS. form, but “*wil*” the apparent pronunciation. I shall use an italic *e* to signify that the *e* is elided because followed by a vowel or *h*, as “*cuppe*” (l. 14) ; and in the same way, “*riden*,” “*litel*,” &c., signify that the syllables *-en*, *-el* are slurred over in a like manner. It will be seen that such syllables are, in general, slurred over when they occur before a vowel or *h* ; under the same circumstances, that is, as the final *-e*. When I simply write the word in the form “*gode*” as in the MS., I mean that the *-e* is *fully pronounced* ; so that “*gode*” stands for “*godë*.”

<sup>1</sup> “The instances of *o* are all regular, except *croud, god*, 2338, which is a false rhyme altogether ; *ou* = modern *oo*.”—Ellis.

The following, then, are instances. I follow the order in Mr Morris's Introduction to Chaucer's Prologue, &c. (Clarendon Press Series).

(A) In nouns and adjectives (of A.S. origin) the final *-e* represents one of the final vowels *a, u, e*, and hence is fully sounded even in the nominative case in such instances. Examples; gome (A.S. *goma*), 7, blome (A.S. *bloma*), 63, trewe (A.S. *treowe*), 179, knaue (A.S. *cnafa*), 308, 450, sone (A.S. *sunu*), 394.

(B) In words of French origin it is sounded as in French verse. Such words are scarce in Havelok. Examples: hayse, 59, beste, 279, miracle, 500, rose, 2919, curtesye (*miswritten* curteyse), 2876, cf. 194, drurye, 195, male, 48, large, 97, noble, 1263.

(C) It is a remnant of various grammatical inflexions:—(1) it is a sign of the *dative* case in nouns; as, nede, 9, stede, 10, trome, 8, wronge, 72, stede, 142, dede (not elided, because of the cæsura), 167, arke, 222, erpe, 248, lite þrawe, 276. It also sometimes marks the accusative, or the genitive of feminine nouns: *accusatives*, cuppe, 14, wede, 94, brede, 98, shrede, 99, mede, 102, quiste, 219, sorwe, 238 (cf. sorw' in l. 240), sone, 308, knaue, 308, sone, 350, wille, 441: *genitives*, messe, 186, 188, helle, 405.

(2) In adjectives it marks—

(a) the *definite form* of the adjective; as, þe meste, 233, þe riche (not elided<sup>1</sup>), 239, te beste, 87, þe hexte [man], 1080, þat wicke, 1158, þat foule, 1158, þe firste, 1333, þe rede, 1397. This rule is most often violated in the case of *dissyllabic* superlatives; as, þe wictest', 8, þe fairest, þe strangest, 1081, 1110; cf. 199, 200.

(b) the *plural* number. Examples abound, as, gode, 1, alle, 2, are, 27, yung = yunge, 30, holde, 30, gode, 34, 55, harde, 143, grene, 470, bleike, 470, halte, 543, doumbe, 543, &c.

The same use is often extended to possessive pronouns; we find the plurals mine, 385, 514 (but min', 392), þine, 620, hise, 34, 67, hure, 1231; and even the singulars hire, 84, 85, hure, 338, yure, 171. But the personal pronoun feminine is often hir', 172, 209; yet see l. 316.

(c) the *vocative* case, as, dere, 839, 2170; leue, 909.

<sup>1</sup> *Riche* being both A.S. and French, has the *e* even when indefinite; a riche king, 341; a riche man, 373.

(3) In verbs it marks—

(a) the infinitive mood ; as, *telle*, 3, *duelle*, 4, *falle*, 39, *beye*, 53, *swere*, 254, *be-bedde*, 421, *bere*, 549, &c. On this point there cannot be a moment's doubt, for the form *-en* is found quite as often, and they rime together, as in 254, 255, cf. 29, 30. But it is well worth remarking that *-en* is slurred over exactly where *-e* would be, with much regularity. Examples are : *riden*, 10, *biginnen*, 21, *maken*, 29, *hengen*, 43, *lurken*, 68, *crepen*, 68, *riden*, 88, *hauen*, 270. Other examples are very numerous. But we sometimes find *-en* not slurred over, as, *drinken*, 15 ; and the same is true even of *-e*, but such cases are exceptional and rare.

(b) the gerund ; as, *to preyse*, 60.

(c) the past participle of a strong verb ; as, *drawe*, 1802, *slawe*, 1803. But these are rare, as they are commonly written *drawen*, *slawen*, 2224.

(d) the past tense of weak verbs, where the *-e* follows *-ed*, *-t*, or *-d*. Examples are very numerous ; as, *louede* = *lov'de*, 30, 35 (not elided), 37, *hauede* = *hav'de*, 343 ; cf. *haued* = *havd'*, 336 ; *purte*, 10, *durste*, 65, *refte*, 94 ; *dede*, 29, *sende*, 136, *seyde*, 228, *herde*, 286. Observe *hated* = *hatede*, 40. The plurals of these tenses are rarely in *-e*, generally in *-en*, as, *haueden*, 241, *deden*, 242, *spraudeen* = *spraul'den*, 475.

(e) the subjunctive or optative mood, or the 3rd person of the imperative mood, which is really the 3rd person of the subjunctive. This rule seems to be carefully observed. Examples are *yeue*, 22, *thaue*, 296, *yerne*, 299, *leue*, 406, *were*, 513, *wite*, 517, &c. So for the *first* person, as, *late*, 509, *lepe* (not elided), 2009, *speke*, 2079 ; and for the *second* person, as, *understonde*, 1159, *fare*, 2705, *cone*, 622, 623.

(f) other parts of a *few* verbs ; thus, the 1st person singular present, as, *liue*, 301, *ete*, 793, *rede*, 1660, *wille*, 388, where *wille* is equivalent to *wish*.

(g) present participles : thus, *plattinde*, 2282, is a half-rime to *gangande*. In other places, the author is careful to place them before a vowel, as *gretinde*, 1390, *lauhwinde*, 946, *starinde*, 508, *driuende*, 2702, *fastinde*, 865.

(4) In adverbs the final *-e* denotes—

(a) an older vowel-ending ; as, *sone* (A.S. *sóna*), 136, *sone*, 218,

251, yete (A.S. *géta*, as well as *gét*), 495, ofte (Swed. *oftu*, Dan. *ofte*), 227.

(b) an adverb as distinguished from its corresponding adjective, as, yerne, 153, loude, 96, longe, 241, more, 301, softe, 305, heye, 335, swipe, 455, harde, 639. Hence, in l. 640, we should read *neye*.

(c) an older termination in *-en* or *-an*; as, þer-hinne, 322, 709, 712, henne, 843, inne, 855. Cf. A.S. *heonan*, *innan*.

(d) It is also sounded in the termination *-like*, as, sikerlike, 422. Hence, in baldelike, 53, *both* the *ees* are sounded; cf. feblelike, 418. When the final *-e* is slurred over before an *h* in *Chaucer*, *h* is found commonly to begin the pronoun *he*, or its cases, the possessive pronouns *his*, *hire*, or their cases, a part of the verb to *have*, or else the adverbs *how* or *heer*. The same rule seems to hold in *Havelok*. Observe, that *e* often forms a syllable in the *middle* of a word, as, bondeman, 32, engelondes, 63, pourelike, 322.

With regard to the final *-en*, it is most commonly slurred over before a vowel or the *h* in *he* or *have*, not only when it is the termination of the infinitive mood, but in *many other cases*. One striking example may suffice:

He greten and gouleden and gouen hem ille, 164.

A still more striking peculiarity is that *the same rule often holds* for the ending *-es*. We find it, of course, forming a distinct syllable in plurals; as, limes, 86; and in adverbs, as, liues, 509. But observe such instances as maydnes, 2, prestes, 33, vtlawes, 41, sipes, 213, &c.

In the same way, when rapid final syllables such as *-el*, *-er*, *-ere*, &c., are slurred over, it will *generally* be found *that a vowel or h follows them*. Examples: *litel*, 6, *woneth*, 105, *bedels*, 266, *bodi*, 345, *deuel*, 446, *hunger*, 449. Compare *oueral*, 38, 54. There are many other peculiarities which it would take long to enumerate, such as, that *sworn* is pronounced *sworen*, 204; that the final *-e* is sometimes preserved before a vowel, as in *dede am*, 167; that the word *ne* is very frequently not counted, as it were, in the scansion, as in 57, 113, 220, 419, the second *ne* in l. 547, and in several other places. But it must suffice to state merely, that when the above rules (with allowance of a few exceptions)



are carefully observed, it will be found that the metre of Havelok is *very regular*, and *valuable on account of its regularity*.

It would therefore be easy to correct the text in many places by help of an exact analysis of the rhythm. But this, except in a very few places, has not been attempted, because the imperfect, but unique, MS. copy is more instructive as it stands. In l. 19, e. g. *wit* should be *wite*; in l. 47, *red* should be *rede*; in l. 74, *his soule* should be *of his soule*, &c. The importance of attending to the final *-e* may be exemplified by the lines—

Allë greten swiþë sore, 236 ;  
But sonë dedë hirë fetë, 317 ;  
þinë cherlës, þinë hinë, 620.  
Grimës sonës allë þre, 1399 ;  
Hisë sistres herë lif, 2395.

Mr Ellis writes—"These final examples suggested to me to compose the following German epitaph, which contains just as many final *e*'s, and which I think no German would find to have anything peculiar in the versification :

#### GRABSCHRIFT.

Diese alte reiche Frau  
Hasste jede eitle Schau,  
Preiste Gottes gute Gabe,  
Mehrte stets die eig'ne Habe,  
Liegt hier unbeweint im Grabe.

I think Havelok may be well compared with Goethe's ballad,

Es war ein König *in Thule*,  
Gar treu bis an das Grab,  
Dem, sterbend, seine Buhle  
*Einen goldenen Becher gab.*

Es ging ihm nichts darüber,  
Er leert' ihn jeden Schmaus,  
Die Augen gingen *ihm über*  
So oft er trank daraus.

Und als er kam zu sterben,  
Zählt' er *seine Städt'* im Reich,  
Gönnt' alles seinem Erben,  
Den Becher nicht zugleich :—

and the end :—

Die Augen thäten ihm sinken,  
Trank nie einen Tropfen mehr.

The *italicised* trisyllabic measures are fine. Observe also the elisions of final *-e* before a following vowel (*Städt'* being very unusual), and the omission of the dative *-e* in *im Reich*, to rhyme with *zugleich*."

I have only to add that my special thanks are due to Sir F. Madden for his permission to make use of his valuable notes, glossary, and preface, and for his assistance ; as also to Mr Ellis for his notes, which, however, reached me only at the last moment. when much alteration of the proofs was troublesome. There are many things probably which Mr Ellis does not much approve of in this short popular sketch of the metre, in which attention is drawn only to some of the *principal* points. In particular, he disapproves of the term *slurring over*, though I believe that I mean precisely the same thing as he does, viz. that these light syllables are really *fully pronounced*, and not in any way forcibly suppressed ; but that, owing to their being light syllables, and occurring before vowel sounds, the full pronunciation of them does not cause the verse to halt, but merely imparts to it an agreeable vivacity. As I have already said elsewhere <sup>1</sup>—"A poet's business is, in fact, to take care that the syllables which *are* to be rapidly pronounced are such as easily *can* be so ; and that the syllables which are to be heavily accented are naturally those that *ought* to be. If he gives attention to this, it does not much matter whether each foot has *two* or *three* syllables in it."

<sup>1</sup> Preface to Mr Morris's *Genesis and Exodus*, p. xxxviii.

## EMENDATIONS, ETC.

---

SOME emendations have been made in the text by inserting letters and words within square brackets. A few more may be noticed here.

p. 2, l. 47. The MS. has *red* ; but it should be *rede*.

p. 3, l. 66. For the MS. reading *here* Mr Garnett proposed to read *othere*, which is clearly right.

p. 3, l. 74. For *his soule* (as in the MS.) we should probably read *of his soule*.

p. 3, l. 79. For *wo diden* (as in the MS.) we should read *wo so dide*.

p. 6, l. 177. Read—"Bi [ihesu] crist," &c., to fill up ; but this is doubtful ; see l. 1112.

p. 18, l. 560. For *with*, Mr Garnett proposed to read *wilt*.

p. 20, l. 60. For *ney* (as in MS.) read *neye*, the adverbial form.

p. 21, l. 660. Perhaps there should be a comma after *Slep*, making the sense to be *sleep, son, not sleep soon*.

p. 23, l. 746. For *alle*, Mr Garnett proposed to read *shalle*.

p. 24, l. 784. Perhaps there should be no stop in the line, and the note on the line (p. 93) may be wrong. See *Weren* in the Glossary.

p. 32, l. 1037. For *stareden* we should perhaps read *stradden* ; see the Glossary.

p. 33, l. 1080. For *hexte* we should rather read *hexte* [man] ; cf. l. 199.

p. 38, l. 1233. Mr Garnett suggested that *clopen* may mean *clothes*. If so, dele the comma after it.

p. 43, l. 1420. For *wolde* we should rather read [*he*] *wolde*.

p. 46, l. 1687. *þarned* is an error of the scribe for *þoled*; see the Glossary.

p. 47, l. 1720. Perhaps we should rather read—*is womman* [*non*].

p. 47, l. 1733. *Bidde* must mean *offer*, rather than *bid* (as in the Glossary); unless it be miswritten for *bide* = tarry.

p. 47, l. 1736. The MS. reading *deled* should be *deyled*; cf. l. 2099.

p. 76, l. 2670. The MS. reading *blinne* should clearly be *blunne*. A few other suggestions of emendations will be found in the Glossarial Index. See the words *Arwe*, *Birþe*, *Felde*, *Sor*, *Tauhte*, *þenne*, *Thit*, *Werewed*, *Wreken*, &c. See also the suggestions in the preface, pp. xxxix, xli, xlv, xlvii.

p. 132, s. v. *Loken*. The reference to the *Ancren Riwle* is to MS. Titus D 18, fol. 17; cf. the edition by Morton (Camd. Soc. 1853), p. 56.

In the Glossary, *Dunten* is wrongly placed after *Dint*.





# Incipit bita Havelok, quondam Rex Anglie et Denemarchie.

---

Herknet to me, gode men,  
Wiues, maydnes, and alle men,  
Of a tale þat ich you wile telle,  
Wo so it wile here, and þer-to duelle.  
þe tale is of havelok i-maked ;  
Wil he was litel he yede ful naked :  
Havelok was a ful god gome,  
He was ful god in eueri trome,  
He was þe wicteste man at nede,  
þat þurte riden on ani stede.  
þat ye mowen nou y-here,  
And þe tale ye mowen y-lere.  
At the beginning <sup>1</sup> of vre tale,  
Fil me a cuppe of ful god ale ;  
And [y] wile drinken her y spelle,  
þat crist vs shilde alle fro helle !  
Krist late vs heuere so for to do,  
þat we moten comen him to,  
And wit[e]<sup>2</sup> þat it mote ben so !  
*Benedicamus domino !*  
Here y schal biginnen a rym,  
Krist us yeue wel god fyn !

[Fol. 204, col. 1.]  
Hearken !

4 I will tell you the  
tale of Havelok,

8  
a wight man  
at need.

12  
First, fill me a  
cup of ale.

16  
Christ grant we  
may do right !

20

<sup>1</sup> MS. Beginnig.

<sup>2</sup> See ll. 517, 1316.

The rime is about Havelok.	The rym is maked of hauelok, A stalworpi man in a flok ; He was þe stalworþeste man at nede, þat may riden on ani stede.	24
There was once a king who made good laws.	<b>I</b> T was a king bi are dawes, That in his time were gode lawes He dede maken, an ful wel holden ; Hym louede yung, him louede(holde, Erl and barun, dreng and kayn, Knict, bondeman, and swain,	28
All loved him.	Wydues, maydnes, prestes and clerkes, And al for hiȝe gode werkes. He louede god with al his mieth, And holi kirke, and soth, ant rieth ; Rieth-wise <sup>1</sup> men he louede alle, And oueral made hem forto calle ;	32
He hated traitors and robbers.	Wreieres and wrobberes made he falle, And hated hem so man doth galle ; Vtlawes and theues made he bynde, Alle that he micthe fynde, And heye hengen on galwe-tre ; ✓ For hem ne yede gold ne fe.	40
At that time, men could carry gold about safely, [Fol. 204, col. 2.]	In that time a man þat bore [Wel fyfty pund, y woth, or more,] <sup>2</sup> Of red gold up-on hiȝs bac, In a male with or blac, Ne funde he non that him misseyde, N[e] with iuele on [him] hond leyde. þanne micthe chapmen fare þuruth englund wit here ware,	44
and boldly buy and sell.	And baldelike beye and sellen, Oueral þer he wilen dwellen,	48

<sup>1</sup> MS. " Rirth wise."

<sup>2</sup> Supplied from conjecture. Cf. v. 653, 787. A few more instances will be found where a similar liberty has been taken, for the purpose of completing the sense.

In gode burwes, and þer-fram  
 Ne funden he non þat dede hem sham, 56  
 þat he ne weren sone to sorwe brouth,  
 An pouere maked, and browt to nouth.  
 þanne was engelond at hayse ; <sup>1</sup>  
 Michel was svich a king to preyse, 60  
 þat held so eng[e]lond in grith !  
 Krist of heuene was him with.  
 He was engelondes blome ;  
 Was non so bold lond to rome, 64  
 þat durste upon his [menie] bringhe  
 Hunger, ne here wicke þinghe.  
 Hwan he felede hise foos,  
 He made hem lurken, and crepen in wros : 68  
 þe hidden hem alle, and helden hem stille,  
 And diden al his herte wille.  
 Ricth he louede of alle þinge,  
 To wronge nicht him no man bringe, 72  
 Ne for siluer, ne for gold :—  
 So was he his soule hold.  
 Te þe faderles was he rath,  
 Wo so dede hem wrong or lath, 76  
 Were it clerc, or were it knieth,  
 He dede hem sone to hauen rieth ;  
 And wo [so] diden widuen wrong,  
 Were he neure knieth so strong, 80  
 þat he ne made him sone kesten,  
 And in feteres ful faste festen ;  
 And wo so dide maydne shame  
 Of hire bodi, or brouth in blame, 84  
 Bute it were bi hire wille,  
 He <sup>2</sup> made him sone of limes spille.  
 He was te <sup>3</sup> beste knith at nede,  
 þat heuere micthe riden on stede, 88  
 Or wepne wagge, or fole vt lede ;

Then was  
England at ease.

The king made  
his foes hide  
themselves.

He befriended  
the fatherless.

Them who  
wrought shame  
he punished.

<sup>1</sup> MS. athayse.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Ke.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Ke waste.



	Of knith ne hauede he neuere drede, þat he ne sprong forth so sparke of glede,	
[Fol. 204 b, col. 1.]	And lete him [knaue] of hise hand-dede, Hw he coupe with wepne spede ;	92
He made his foes cry for mercy.	And oþer he refte him hors or wede, Or made him sone handes sprede, And "louerd, merci !" loude grede. <u>He was large, and no wicth gnede ;</u> Hauede he non so god brede,	96
He fed the poor.	Ne on his bord non so god shrede, þat he ne wolde þorwit fede, Poure þat on fote yede ; Forto hauen of him þe mede þat for vs wolde on rode blede, Crist, that al kan wisse and rede, þat euere woneth in ani þede.	100     104
His name was Athelwold.	¶ þe king was hoten apelwold, Of word, of wepne he was bold ; In engeland was neure knieth, þat betere hel þe lond to rieth.	108
He had but a young daughter to succeed him.	Of his bodi ne hauede he eyr Bute a mayden swiþe fayr, þat was so yung þat sho ne coupe Gon on fote, ne speke wit mouþe. þan him tok an iuel strong, þat he we[1] wiste, and under-fong,	112
He feels he is dying, and says,	þat his deth was comen him on : And seyde, "crist, wat shal y don ! Lcuerd, wat shal me to rede ! I woth ful wel ich haue mi mede. W shal nou mi douhter fare ?	116    120
"I am in trouble about her.	Of hire haue ich michel kare ; Sho is mikel in mi þouth, Of me self is me rith nowt. No selcouth is, þou me be wo ;	124

Sho ne kan speke, ne sho kan go.

Yif scho coupe on horse ride,

Were she but  
of age,

And a thousande men bi hire syde ;

And sho were comen intil helde,

128

And engelond sho coupe welde ;

And don hem of þar hire were queme,

An hire bodi coupe yeme ;

No wolde me neuere iuele like

132 I would not care  
for myself."

Me þou ich were in heuene-riche !"

Quanne he hauede þis pleinte maked,  
Q þer-after stronglike [he] quaked.

He sende writes sone on-on

136

After his erles euere-ich on ;

[Fol. 204 b, col. 2.]

And after hise baruns, riche and poure,

Fro rokesburw al into douere,

That he shulden comen swiþe

140

Til him, that was ful vnblife ;

To þat stede þe[r] he lay,

In harde bondes, nieth and day.

He was so faste wit yuel fest,

144

þat he ne mouthe hauen no rest ;

He ne mouthe no mete hete,

He can no longer  
eat.

Ne he ne mouchte no lyþe gete ;

Ne non of his iuel þat coupe red ;

148

Of him ne was mouth buten ded.

Alle þat the writes herden,

Sorful an sori til him ferdan ;

All sadly obey  
his summons.

He wrungen hondes, and wepen sore,

152

And yerne preyden cristes hore,

þat he [wolde] turnen him

Vt of þat yuel þat was so grim !

þanne he weren comen alle

156

Bifor þe king into the halle,

They come to  
Winchester.

At winchestre þer he lay :

"Welcome," he seyde, "be ye ay!  
 Ful michel þank[e] kan [y]ow 160  
 That ye aren comen to me now!"

They all mourn  
 and lament.

Quanne he weren alle set,  
 And þe king aueden i-gret,  
 He greten, and goulden, and goun hem ille, 164  
 And he bad hem alle ben stille;

And seyde, "þat greting helpeth nouth,  
 For al to dede am ich brouth.  
 Bute nov ye sen þat i shal deye, 168

He prays them to  
 tell him who can  
 guard his  
 daughter best.

Nou ich wille you alle preye  
 Of mi douter þat shal be  
 Yure leuedi after me,  
 Wo may yemen hire so longe, 172

Boþen hire and engelonde,  
 Til þat she [mowe] winan of helde,  
 And þa she mowe yemen and welde?"  
 He ansuereden, and seyden an-on, 176

They answer,  
 "Earl Godrich  
 of Cornwall."

Bi crist and bi seint ion,  
 That þerl Godrich of cornwayle  
 Was trewe man, wit-uten faille;  
 Wis man of red, wis man of dede, 180  
 And men haueden of him mikel drede.

[Fol. 205, col. 1.]

"He may hire alþer-best[e] yeme,  
 Til þat she mowe wel ben quene."

The king sends  
 for chalice and  
 paten,

þe king was payed of that Rede;  
 A wol fair cloth bringen he dede,  
 And þer-on leyde þe messebok,  
 þe caliz, and þe pateyn ok,  
 þe corporaus, þe messe-gere; 188

for the earl to  
 swear upon.

þer-on he garte þe erl suere,  
 þat he sholde yemen hire wel,  
 With-uten lac, wit-uten tel,  
 Til þat she were tuelf<sup>1</sup> winter hold, 192

<sup>1</sup> Qu. tuenti. Cf. v. 259.

And of speche were bold ;

And þat she covþe of curteysye

Gon, and spoken of luue-drurye ;

And til þat she louen þoucte,<sup>1</sup>

196

His daughter is  
to marry the best  
and fairest man  
that can be found.

Wom so hire to gode thoucte ;

And þat he shulde hire yeue

þe beste man that micthe liue,

þe beste, fayreste, the strangest ok :—

200

þat dede he him sweren on þe bok.

And þanne shulde he engelond

Al bitechen in-to hire hond.

Quanne<sup>2</sup> þat was sworn on his wise,

204

þe king dede þe mayden arise,

And þe erl hire bitaucte,

And al the lond he euere awcte ; *awcted*

Engelonde eueri del ;

208

And preide, he shulde yeme hire wel.

þe king ne mowcte don no more,

But yerne preyede godes ore ;

And dede him hoslen wel and shriue,

212

I woth, fif hundred sipes and fwe ;

An ofte dede him sore swinge, *broken*

And wit hondes smerte dinge ; *swinge*

So þat þe blod ran of his fleys, *flow*

216

þat tendre was, and swiþe neys.

<sup>3</sup> And sone gaf it euere-il del ;

He made his quiste swiþe wel. *make*

Wan it was gounen, ne micte men finde

220

He makes his  
will.

So mikel men micte him in winde,

Of his in arke, ne in chiste, *chest*

<sup>1</sup> MS. mithe. But see l. 257.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Ouanne. And perhaps "his" should have been "þis."

<sup>3</sup> Some lines appear to be wanting here, such as—

"He þoucte his quiste þan to make,  
His catel muste he wel bitake," &c.



In engelond þat noman wiste :  
 For al was youen, faire and wel, 224  
 þat him was leued no catel.

[Fol. 205, col. 2.] **Þ**anne he hauede ben ofte swngen,  
 Ofte shriuē, and ofte dungen,  
 “*In manus tuas, lou[er]de,*” he seyde, 228  
 Her þat he þe speche leyde.

The king dies. To ihesu crist bigan to calle,  
 And deyede biforn his heymen alle.  
 þan he was ded, þere miete men se 232  
 þe meste sorwe that miete be ;  
 þer was sobbing, siking, and sor,  
 Handes wringing, and drawing bi hor.  
 Alle greten swiþe sore, 236  
 Riche and poure þat þere wore ;  
 An mikel sorwe haueden alle,  
 Leuedyes in boure, knictes in halle.

**Q**uan þat sorwe was somdel laten, 240  
 And he haueden longe graten,  
 Masses are sung  
 for him. Belles deden he sone ringen,  
 Monkes and prestes messe singen ;  
 And sauterēs deden he manie reden, 244  
 þat god self shulde his soule leden  
 Into heuene, biforn his sone,  
 And þer wit-uten hende wone.

He is buried and  
 the earl takes  
 possession, þan he was to þe erþe brouth, 248  
 þe riche erl ne foryat nouth,  
 þat he ne dede al engelond  
 Sone sayse intil his hond ;  
 And in þe castels leth he <sup>1</sup> do 252  
 þe knictes he miete tristen to ;  
 And alle þe englis dede he swere[n],

<sup>1</sup> Sir F. Madden printed “lechhe” ; but the MS. may be read  
 “leth he.”

þat he shulden him ghod fey beren ;  
 He yaf alle men, þat god þoucte,  
 Liuen and deyen til þat him moucte,<sup>1</sup>  
 Til þat þe kinges dowter wore  
 Tuenti winter hold, and more.

256 till the maiden is  
 twenty years old.

þanne he hauede taken þis oth  
 Of erles, baruns, lef and loth,  
 Of knictes, cherles, fre and þewe,  
 Justises dede he maken newe,  
 Al engelond to faren þorw,  
 Fro douere into rokesborw.  
 Schirenes he sette, bedels, and greyues,  
 Grith-sergeans, wit longe gleyues,  
 To yemen wilde wodes and papes  
 Fro wicke men, that wolde don scapes ;  
 And forto hauen alle at his cri,

260

264 Earl Godrich  
 appoints justices,  
 sheriffs, &c.

At his wille, at his merci ;  
 þat non durste ben him ageyn,  
 Erl ne barun, knict ne sweyn.  
 Wislike for soth, was him wel  
 Of folc, of wepne, of catel.  
 Soþlike, in a lite þrawe  
 Al engelond of him stod [in] awe ;  
 Al engelond was of him adrad,<sup>2</sup>  
 So his þe beste fro þe gad.

268

272 [Fol. 205 b, col. 1.]

He grows very  
 rich,

276

and all England  
 fears him.

þE kinges douthter bigan þriue,  
 And wex þe fayrest wman on liue.  
 Of alle þewes w[as] she wis,  
 þat gode weren, and of pris.  
 þe mayden Goldeboru was hoten ;  
 For hire was mani a ter igroten.

280 The maiden  
 grows up very  
 fair.

284 Her name is  
 Goldborough.

<sup>1</sup> So in MS. But the sense requires

"He gaf alle men, þat god *him* þouchte,  
 Liuen and deyen til þat *he* moucte," &c.

<sup>2</sup> MS. "adred," altered to "adrad."

- Quanne the Erl godrich him herde  
 Of þat mayden, hw we[l s]he ferde ;  
 Hw wis sho was, w chaste, hw fayr, 288  
 And þat sho was þe rithe eyr  
 Of engelond, of al þe rike :—  
 Godrich is vexed. þo bigan godrich to sike,  
 And seyde, “ weþer she sholde be 292  
 Quen and leuedi ouer me ?  
 Hweþer sho sholde al engelond,  
 And me, and mine, hauen in hire hond ?  
 Dapeit hwo it hire thaue ! 296  
 Shal sho it neuere more haue.  
 “ Shall I give  
 England to a  
 fool, a girl ?  
 Sholde ic yeue a fol, a þerne,  
 Engelond, þou sho it yerne ?  
 Dapeit hwo it hire yeue, 300  
 Euere more hwil i liue !  
 Sho is waxen al to prud,  
 For gode metes, and noble shrud,  
 þat hic haue youen hire to offte ; 304  
 Hic haue yemed hire to softe.  
 Shal it nouth ben als sho þenkes,  
 ‘ Hope maketh fol man ofte bleþkes.’  
 My son shall have  
 England.  
 Ich haue a sone, a ful fayr knaue, 308  
 He shal engelond al haue.  
 He shal [ben] king, he shal ben sire,  
 So brouke i euere mi blake swire !”  
 Hwan þis trayson was al þouth, 312  
 Of his oth ne was him nouth.  
 He let his oth al ouer-ga,  
 þerof ne yaf he nouth a stra ;  
 But sone dede hire fete, 316  
 [Fol. 205 b, col. 2.] Er he wolde heten ani mete,  
 Fro winchestre þer sho was,  
 Also a wicke traytur iudas ;  
 He sends the  
 maiden to Dover. And dede leden hire to doure, 320

þat standeth on þe seis oure ;  
 And perhinne dede hire fede  
 Poureluke in feble wede.  
 þe castel dede he yemen so,  
 þat non ne michte comen hire to  
 Of hire frend, with [hire] to speken,  
 þat heuere michte hire bale wreken.

324 He shuts her up  
in the castle.

Of Goldeboru shul we nou laten,  
 þat nouth ne blinneth forto *graten*,  
 þet sho liggeth in prisoun :  
 Ihesu crist, that lazarus  
 To liue broucte fro dede bondes,  
 He lese hire wit hise hondes ;  
 And leue sho mo him y-se  
 Heye hangen on galwe tre,  
 þat hire haued in sorwe brouth,  
 So as sho ne misdede nouth !

328

332 May Christ  
release Gold-  
borough from  
prison !

336

Sawe nou forth in hure spelle ;  
 In þat time, so it bifelle,  
 Was in þe lon of denemark  
 A riche king, and swyþe stark.  
 þ[e] name of him was birkabeyn,  
 He hauede mani knict and sueyn ;  
 He was fayr man, and wicth,  
 Of bodi he was þe beste knicth  
 þat euere michte leden uth here,  
 Or stede onne ride, or handlen spere,  
 þre children he hauede bi his wif,  
 He hem louede so his lif.  
 He hauede a sone [and] douhtres two,  
 Swiþe fayre, as fel it so.  
 He þat wile non forbere,  
 Riche ne poure, king ne kaysere,  
 Deth him tok þan he bes[t] wolde

340 At that time  
there was a king  
of Denmark,  
called Birkabeyn.

344

348 He had three  
children.

352

Death came  
upon him.



Liuen, but hyse dayes were fulde ;  
 þat he ne moucte no more liue, 356  
 For gol ne siluer, ne for no gyue. *q. b.*

He sends for  
 the priests.

**H**wan he þat wiste, raþe he sende  
 After prestes fer an hende, *- far + near*  
 Chanounes gode, and monkes beþe,<sup>1</sup> 360  
 Him for to<sup>2</sup> wisse, and to Rede ;  
 [Fol. 206, col. 1.] Him for to hoslon, an forto shriue,  
 Hwil his bodi were on liue.

He asks who will  
 guard his  
 children ?

**H**wan he was hosled and shriuen, 364  
 His *quist*e maked, and for him gyuen,  
 His knictes dede he alle site,  
 For þorw hem he wolde wite,  
 Hwo miete yeme hise children yunge, 368  
 Til þat he kouþen speken wit tunge ;  
 Speken and gangen, on horse riden,  
 Knictes an sweynes bi here siden.

He chooses  
 Godard.

He spoken þer-offe, and chosen sone 372  
 A riche man was under mone,  
 Was þe trewest þat he wende,  
 Godard, þe kinges oune frende ;  
 And seyden, he Moucthe hem best loke, *loke = look* 376  
 Yif þat he hem vndertoke,  
 Til hise sone Mouthe bere  
 Helm on heued, and leden vt here, *leden = lead*  
 In his hand a spere stark, 380  
 And king ben maked of denemark.

He commends  
 the children to  
 Godard.

He wel trowede þat he seyde,  
 And on Godard handes leyde ;  
 And seyde, " Here bi-teche i þe 384  
 Mine children alle þre,  
 Al denemark, and al mi fe,  
 Til þat mi sone of helde be ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. "boþe." But "beþe" rimes to "Rede"; see l. 694.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *forthm* to, the *hm* being expuncted.

But þat ich wille, þat þo[u] suere 388 He makes him  
 On auter, and on messe-gere, swear to take care  
 On þe belles þat men ringes, of them,  
 On messe-bok þe prest on singes,  
 þat þou mine children shalt we[l] yeme, 392  
 þat hire kin be ful wel queme,  
 Til mi sone mowe ben knieth,  
 þanne biteche him þo his Ricth, and to give up  
 Denemark, and þat þertil longes, 396 the kingdom to  
 Casteles and tunes, wodes and wonges." the boy.

Godard stirt up, an swor al þat Godard swears  
 þe king him bad, and siþen sat to do so.  
 Bi the knictes, þat þer ware, 400  
 þat wepen alle swiþe sare  
 For þe king þat deide sone :  
 Ihesu crist, that makede mone Christ save the  
 On þe mirke nith to shine, 404 king's soul !  
 Wite his soule fro helle pine ;  
 And leue þat it mote wone  
 In heuene-riche with godes sone ! [Fol. 206, col. 2.]

Hwan birkabeyn was leyd in graue, 408 Godard shuts up  
 þe erl dede sone take þe knaue, the children,  
 Hauelok, þat was þe eir, Havelok, Swan-  
 Swanborow, his sister, helfled, þe toþer,<sup>1</sup> borough, and  
 And in þe castel dede he hem do, 412 Helfled, in a  
 þer non ne michte hem comen to castle.  
 Of here kyn, þer þei sperd wore ;<sup>2</sup>  
 þer he greten ofte sore,  
 Boþe for hunger and for kold, 416  
 Or he weren þre winter hold.  
 Feblelike he gaf hem clopes,  
 He ne yaf a note of hise oþes ; He cares not for  
 his oaths.

<sup>1</sup> Corrupt? Lines 410, 411 do not rime well together.

<sup>2</sup> MS. were. But see l. 237.

- He hem [ne] cloþede rith, ne fedde, *rightly* 420  
 Ne hem ne dede richelike be-bedde.  
 þanne godard was sikerlike
- He is a traitor. Vnder god þe moste swike,  
 þat eure in erþe shaped was, 424  
 With-uten on, þe wike Iudas.
- May he be  
 accursed! Haue he þe malisun to-day  
 Of alle þat eure speken may! 428  
 Of patriark, and of pope!  
 And of prest with *loken* kope! *loken*  
 Of monekes, and hermites boþe!<sup>1</sup>  
 And of þe leue holi rode,  
 þat god him-selue ran on blode! 432
- Cursed be he by  
 north and south! Crist warie him with his mouth!  
 Waried wrthe he of norþ and suth!  
 Offe alle man, þat speken kunne!  
 Of crist, þat made<sup>2</sup> mone and sunne! 436  
 þanne he hauede of al þe lond  
 Al þe folk tilled in-til his hond, *deuon*  
 And alle hauden sworn him oth,  
 Riche and poure, lef and loth, 440  
 þat he sholden hise wille freme, *as thou*
- He plots against  
 the children. And þat he shulde[n] him nouth greme, *greue*  
 He þouthe a ful strong trechery,  
 A trayson, and a felony, 444  
 Of þe children forto make:  
 þe deuel of helle him sone take!
- He goes to the  
 tower where  
 they are. **H**wan þat was þouth, onon he ferde  
 To þe tour þer he worn sperde, 448  
 þer he greten for hunger and cold:  
 þe knaue þat was sumdel bold,  
 Kam him ageyn, on knes him sette,
- [Fol. 206<sup>b</sup>, col 1.] And godard ful feyre he þer grette; 452  
 And Godard seyde, "Wat is yw?"

<sup>1</sup> Lines 430, 431, 432 rime together. NB. The words *holi rode* are written over an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> MS. maude.

Hwi grete ye and goulen nou ? ”

“ For us hungreth swiþe sore : ”—

Seyden he wolden [haue] more,

456

Havelok says  
they are hungry.

“ We ne haue to hete, ne we ne haue

Herinne neyther knith ne knaue

þat yeueth us drinken, ne no mete,

Haluendel þat we moun ete.

460

Wo is us þat we weren born !

Weilawei ! nis it no korn,

þat men miete maken of bred ?

Vs <sup>1</sup> hungreth, we aren ney ded.”

464

“ Alas, that we  
were born ! ”

Godard herde here wa,

Godard cares not.

Ther-offe yaf he nouth a stra,

But tok þe maydnes bothe samen,

Al-so it were up-on hiis gamen ;

468

Al-so he wolde with hem leyke,

þat weren for hunger grene and bleike.

Of boþen he karf on two here protes,

And siþen [karf] hem alto grotes.

472

He cuts the  
throats of the  
two girls.

þer was sorwe, wo so it sawe !

Hwan þe children bi þ[e] <sup>2</sup> wawe

Leyen and sprauleden in þe blod :

Hauelok it saw, and þe[r] bi stod.

476

Havelok sees it,  
and is afraid.

Ful sori was þat seli knaue,

Mikel dred he mounthe haue,

For at hise herte he saw a knif,

For to reuen him hise lyf.

480

But þe knaue, <sup>3</sup> þat litel was,

He knelede bifor þat iudas,

And seyde, “ louerd, merci nov !

Manrede, louerd, biddi you !

484

He begs Godard  
to spare him,

Al denemark i wile you yeue,

To þat forward þu late me liue ;

Here hi wile on boke swere,

þat neure more ne shal i bere

488

<sup>1</sup> MS. þs ; cf. l. 455.

<sup>2</sup> MS. biþ ; cf. l. 2470.

<sup>3</sup> MS. kaue.



offering never to oppose him,	Ayen þe, louerd, shel ne spere, Ne oþer wepne <sup>1</sup> that may you dere. Louerd, haue merci of me ! To-day i wile fro denemark fle,	492
and to flee from Denmark.	Ne neuere more comen ageyn : Sweren y wole, þat bircabein Neuere yete me ne gat : "— Hwan þe deuel he[r]de <sup>2</sup> that,	496
[Fol. 206 b, col. 2.]	Sum-del bigan him forto rewe ; With-drow þe knif, þat was lewe	
Godard has pity on him.	Of þe seli children blod ; þer was miracle fair and god ! þat he þe knaue nouth ne slou, But fo[r] rewnesse him wit-drow. <sup>3</sup> Of auelok rewede him ful sore, And þoucte, he wolde þat he ded wore,	500 504
	But on þat he nouth wit his hend Ne drepe him nouth, <sup>4</sup> þat fule fend ! þoucte he, als he him bi stod, Starinde als he were wod :	508
But he reflects	" Yif y late him liues go, He miete me wirchen michel wo. Grith ne get y neuere mo, He may [me] waiten for to slo ;	512
that, were Havelok dead, his children would be the heirs.	And yf he were brouct of liue, And mine children wolden thriue, Louerdinges after me Of al denemark micten he be. God it wite, he shal ben ded, Wile i taken non oþer red ;	516

<sup>1</sup> MS. "wepne bere," where "bere" is redundant.

<sup>2</sup> MS. hede.

<sup>3</sup> Printed thus in the former edition :—" But to rewnesse him thit drow." But the MS. has *fo*, not *to*, where *fo* is corruptly written for *for*, as in l. 1318 ; and the initial letter of the last syllable but one may be read as a Saxon *w* (*p*), not a thorn-letter (*þ*). It merely repeats the idea in ll. 497, 498.

<sup>4</sup> Qu. mouth.

- I shal do casten him in þe se,<sup>1</sup>  
 þer i wile þat he drench[ed] be ; 520  
 Abouten his hals an anker god,  
 þat he ne flete in the flod.”  
 þer anon he dede sende  
 After a fishere þat he wende, 524  
 þat wolde al his wille do,  
 And sone anon he seyde him to :  
 “ Grim, þou wost þu art mi þral,  
 Wilte don mi wille al, 528  
 þat i wile bidden þe,  
 To-morwen [i] shal maken þe fre,  
 And aucte þe yeuen, and riche make,  
 With-þan þu wilt þis child[e] take, 532  
 And leden him with þe to-nicht,  
 þan þou sest se<sup>2</sup> Mone lith,  
 In-to þe se, and don him þer-inne,  
 Al wile [i] taken on me þe sinne.” 536  
 Grim tok þe child, and bond him faste,  
 Hwil þe bondes miete laste ;  
 þat weren of ful strong line :—  
 þo was haelok in ful strong pine, 540  
 Wiste he neuere her wat was wo :  
 Ihesu crist, þat makede to go  
 þe halte, and þe doumbe speken,  
 Haelok, þe of Godard wreken ! 544
- He determines to drown him.
- He sends for a fisherman, and says to him,
- “ Grim, I will make you free,
- Throw this child into the sea.”
- Grim binds the child.
- [Fol. 207, col. 1.]  
 Christ wreak thee of Godard,  
 Havelok !

Hwan grim him hauede faste bounden,  
 And sipen in an eld cloth wnden  
 A keuel of clutes, ful, un-wraste, <sup>neþen</sup> *þe* *neþen*  
 þat he [ne] mouthe speke, ne fnaste, *brethe* 548  
 Hwere he wolde him bere or lede.

Hwan he hauede don þat dede,  
 Hwan<sup>3</sup> þe swike him hauede hethede,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. she.

<sup>2</sup> So in MS. *Qu.* þe.

<sup>3</sup> We should rather read “þan.”

<sup>4</sup> MS. he þede.

- þat he shulde him forth [lede] 552  
 And him drinchen in þe se ;  
 þat forwarde makeden he.
- He puts him in  
 a bag, and takes  
 him on his back, In a poke, ful and blac,  
 Sone he caste him on his bac, 556  
 Ant bar him hom to hise cleue,  
 And bi-taucte him dame leue,
- He puts him in  
 charge of his  
 wife, And seyde, " wite þou þis knaue,  
 Al-so thou with mi lif haue ; 560  
 I shal dreinchen him in þe se,  
 For him shole we ben maked fre,  
 Gold hauen ynou, and oþer fe ;  
 þat hauet mi louerd bihoten me." 564
- She throws  
 down Havelok  
 violently. **H**wan dame [leue] herde þat,  
 Vp she stirte, and nouth ne sat,  
 And caste þe knaue adoun so harde,  
 þat hise croune he þer crakede 568  
 Ageyn a gret ston, þer it lay :  
 þo hanelok michte sei, " weilaweï !  
 þat euere was i kinges bern !"  
 þat him ne hauede grip or ern, 572  
 Leoun er wlf, wluine or bere,  
 Or oþer best, þat wolde him dere.
- The child lies  
 there till  
 midnight. So lay þat child to middel nieth,  
 þat grim bad leue bringen lic, 576  
 For to don on [him] his cloþes :  
 " Ne thenkeste nowt of mine oþes  
 þat ich haue mi louerd sworn ?  
 Ne wile i nouth be forloren. 580  
 I shal beren him to þe se,  
 þou wost þat [bi-]houes me ;  
 And i shal drenchen him þer-inne ;
- Grim tells his  
 wife to light the  
 fire and a candle. Ris up swiþe, an go þu binne, 584  
 And blou þe fir, and lith a kandel : "  
 Als she shulde hise cloþes handel

- On forto don, and blawe þe <sup>1</sup> fir, [Fol. 207, col. 2.]  
 She saw þer-inne a lith ful shir, *as if* 588 She sees a light  
 Also brith so it were day, shining round the  
 Aboute þe knaue þer he lay. lad.  
 Of hise mouth it stod a stem, *at the end of*  
 Als it were a sunnebem ; 592  
 Also lith was it þer-inne,  
 So þer brenden cerges inne : <sup>2</sup>  
 "Thesu crist !" wat dame leue,  
 "Hwat is þat lith in vre cleue ! 596  
 Sir <sup>3</sup> up grim, and loke wat it menes,  
 Hwat is þe lith as þou wenest ?"  
 He stirten boþe up to the knaue, *lad*  
For man shal god wille haue, *humorous* 600  
 Vnkeueleden him, and swiþe unbounden, *irony*  
 And sone anon [upon] him funden, They find a mark  
 Als he tirteden of his serk, *sheet* on his shoulder.  
 On his rith shuldre a kyne merk ; 604  
 A swiþe brith, a swiþe fair :  
 "Goddot !" quath grim, "þis [is] ure eir  
 þat shal [ben] louerd of denemark,  
 He shal ben king strong and stark ; 608 Grim says the  
 He shal haue in his hand lad is to be king.  
 A[l] denemark and engeland ;  
 He shal do godard ful wo,  
 He shal him hangen, or quik flo ; 612  
 Or he shal him al quic graue,  
 Of him shal he no merci haue."  
 þus seide grim, and sore gret,  
 And sone fel him to þe fet, 616  
 And seide, "louerd, haue merci  
 Of me, and leue, that is me bi !  
 Louerd, we aren boþe þine,  
 þine cherles, þine hine. *hardness* 620

<sup>1</sup> MS. þer.<sup>2</sup> Qu. þrinne. See ll. 716, 761, 2125.<sup>3</sup> Qu. stir, or stirt.



- Lowerd, we sholen þe wel fede,  
Til þat þu cone riden on stede,  
Til þat þu cone ful wel bere  
Helm on heued, sheld and spere. 624
- Godard shall  
never know  
about this. He ne shal neuere wite, sikerlike,  
Godard, þat fule swike.  
þoru oþer man, louerd, than þoru þe,  
Sal i neuere freman be. 628
- þou shalt me, louerd, fre maken,  
For i shal yemen þe, and waken; *waiten*  
þoru þe wile i fredom haue: "
- [Fol. 207 b, col. 1.] þo was haveloc a bliþe knaue. 632
- Havelok is glad,  
and asks for  
bread. He sat him up, and crauede bred.  
And seide, "ich am [wel] ney ded,  
Hwat for hunger, wat for bondes  
þat þu ledest on min hondes; 636
- And for [þe] keuel at þe laste,  
þat in mi mouth was þrist faste.  
y was þe[r]-with so harde prangled, *misprangled*  
þat i was þe[r]-with ney strangled." 640
- "Wel is me þat þu mayth hete:  
Goddoth!" quath leue, "y shal þe fete  
Bred an chese, butere and milk,  
Pastees and flaunes, al with suilk *pasties* 644
- Shole we sone þe wel fede,  
Louerd, in þis mikel nede,  
Soth it is, þat men seyt and suereth:  
'þer god wile helpen, nouth no dereth.'" 648
- good we'll survive  
God looks after the mighty*
- þanne sho hauede brouth þe mete,  
Haveloc anon bigan to ete  
Grundlike, and was ful bliþe; *grundlike*  
Coupe he nouth his hunger Mipe, *couped* 652
- A lof he het, y woth, and more,  
For him hungrede swipe sore.  
þre dayes þer-biforn, i wene,
- Havelok eats all  
up greedily.

- Et he no mete, þat was wel sene. 656  
 Hwan he hauede eten, and was fed,  
 Grim dede maken a ful fayr bed ; Grim puts him  
 Vncloþede him, and dede him þer-inne, to bed.  
 And seyde, "Slep sone, with michel winne ; 660  
 Slep wel faste, and dred þe nouth,  
 Fro sorwe to ioie art þu brouth."  
 Sone so it was lith of day,  
 Grim it under-tok þe wey 664 Grim tells  
 To þe wicke traitour godard, Godard he has  
 þat was denemak a <sup>1</sup> stiward, killed Havelok,  
 And seyde, "louerd, don ich haue  
 þat þou me bede of þe knaue ; 668  
 He is drenched in þe flod,  
 Abouten his hals an anker god ;  
 He is witer-like ded,  
 Eteth he neure more bred ; 672  
 He lip drenched in þe se :—  
 Yif me gold [and] oper fe,<sup>2</sup> and asks for his  
 þat y mowe riche be ; reward.  
 And with þi chartre make [me] fre, 676  
 For þu ful wel bi-hetet me, [Fol. 207 b, col. 2.]  
 þanne i last[e] spak with þe."  
 Godard stod, and lokede on him  
 þoruth-like, with eyne grim ; 680  
 And seyde, "Wiltu [nou] ben erl ?  
 Go hom swiþe, fule drit, cherl ;  
 Go heþen, and be euere-more  
 þral and cherl, als þou er wore. 684  
 Shal [þou] haue non oper mede ;  
 For litel i [shal] <sup>3</sup> do þe lede  
 To þe galues, so god me rede !

<sup>1</sup> *Qu.* Denemarkes.<sup>2</sup> Cf. l. 1225.<sup>3</sup> The MS. has "ig," but the *g* is expuncted ; and it omits "shal."

for he has done  
wickedly.

For þou haues don a wicke dede. 688  
þou Mait stonden her to longe,  
Bute þou swiþe eþen gonge." *here*

Grim fears that  
both himself and  
Havelok will be  
hung.

Grim thoucte to late þat he ran 692  
Fro þat traytour, þa wicke man ;  
And þoucte, "wat shal me to rede ?  
Wite he him onliue, he wile beþe  
Heye hangen on galwe-tre :  
Betere us is of londe to fle, 696  
And berwen bopen ure liues, *please*  
And mine children, and mine wiues."

Grim sells his  
live stock.

Grim solde sone al his corn,  
Shep wit wolfe, neth wit horn, 700  
Hors, and swin, [and gate] wit berd,  
þe gees, þe heemes of þe yerd ;  
Al he solde, þat outh douthe, *nothing of value*  
That he eure selle moucte, 704  
And al he to þe peni drou : *then*

He fits up his  
ship carefully.

Hise ship he greyþede wel inow,  
He dede it tere, an ful wel pike, *please*  
þat it ne doutede sond ne krike ; *not* 708  
þer-inne dide a ful god mast,  
Stronge kables, and ful fast,  
Ores god, an ful god seyl,  
þer-inne wantede nouth a nayl, 712  
þat euere he sholde þer-inne do :

He takes with  
him his wife, his  
three sons, his  
two daughters,  
and Havelok.

Hwan he hauedet greyþed so,  
Hauelok þe yunge he dide þer-inne,  
Him and his wif, hise sones þrinne, 716  
And hise two doutres, þat faire wore,  
And sone dede he leyn in an ore,  
And drou him to þe heye se,  
þere he mith alþer-best[e] fle. 720  
Fro londe worn he bote a mile,

Ne were neuere but ane hwile,  
 þat it ne bigan a wind to Rise  
 Out of þe north, men calleth 'bise'  
 And drof hem intil engelond,  
 þat al was siþen in his hond,  
 His, þat hauelok was þe name;  
 But or he hauede michel shame,  
 Michel sorwe, and michel tene,  
 And þrie he gat it al bidene;  
 Als ye shulen nou forthwar lere,<sup>1</sup>  
 Yf that ye wilen þer-to here.

[Fol. 208, col. 1.]

A north wind  
 arises, called the  
*bise*, and drives  
 them to England.

724

728

732

**I**N humber grim bigan to lende,  
 In lindeseye, Rith at þe north ende.

Grim went up the  
 Humber to  
 Lindesey.

þer sat is ship up-on þe sond,  
 But grim it drou up to þe lond;  
 And þere he made a litel cote,  
 To him and to hise flote.

736

Bigan he þere for to erþe,  
 A litel hus to maken of erþe,  
 So þat he wel þore were

740 There he built  
 a house.

Of here herboru herborwed þere;  
 And for þat grim þat place aute,  
 þe stede of grim þe name laute;  
 So þat [hit] grimesbi calleth alle  
 þat þer-offe speken alle,

744

That place was  
 called Grimsby,  
 after Grim.

And so shulen men callen it ay,  
 Bituene þis and domesday.

748

**G**rim was fishere swiþe god,  
 And mikel couþe on the flod;  
 Mani god fish þer-inne he tok,  
 Boþe with neth, and with hok.  
 He tok þe sturgiun, and þe qual,  
 And þe turbut, and lax with-al,

Grim was a good  
 fisherman.

752

He caught  
 sturgeons,  
 turbot, &c.

<sup>1</sup> MS. here; *read* lere. Cf. ll. 12, 1640.



- He tok þe sele, and þe hwel ;  
 He spedde ofte swipe wel : 756  
 Keling he tok, and tumberel, *large cod, porpoise*  
 Hering, and þe makerel,  
 þe Butte, þe schulle, þe þornebake : *flounder, plaice*  
 Gode paniers dede he make 760  
 Ontil him, and oþer prinne,  
 Til hise sones to beren fish inne,  
 Vp o-londe to selle and fonge ; *large*  
 Forbar he neyþe[r] tun, ne gronge, *ground* 764  
 þat he ne to-yede with his ware ;  
 Kam he neuere hom hand-bare,  
 [Fol. 208, col. 2.] þat he ne broucte bred and sowel, *unbaked*  
 In his shirte, or in his couel ; 768  
 In his poke benes and korn :—  
 Hise swink ne hauede he nowt forlorn. *work*  
 He used to sell  
 lampreys at  
 Lincoln, And hwan he tok þe grete laumprei,  
 Ful we[l] he couþe þe rithe wei 772  
 To lincolne, þe gode boru ;  
 Ofte he yede it þoru and þoru,  
 Til he hauede wol <sup>1</sup> wel sold,  
 And þer-fore þe penies told. *money* 776  
 þanne he com, þenne he were bliþe,  
 For hom he brouthe fele siþe  
 and bring home  
 simnels, meal,  
 meat, and hemp. Wastels, simenels with þe horn, *egg, hen*  
 Hise pokes fulle of mele an korn, 780  
 Netes flesh, shepes, and swines,  
 And hemp to maken of gode lines ;  
 And stronge ropes to hise netes,  
 In þe se weren he ofte setes.<sup>2</sup> 784
- Thus they lived  
 for 12 years. Þus-gate grim him fayre ledde.  
 Him and his genge wel he fedde *family*  
 Wel twelf winter, oþer more :  
 Hauelok was war þat grim swank sore 788

<sup>1</sup> *Qu.* ful or al.<sup>2</sup> *Sic* in MS.

For his mete, and he lay at hom :

Thouth, "ich am nou no grom ;

Ich am wel waxen, and wel may eten

More þan euere Grim may geten.

792

Ich ete more, bi god on liue,

þan grim an hise children fiue !

It ne may nouth ben þus longe,

Goddot ! y wile with þe gange,

796

For to leren sum god to gete ;

Swinken ich wolde for mi mete.

It is no shame forto swinken ;

þe man þat may wel eten and drinken,

800

þat nouth ne haue but on swink long,

To liggen at hom it is ful strong.

God yelde him þer i ne <sup>1</sup> may,

þat haueth me fed to þis day !

804

Gladlike i wile þe paniers bere ;

Ich woth, ne shal it me nouth dere,

þey þer be inne a birþene gret,

It is no shame  
for a man  
to work.

He determines to  
carry about  
panniers like  
the rest.

Al so heui als a neth.

808

Shal ich neuere lengere dwelle,

To morwen shal ich forth pelle."

On þe morwen, hwan it was day,

He stirt up sone, and nouth ne lay ;

812

[Fol. 205 b, col. 1.]

And east a panier on his bac,

With fish giueled als a stac ;

Also michel he bar him one,

So he foure, bi mine mone !<sup>2</sup>

816

Wel he it bar, and solde it wel,

þe siluer he brouthe hom il del ;

Al þat he þer-fore tok

With-held he nouth a ferþinges nok.

820

So yede he forth ilke day,

þat he neuere at home lay.

and sells them,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ine.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. ll. 1711, 1972.

A great dearth  
arises,

So wolde he his mester lere ; *here*  
Bifel it so a strong dere 824

Bigan to rise of korn of bred,  
That grim ne coupe no god red,  
Hw he sholde his meine fede ;  
Of havelok hauede he michel drede : 828

They have not  
enough to eat.

For he was strong, and wel mouthe ete  
More þanne heuere mouthe he gete ;  
Ne he ne mouthe on þe se take  
Neyþer lenge, ne þorn[e]bake,<sup>1</sup> 832  
Ne non oþer fish þat douth *was sufficient*  
His meyne feden with he[r]<sup>2</sup> mouthe.

Grim is sorry  
for Havelok.

Of havelok he hauede kare,  
Hwilgat þat he micthe fare ; *how much he* 836

Of his children was him nouth,  
On havelok was al hise þouth,  
And seyde, “ havelok, dere sone,  
I wene that we deye mone 840  
For hunger, þis dere is so strong,  
And hure mete is uten long.

He advises him  
to go to Lincoln,

Betere is þat þu hezne gonge,  
þan þu here dwelle longe ; 844

Hepen þow mayt gangen to late ; *hence*  
Thou canst ful wel þe ricthe gate  
To lincolne, þe gode borw,  
þou hauest it gon ful ofte þoru ; 848

and work there.

Of me ne is me nouth a slo,  
Betere is þat þu þider go,  
For þer is mani god man inne,  
þer þou mayt þi mete winne. 852

He makes him  
a coat of an old  
sail.

But wo is me ! þou art so naked,  
Of mi seyl y wolde þe were maked  
A cloth, þou mithest inne gongen,  
Sone, no cold þat þu ne fonge.” *last* 856

<sup>1</sup> See l. 759.

<sup>2</sup> *Qu. her, i.e. their.* MS. he.

[Fol. 208 b, col. 2.]

He tok þe sh[e]res<sup>1</sup> of þe nayl,

And made him a couel of þe sayl, *garment*

And haueþok dide it sone on ;

Haueþe neyþer hosen ne shon,

860

Ne none kines oþe[r] weþe ;

To lincolne barfot he yeþe.

Havelok goes to  
Lincoln barefoot.

Hwan he kam þe[r], he was ful wil, *unwilling*

Ne haueþe he no frend to gangen til ;

864

Two dayes þer fastinde he yeþe,

He fasts for  
two days.

þat non for his werk wolde him feþe ;

þe þridde day herde he calle :

“Bermen, bermen, hider forth alle !” *porter*

868

[Poure þat on fote yeþe]<sup>2</sup>

Sprongen forth so sparke on gleþe.

Haueþok shof dun nyne or ten,

Havelok becomes  
the earl's cook's  
porter.

Rith amidewarde þe fen,

872

And stirte forth to þe kok,

[þer the herles mete he tok,]

þat he bouthe at þe brigge : ,

þe bermen let he alle ligge,

876

And bar þe mete to þe castel,

And gat him þere a ferþing wastel.

He gets a  
farthing cake.

þet oþer day keþte he ok *late*

Swiþe yerne þe erles kok, *early*

880

Another day,  
he watches the  
earl's cook,

Til þat he say him on þe b[r]igge,

And bi him mani fishes ligge.

þe herles mete haueþe he bouth

Of cornwalie, and kalde oft :

884

“Bermen, bermen, hider swiþe !”

who calls for a  
porter.

Haueþok it herde, and was ful bliþe,

þat he herde “bermen” calle ;

Alle made he hem dun falle

888

<sup>1</sup> *Qu.* sheres. MS. shres.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. ll. 91, 101. Here and below an additional line seems requisite.



Havelok upsets  
16 lads.

þat in his gate yeden and stode,  
Wel sixtene laddes gode.

Als he lep þe kok [vn-]til,  
He shof hem alle upon an hyl ;

892

He catches up  
the cook's fish,

Astirte til him with his rippe,  
And bigan þe fish to kippe.

He bar up wel a carte lode  
Of segges, laxes, of playces brode,  
Of grete laumprees, and of eles ;  
Sparede he neyþer tos ne heles,

896

and carries them  
to the castle.

Til þat he to þe castel cam,  
þat men fro him his birþene nam.  
þan men haueden holpen him doun  
With þe birþene of his croun,

900

[Fol. 209, col. 1.]

þe kok [bi] stod, and on him low,  
And þoute him stalworþe man ynow,  
And seyde, " wiltu ben wit me ?

904

The cook takes  
him into his  
service.

Gladlike wile ich feden þe ;  
Wel is set þe mete þu etes,  
And þe hire þat þu getes."

908

"Goddot!"<sup>1</sup> quoth he, "leue sire,  
Bidde ich you non oþer hire ;  
But yeueþ me inow to ete,

Havelok tells  
the cook what  
he can do.

Fir and water y wile yow fete,  
þe fir blowe, an ful wele maken ;  
Stickes kan ich breken and kraken,  
And kindlen ful wel a fyr,

912

And maken it to brennen shir ;

916

Ful wel kan ich cleuen shides,  
Eles to-turnen <sup>2</sup> of here hides ;

Ful wel kan ich dishes swilen,  
And don al þat ye euere wilen."

920

The cook is

Quoth þe kok, "wile i no more ;

<sup>1</sup> Soddot, MS.

<sup>2</sup> MS. to turuen ; but the u and n are almost indistinguishable.  
Cf. l. 603 ; and *William of Palerne*, 2590.

Go þu yunder, and sit þore,  
 And y shal yeue þe ful fair bred,  
 And make þe broys in þe led. *butte, little* 924  
 Sit now down and et ful yerne ;  
 Dapeit hwo þe mete werne !” *come, my son, sit down*

content to hire  
 him.

**H**auelok sette him dun anon,  
 Also stille als a ston, 928

Havelok eats  
 a good dinner,

Til he hauede ful wel eten ;  
 þo hauede havelok fayre geten.  
 Hwan he hauede eten inow,  
 He kam to þe welle, water up-drow, 932

And filde þe[r] a michel so ;  
 Bad he non ageyn him go,  
 But bi-twen his hondes he bar it in,  
 A[l] him one to þe kichin. 936

He fills a  
 large tub with  
 water for the  
 kitchen.

Bad he non him water to fete,  
 Ne fro b[r]igge to bere þe mete,  
 He bar þe turues, he bar þe star, *peat, sods*  
 þe wode fro the brigge he bar ; 940

Al that euere shulden he nytte, *as much as he*  
 Al he drow, and al he citte ;  
 Wolde he neuere hauen rest,  
 More þan he were a best. 944

He draws water,  
 and cuts wood,

Of alle men was he mest meke,  
 Lauhwinde ay, and bliþe of speke ;  
 Euere he was glad and bliþe,  
 His sorwe he coupe ful wel miþe. *quite* 948

He is always  
 laughing and  
 blithe.

It ne was non so litel knaue, [Fol. 209, col.]

For to leyken, ne forto plawe,  
 þat he ne wo[l]de with him pleye :  
 þe children that y[e]den in þe weie 952  
 Of him he deden al he[r] wille,

Children play  
 with him.

And with him leykeden here fille.  
 Him loueden alle, stille and holde.  
 Knictes, children, yunge and holde ; 956

All like him,

Alle him loueden þat him sowen,  
 Boþen heyemen and lowe.  
 Of him ful wide þe word sprong,  
 Hw he was mike, hw he was strong,  
 Hw fayr man god him hauede maked,

960

He has nothing  
 to wear but the  
 old sail,

But on þat he was alмест naked :

For he ne hauede nouth to shride,

But a kouel ful unride,

964

þat [was] ful, and swiþe wicke,

Was it nouth worth a fir sticke.

The cook buys  
 him new clothes,

þe cok bigan of him to rewe,

And bouthe him cloþes, al spannewe ;

968

He bouthe him boþe hosen and shon,

And sone dide him dones on.

He looks very  
 well in his new  
 suit,

Hwan he was cloþed, osed, and shod,

Was non so fayr under god,

972

þat euere yete in erþe were,

Non þat euere moder bere ;

It was neuere man þat yemedo

In kinneriche, þat so wel semedo

976

King or cayser forto be,

þan he was shrid, so semede he ;

Havelok is the  
 tallest man in  
 Lincoln,

For þanne he weren alle samen

At lincolne, at þe gamen,

980

And þe erles men woren al þore,

þan was hauelok bi þe shuldren more

þan þe meste þat þer kam :

In armes him noman [ne] nam,

984

þat he doune sone ne caste ;

Hauelok stod ouer hem als a mast.

Als he was heie, al <sup>1</sup> he was long,

He was boþe stark and strong ;

988

and the strongest  
 in England,

In engelond [was] non hise per

Of strengþe þat euere kam him ner.

Als he was strong, so was he softe ;

<sup>1</sup> Qu. so ; see l. 991.

þey a man him misdede ofte,	992	
Neuere more he him misdede,		
Ne hond on him with yuele leyde.		[Fol. 209 b, col. 1.]
Of bodi was he mayden clene,		He is good-
Neuere yete in game, ne in grene,	996	natured and pure.
þit <sup>1</sup> hire ne wolde leyke ne lye,		
No more þan it were a strie.		
In þat time al hengelond		
þerl Godrich hauede in his hond,	1000	Godrich summons
And he gart komen into þe tun		a parliament at
Mani erl, and mani barun ;		Lincoln.
And alle [men] þat liues were		
In eng[e]lond, þanne wer þere,	1004	
þat þey haueden after sent,		
To ben þer at þe parlement.		
With hem com mani chanþioun,		
Mani with ladde, blac and brown ;	1008	Some champions begin to contend in games.
An fel it so, þat yunge men,		
Wel abouten nine or ten,		
Bigummen þe[r] for to layke :		
þider komen bothe stronge and wayke ;	1012	
þider komen lesse and more,		
þat in þe borw þanne weren þore ;		
Chaunpiouns, and starke laddes,		
Bondemen with here gaddes,	1016	Strong lads and bondmen are there.
Als he comen fro þe plow ;		
þere was sembling i-now !		
For it ne was non horse-knaue,		
þo þei sholden in honde haue,	1020	
þat he ne kam þider, þe leyk to se :		
Biforn here fet þanne lay a tre,		
And putten <sup>2</sup> with a mikel ston		
þe starke laddes, ful god won.	1024	They begin to "put the stone."

<sup>1</sup> Qu. wit = with : miswritten owing to confusion of þ with p (w) ?

<sup>2</sup> MS. pulten. But see ll. 1031, 1033, 1044, 1051, &c.



- þe ston was mikel, and ek greth, *heave*  
 And al so heui so a neth ; *set*  
 Grund stalwrt he man he sholde be,  
 þat mouthe liften it to his kne ; 1028
- Few can lift it. Was þer neyþer clere, ne prest,  
 þat mithe liften it to his brest ;  
 þerwit putten the chaunpiouns,  
 þat þider comen with þe barouns. 1032
- Hwo so mithe putten þore  
 Biforn a-noþer, an inch or more,  
 Wore ye yung, [or] wore he hold,  
 He was for a kempe told. *also* 1036
- Whilst this is  
 going on, Al-so þe[i] stoden, an ofte stareden,  
 þe chaunpiouns, and ek the ladden,
- [Fol. 209 b, col. 2.] And he maden mikel strout *de*  
 Abouten þe alþerbeste but, 1040
- Havelok looks on  
 at them. Hauelok stod, and lokede þer-til ;  
 And of puttingge he was ful wil,  
 For neuere yete ne saw he or  
 Putten the stone, or þanne þor. 1044
- His master tells  
 him to try. Hise mayster bad him gon þer-to,  
 Als he couþe þer-with do.  
 þo hise mayster it him bad,  
 He was of him sore adrad ; 1048
- þerto he stirte sone anon,  
 And kipte up þat heui ston,  
 þat he sholde puten wiþe ;
- He puts the  
 stone 12 feet  
 beyond the rest. He putte at þe firste siþe, 1052
- Ouer alle þat þer wore,  
 Twel fote, and sundel more.  
 þe chaunpiouns þat [þat] put sowen,  
 Shuldreden he ilc oþer, and lowen ; 1056
- Wolden he no more to putting gange,  
 But seyde, " we <sup>1</sup> dwellen her to longe ! "

<sup>1</sup> In the former edition—"ye". But the *y* is not dotted, and it may be "pe."

- þis selkouth mithe nouth *ben* hyd,  
 Ful sone it was ful loude kid 1060 This feat is  
everywhere  
talked about.  
 Of hauelok, hw he warp þe ston  
 Ouer þe laddes euerilkon ;  
 Hw he was fayr, hw he was long,  
 Hw he was with, hw he was strong ; 1064  
 þoruth england yede þe speke,<sup>1</sup>  
 Hw he was strong, and ek meke ;  
 In the castel, up in þe halle,  
 þe knithes speken þer-of alle, 1068  
 So that Godrich it herde wel  
 þe[r] speken of hauelok, eueri del, Godrich hears the  
knights talking  
of it.  
 Hw he was strong man and hey,  
 Hw he was strong and ek fri, 1072  
 And þouthte godrich, “ þoru þis knaue  
 Shal ich engelond al haue,  
 And mi sone after me ;  
 For so i wile þat it be. 1076  
 The king apelwald me dide swere  
 Vpon al þe messe-gere,  
 þat y shu[l]de his douthe[r] yeue  
 þe hexte þat mithe liue, 1080 “Athelwold said I  
was to marry his  
daughter to the  
strongest man  
alive.  
 þe beste, þe fairest, þe strangest ok ;  
 þat gart he me sweren on þe bok.  
 Hwere mithe i finden ani so hey  
 So hauelok is, or so sley ? 1084 [Fol. 210, col. 1.]  
 þou y southe heþen in-to ynde,  
 So fayr, so strong, ne mithe y finde.  
 Hauelok is þat ilke knaue,  
 þat shal goldeborw haue.” 1088 That is Havelok.”  
 þis þouththe [he] with trechery,  
 With traysoun, and wit felony ;  
 For he wende, þat hauelok wore  
 Sum cherles sone, and no more ; 1092  
 Ne shulde he hauen of engelond

<sup>1</sup> MS. speche. Read “speke,” as in l. 946.

- Onlepi forw in his hond, *forw*  
 With hire, þat was þerof eyr,  
 þat boþe was god and swiþe fair. 1096
- He thought  
 Havelok was  
 only a thrall. He wende, þat haue lok wer a þral,  
 þer-þoru he wende hauen al *he þat wende*  
 In engelond, þat hire rith was ;  
 He was werse þan sathanas, 1100  
 þat iliesu crist in erþe shop : <sup>1</sup>  
 Hanged worþe he on an hok !
- He sends for  
 Goldborough to  
 Lincoln. A fter goldebo[r]w sone he sende,  
 þat was boþe fayr and hende, 1104  
 And dide hire to lincolne bringe,  
 Belles dede he ageyn hire ringen,  
 And ioie he made hire swiþe mikel,  
 But neþeles he was ful swikel. 1108  
 He seyde, þat he sholde hire yeue  
 þe fayrest man that mithe liue.
- She says she will  
 marry none but a  
 king. She answerede, and seyde anon,  
 Bi crist, and bi seint iohan, 1112  
 þat hire sholde noman wedde,  
 Ne noman bringen to hire <sup>2</sup> bedde,  
 But he were king, or kinges eyr,  
 Were he neuere man so fayr. 1116
- Godrich is wrath  
 at this. Godrich þe erl was swiþe wroth,  
 þat she swore swilk an oth,  
 And seyde, " hwor þou wilt be  
 Quen and leuedi ouer me ? 1120  
 þou shalt hauen a gadeling,  
 Ne shalt þou hauen non oþer king ;
- He says she shall  
 marry his cook's  
 servant. þe shal spusen mi cokes knaue,  
 Ne shalt þou non oþer louerd haue. 1124  
 Daþeit þat þe oþer yeue  
 Euere more hwil i liue !

<sup>1</sup> *Qu. shok or strok.*<sup>2</sup> *Qu. hise.*

- To-mo[r]we ye sholen ben weddeth,  
 And, maugre þin, to-gidere beddeth." 1128  
 Goldeborw gret, and *was*<sup>1</sup> hire ille, [Fol. 210, col. 2.]  
 She wolde ben ded bi hire wille.  
 On the morwen, hwan day was sprungē,  
 And day-belle at kirke rungen, 1132  
 After havelok sente þat iudas,  
 þat werse was þanne sathanas :  
 And seyde, "mayster, wile wif?"  
 "Nay," quoth havelok, "bi my lif!  
 Hwat sholde ich with wif do?  
 I ne may hire fede, ne cloþe, ne sho.  
 Wider sholde ich wimman bringe?  
 I ne haue none kines þinge. 1140 Havelok refuses.  
 I ne haue hws, y ne haue cote,  
 Ne i ne<sup>2</sup> haue stikke, y ne haue sprote, *sprote*  
 I ne haue neyþer bred ne sowel,  
 Ne cloth, but of an hold with couel. 1144  
 þis cloþes, þat ich onne haue,  
 Aren þe kokes, and ich his knaue."  
 Godrich stirt up, and on him dong  
 [With dintes swiþe hard and strong,] 1148  
 And seyde, "But þou hire take,  
 þat y wole yeuen þe to make,  
 I shal hangen þe ful heye,  
 Or y shal þristen vth þin heie." 1152  
 Havelok was one, and was odrat,  
 And grauntede him al þat he bad. Havelok consents.  
 þo sende he after hire sone,  
 þe fayrest wymman under mone ; 1156  
 And seyde til hire, [false]<sup>3</sup> and slike,  
 þat wicke þral, þat foule swike :  
 "But þu þis man under-stonde,  
 Godrich next threatens Goldborough.

<sup>1</sup> The first letter of this word is either þ or a Saxon *w* (p). I read it as the latter.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ine.

<sup>3</sup> Both sense and metre require this word.



- I shal flemen þe of londe ; 1160  
 Or þou shal to þe galwes renne,  
 And þer þou shalt in a fir brenne.”  
 Sho was adrad, for he so þrette,  
 And durste nouth þe spusing lette, 1164  
 But þey hire likede swiþe ille,  
 þouth it was godes wille :  
 God, þat makes to growen þe korn,  
 Formede hire wimman to be born. 1168  
 Hwan he hauede don him for drede,  
 þat he sholde hire spusen, and fede,  
 And þat she sholde til him holde,  
 þer weren penies þicke tolde, 1172  
 Mikel plente upon þe bok :  
 He ys hire yaf, and she as tok.  
 [Fol. 210 b, col. 1.] He weren spused fayre and wel,  
 þe messe he deden eueridel, 1176  
 þat fel to spusing, and god cle[r]k,  
 þe erchebishop uth of yerke,  
 þat kam to þe parlement,  
 Als god him hauede þider sent. 1180

- H**wan he weren togydere in godes lawe,  
 þat þe folc ful wel it sawe,  
 He ne wisten hwat he mouthen,  
 Ne he ne wisten wat hem douthe ; 1184  
 þer to dwellen, or þenne to gonge,  
 þer ne wolden he dwellen longe,  
 For he wisten, and ful wel sawe,  
 þat godrich hem hatede, þe deuel him hawe ! 1188  
 And yf he dwelleden þer outh—  
 þat fel havelok ful wel on þouth—  
 Men sholde don his leman shame,  
 Or elles bringen in wicke blame. 1192  
 þat were him leuere to ben ded,  
 For-þi he token anoþer red,

She consents,  
 thinking it is  
 God's will.

A dowry is  
 given her.

The archbishop  
 of York marries  
 them.

Havelok knows  
 not what to do.

He determines

- þat þei sholden þenne fle  
 Til grim, and til hise soncs þre ; 1196  
 þer wenden he alþer-best to spede,  
 Hem forto cloþe, and for to fede.  
 þe lond he token under fote,  
 Ne wisten he non oþer bote, 1200  
 And helden ay the riþe [sti]<sup>1</sup> way  
 Til he komen to grimesby.  
 þanne he komen þere, þanne was grim ded,  
 Of him ne haueden he no red ; 1204  
 But hise children alle fyue  
 Alle weren yet on liue ;  
 þat ful fayre ayen hem neme,  
 Hwan he wisten þat he keme, 1208  
 And maden ioie swiþe mikel,  
 Ne weren he neuere ayen hem fikel.  
 On knes ful fayre he hem setten,  
 And hauelok swiþe fayre gretten, 1212  
 And seyden, “ welcome, louerd dere !  
 And welcome be þi fayre fere !  
 Blessed be þat ilke þrawe, ~~that~~  
 þat þou hire toke in godes lawe ! 1216  
 Wel is hus we sen þe on lyue,  
 þou mithe us boþe selle and yeue ;  
 þou mayt us boþe yeue and selle,  
 With þat þou wilt here dwelle. 1220 [Fol. 210 b, col. 2.]  
 We hauen, louerd, alle gode,  
 Hors, and neth, and ship on flode,  
 Gold, and siluer, and michel auchte,  
 þat grim ure fader us bitawchte. 1224  
 Gold, and siluer, and oþer fe  
 Bad he us bi-taken þe.  
 We hauen shep, we hauen swin,  
 Bi-leue her, louerd, and al be þin ; 1228  
 þo shalt ben louerd, þou shalt ben syre,

to go to Grimsby.

He finds that  
Grim is dead, but  
his five children  
are alive.

They welcome  
Havelok very  
kindly.

They beg him to  
stay with them.

They will serve

<sup>1</sup> A word is here erased ; but see l. 2618.

- him and his wife. And we sholen *seruen* þe and hire ;  
 And hure sistres sholen do  
 Al that euere biddes sho ; 1232  
 He sholen hire clopen, washen, and wringen,  
 And to hondes water bringen ;  
 He sholen bedden hire and þe,  
 For leuedi wile we þat she be." 1236  
 Hwan he þis ioie haueden maked,  
 Sithen stikes broken and kraked,  
 And þe fir brouth on brenne,  
 Ne was þer spared gos ne henne, 1240  
 Ne þe hende, ne þe drake, *ne*  
 Mete he deden plente make ;  
 Ne wantede þere no god mete,  
 They fetch wine Wyn and ale deden he fete, 1244  
 and ale. And made[n] hem [ful] glade and bliþe,  
 Wesseyl ledden he fele siþe.
- At night On þe nith, als goldeborw lay,  
 Goldborough lies Sory and sorwful was she ay, 1248  
 down sorrowful. For she wende she were bi-swike,  
 þat sh[e w]ere <sup>1</sup> yeuen un-kyndelike.
- She sees a great O nith saw she þer-inne a lith,  
 light. A swiþe fayr, a swiþe bryth, 1252  
 Al so brith, al so shir,  
 So it were a blase of fir.  
 She lokede no[r]þ,<sup>2</sup> and ek south,
- It comes out of And saw it comen ut of his mouth, 1256  
 Havelok's mouth. þat lay bi hire in þe bed :  
 No ferlike þou she were adred. *ne*  
 þouthe she, "wat may this bi-mene !  
 He beth heyman yet, als y wene, 1260  
 He beth heyman er he be ded :"—
- She sees a red On hise shuldre, of gold red  
 cross on his She saw a swiþe noble croiz,  
 shoulder, and

<sup>1</sup> MS. *shere*, evidently *miswritten* for *she were*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *noþ*.

Of an angel she herde a uoyz : 1264 hears an angel,  
saying,

“Goldeborw, lat þi sorwe be, [Fol. 211, col. 1.]  
For havelok, þat haueþ spuset þe, “Goldborough,  
be not sad.

He <sup>1</sup> kinges sone, and kinges eyr,  
þat bikeneth þat croiz so fayr. *betoken* 1268

It <sup>2</sup> bikenneth more, þat he shal  
Denemark haue, and englonde al ;  
He shal ben king strong and stark  
Of engeland and denemark ; 1272

þat shal þu wit þin eyne sen,  
And þo shalt quen and leuedi ben !” and thou, queen.”

Þanne she hauede herd the steuene  
Of þe angel uth of heuene, 1276

She was so fele siþes blithe,  
þat she ne miþe hire ioie mythe ;  
But havelok sone anon she kiste,  
And he slep, and nouth ne wiste. 1280

Hwan þat aungel hauede seyð,  
Of his slep a-non he brayð, *startet*  
And seide, “lemman, slepes þou ?  
A selkuth drem dremede me nou. 1284

Herkne nou hwat me haueth met :  
Me þouthe y was in denemark set,  
But on on þe moste hil  
þat euere yete kam i til. 1288

It was so hey, þat y wel mouthe  
Al þe werd se, als me þouthe.  
Als i sat up-on þat lowe, *hill*  
I bigan denemark for to awe,  
þe borwes, and þe castles stronge ;  
And mine armes weren so longe,  
That i fadmede, al at ones, 1292

and began to  
possess all that  
country.

<sup>1</sup> Qu. Is.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Iit.



	denemark, with mine longe bones ;	1296
	And þanne y wolde mine armes drawe	
	Til me, and hom for to haue,	
All things in Denmark cleaved to his arms.	Al that euere in denemark liueden	
	On mine armes faste clyueden ;	1300
	And þe stronge castles alle	
	On knes bigunnen for to falle,	
	þe keyes fellen at mine fet :—	
He also dreamt that he went to England,	Anoper drem dremede me ek,	1304
	þat ich fley ouer þe salte se	
	Til engeland, and al with me	
	þat euere was in denemark lyues,	
	But bondemen, and here wiues,	1308
	And þat ich kom til engelond,	
[Fol. 211, col. 2.] and that became his too.	Al closede it intil min hond,	
	And, goldeborw, y gaf [it] þe :—	
	Deus ! lemman, hwat may pis be ?”	1312
	Sho answerede, and seyde sone :	
	“ Ihesu crist, þat made mone,	
	þine dremes turne to ioie ;	
	þat wite þw that sittes in trone !	1316
She says, he will be king of England and Denmark.	Ne non strong king, ne caysere,	
	So þou shalt be, fo[r] þou shalt bere	
	In engelond corune yet ;	
	Denemark shal knele to þi fet ;	1320
	Alle þe castles þat aren þer-inne,	
	Shal-tow, lemman, ful wel winne.	
	I woth, so wel so ich it sowe,	
	To þe shole comen heye and lowe,	1324
	And alle þat in denemark wone,	
	Em and broþer, fader and sone,	
	Erl and baroun, dreng an kayn,	
	Knithes, and burgeys, and sweyn ;	1328
	And mad king heyelike and wel,	
	Denemark shal be þin euere-ile del.	

- Haue þou nouth þer-offe douthe  
 Nouth þe worth of one nouthle ; 1332  
 þer-offe with-inne þe firste yer  
 Shalt þou ben king, of euere-il del. Thou shalt be  
 But do nou als y wile rathe, *speedily* king within the  
 Nim in with þe to denema[r]k baþe, *hall* year. 1336  
 And do þou nouth onfrest þis fare, *delay*  
 Lith and selthe felawes are. *comfort (peace), answer*  
 For shal ich neuere bliþe be  
 Til i with eyen denemark se ; 1340  
 For ich woth, þat al þe lond  
 Shalt þou haue in þin hon[d].  
 Prey grimes sones alle þre,  
 That he wenden forþ with þe ; 1344  
 I wot, he wilen þe nouth werne,  
 With þe wende shulen he yerne,  
 For he louen þe herte-like,  
 þou maght til he aren quike, 1348  
 Hwore so he o worde aren ; *wherever*  
 þere ship þou do hem swithe yaren, *make ready*  
 And loke þat þou dwellen nouth : Go at once.  
 Dwelling haueth ofte scape wrouth." Delays are  
 1352 dangerous."

- H**wan Haelok herde þat she radde,  
 Sone it was day, sone he him cladde,  
 And sone to þe kirke yede, [Fol. 211 b, col. 1.]  
 Or he dide ani oþer dede, 1356  
 And bifor þe rode bigan falle,  
 Croiz and crist bi[gan] to kalle,  
 And seyde, "louerd, þat al weldes,  
 Wind and water, wodes and feldes, 1360  
 For the holi milce of you,  
 Haue merci of me, louerd, nou !  
 And wreke me yet on mi fo,  
 þat ich saw biforn min eyne slo  
 Mine sistres, with a knif, 1364  
 and for vengeance  
 on his foe,

- And siþen wolde me mi lyf  
 Haue reft, for in the [depe] se  
 Bad he grim haue drenched me. 1368  
 He [hath] mi lond with mikel vn-Rith,  
 With michel wrong, with mikel plith, *harue*  
 For i ne <sup>1</sup> misdede him neuere nouth,  
 And haued me to sorwe brouth. 1372  
 He haueth me do mi mete to þigge, *lee*  
 And ofte in sorwe and pine ligge.  
 Louerd, haue merci of me,  
 And late [me] wel passe þe se, 1376  
 þat ihc haue ther-offe douthe and kare,  
 With-uten stormes ouer-fare,  
 þat y ne drenched [be] þer-ine,  
 Ne forfaren for no sinne. *seue* 1380  
 And bringge me wel to þe lond,  
 þat godard haldes in his hond ;  
 þat is mi Rith, eueri del :  
 Ihesu crist, þou wost it wel !” 1384
- þanne he hauede his bede seyð,  
 His offrende on þe auter leyð,  
 His leue at ihesu crist he tok,  
 And at his suete moder ok, 1388  
 And at þe croiz, þat he biforn lay,  
 Siþen yede sore grotinde away. *weyð*
- <sup>2</sup> Hwan he com hom, he wore yare, *ysode*  
 Grimes sones, forto fare 1392  
 In-to þe se, fishes to gete,  
 þat havelok mithe wel of ete.  
 But auelok þouthe al anoþer,  
 First he ka[l]de þe heldeste broþer, 1396  
 Roberd þe rede, bi his name,

who had caused  
 him to be a  
 beggar.

He prays for a  
 fair passage  
 across the sea.

He leaves his  
 offering on the  
 altar.

He finds Grim's  
 sons ready to  
 fish.

Havelok calls  
 Grim's three  
 sons.

<sup>1</sup> MS. ine.

<sup>2</sup> In the MS. the Capital letter is prefixed to the next line.

- Wiliam wenduth, and h[uwe r]auen,<sup>1</sup>  
 Grimes sones alle pre,  
 And sey[d]e, "lip̄es nou alle to me, 1400 [Fol. 211 b, col. 2.]  
 Louerdinges, ich wile you sheue,  
 A þing of me þat ye wel knewe.  
 Mi fader was king of denshe lond,  
 Denemark was al in his hond 1404 He says, "My  
 þe day þat he was quik and ded ; father was king  
 But þanne hauede he wicke red, of Denmark.  
 þat he me, and denemark al,  
 And mine sistres bi-tawte a þral : 1408 He left me and  
 A deueles lime [he] hus bitawte, my sisters in  
 And al his lond, and al hise authē. charge of a foul  
 For y saw that fule fend fiend,  
 Mine sistres slo with hise hend ; 1412  
 First he shar a-two here þrotes, who slew my  
 And sipen [karf] hem al to-grotes, sisters,  
 And sipen bad [he] in þe se  
 Grim, youre fader, drenchen me. 1416 and bade Grim  
 Deplike dede he him swere drown me.  
 On bok, þat he sholde me bere  
 Vnto þe se, an drenchen ine,  
 And wolde taken on him þe sinne. 1420  
 But grim was wis, and swiþe hende, But Grim was  
 Wolde he nouth his soule shende ; wise.  
 Leuere was him to be for-sworen,  
 þan drenchen me, and ben for-lorn ; 1424  
 But sone bigan he forto fle  
 Fro denemark, forto berwen<sup>2</sup> me,  
 For yif<sup>3</sup> ich hauede þer ben funden, He fled from  
 Hauede ben slayn, or harde bunden, 1428 Denmark with  
 And heye ben hengel on a tre, me,

<sup>1</sup> MS. hauen. Cf. ll. 1868, 2528. Only an assonance, not a rime, seems intended.

<sup>2</sup> MS. berpen, *the A.S. w being used here.* Cf. l. 697.

<sup>3</sup> MS. yif.

- Hauede go for him gold ne fe.  
 For-þi fro denemark hider he fledde,  
 and took care of me. And me ful fayre and ful wel fedde, 1432  
 So þat vn-to þis [ilke] day,  
 Haue ich ben fed and fostred ay.  
 But nou ich am up to þat helde  
 Cumen, that ich may wepne welde, 1436  
 And y may grete dintes yeue,  
 And now, I must go to Denmark. Shal i neuere hwil ich lyue  
 Ben glad, til that ich denemark se ;  
 Go with me, and I will make you rich men." I preie you þat ye wende with me, 1440  
 And ich may mak you riche men,  
 Ilk of you shal haue castles ten,  
 And þe lond þat þor-til longes,  
 Borwes, tunes, wodes and wonges." <sup>1</sup> 1444  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 [Fol. 212, col. 1.] "With swilk als ich byen shal :  
 þer-of bi-seche you nou leue ;  
 Havelok asks Ubbe to give him leave to buy and sell there. Wile ich speke with non oþer reue,  
 But with þe, þat iustise are, 1628  
 þat y mithe seken <sup>2</sup> mi ware  
 In gode borwes up and down,  
 And faren ich wile fro tun to tun."  
 A gold ring drow he forth anon, 1632  
 An hundred pund was worth þe ston,  
 He gives Ubbe a gold ring. And yaf it ubbe for to spede :—  
 He was ful wis þat first yaf mede,  
 And so was havelok ful wis here, 1636

<sup>1</sup> A folio has here been cut out of the MS., containing 180 lines. The missing portion must have been to this effect. "To this they gladly assented ; and Havelok, accompanied by his wife Goldeborw and the sons of Grim, set sail for Denmark. Disembarking, they travel till they reach the castle of a great Danish earl, named Ubbe, who had formerly been a close friend to king Birkabeyn. Havelok begs that he will allow him to live in that part of the country, and to gain a livelihood by trading."

<sup>2</sup> *Qu.* sellen.



He solde his gold ring ful dere,  
 Was neuere non so dere sold,  
 For chapmen, neyþer yung ne old :  
 þat sholen <sup>1</sup> ye forthward ful wel heren,  
 Yif þat ye wile þe storie heren.

Dearly he sells it,  
 all the same.

1640

**H**wan ubbe hauede þe gold ring,  
 Hauede he youenet for no þing,  
 Nouth for þe borw euere-il del :—  
 Hauelok bi-hel he swiþe wel,  
 Hw he was wel of bones maked,  
 Brod in þe sholdres, ful wel schaped,  
 þicke in þe brest, of bodi long ;  
 He semede wel to ben wel strong.

Ubbe takes the  
 ring,

1644

“Deus !” hwat ubbe, “qui ne were he knith ?  
 I woth, þat he is swiþe with !

Betere semede him to bere  
 Helm on heued, sheld and spere,  
 þanne to beye and selle ware.

1652 and thinks he  
 ought to be a  
 knight, not a  
 pedlar.

Allas ! þat he shal þer-with fare.  
 Goddot ! wile he trowe me,  
 Chaffare shal he late be.”

1656

Neþeles he seyde sone :

“Hauelok, haue [þou] þi bone,  
 And y ful wel rede þ[e]

1660 “Havelok, bring  
 your wife, and  
 come and eat  
 with me.”

þat þou come, and ete with me

To-day, þou, and þi fayre wif,

þat þou louest also þi lif.

And haue þou of hire no drede,

1664

Shal hire no man shame bede.

Bi þe fey that y owe to þe,

þerof shal i me serf-borw be.”

**H**auelok herde þat he bad,  
 And thow was he ful sore drad,

1668

With him to ete, for hise wif ;

[Fol. 212, col. 2.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. shoren.

Havelok fears  
ill may come  
of it.

For him wore leuere þat his lif  
Him wore reft, þan she in blame 1672  
Felle, or lauthe ani shame. *no come*  
Hwanne he hauede his wille wat,<sup>1</sup>

But Ubbe rides  
away, saying,

þe stede, þat he onne sat,  
Smot ubbe with spures faste, 1676  
And forth away, but at þe laste,  
Or he fro him ferde,  
Seyde he, þat his folk herde :

"Mind that you  
come,"

"Loke þat ye comen beþe, 1680  
For ich it wile, and ich it rede."

Havelok dares  
not refuse.

H auelok ne durste, þe he were adrad,  
Nouth with-sitten þat ubbe bad ;  
His wif he dide with him lede, 1684  
Vn-to þe heye curt he y[e]de.<sup>2</sup>

Robert the Red  
leads Gold-  
borough.

Roberd hire ledde, þat was red,  
þat hau[ed]e þe þarned for hire þe ded  
Or ani hauede hire misseyd, 1688  
Or hand with iuele onne leyð.

William Wendut  
is on the other  
side of her.

Willam wendut was þat oper  
þat hire ledde, roberdes broþer,  
þat was with at alle nedes : 1692  
Wel is him þat god man fedes !  
þan he weren comen to þe halle,  
Biforen ubbe, and hise men alle,

Ubbe starts up to  
welcome them.

Vbbe stirte hem ageyn, 1696  
And mani a knith, and mani a sweyn,  
Hem for to se, and forto shewe ;  
þo stod hauelok als a lowe

Havelok is a head  
taller than any of  
them.

Aboven [þo] þat þer-inne wore, 1700  
Rith al bi þe heued more  
þanne ani þat þer-inne stod :  
þo was ubbe bliþe of mod,  
þat he saw him so fayr and hende, 1704

<sup>1</sup> MS. *either þat or pat*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *yde*.

Fro him ne mithe his herte wende,

Ne fro him, ne fro his wif ;

He louede hem sone so his lif.

Weren non in denemark, þat him þouthe,

þat he so mikel loue mouthe ;

More he louede havelok one,

þan al denemark, bi mine wone ! *apurer*

Loke nou, hw god helpen kan

O mani wise wif and man.

1708 Ubbe loves  
Havelok better  
than any one  
else.

1712

**H**wan it was comen time to ete,

Hise wif dede ubbe sone in fete, *hauget*

And til hire seyde, al on gamen :

“ Dame, þou and havelok shulen ete samen,

And goldeboru shal ete wit me,

þat is so fayr so flour on tre ;

In al denemark nis <sup>1</sup> wimman

So fayr so sche, bi seint iohan ! ”

þanne [he] were set, and bord leyd,

And þe beneysun was seyd,

Biforn hem com þe beste mete

þat king or cayser wolde ete ;

Kranes, swannes, ueneysun,

Lax, lampreys, and god sturgun,

Pym<sup>u</sup>ent to drinke, and god clare,

Win hwit and red, ful god plente.

Was þer-inne no page so lite,

þat euere wolde ale bite. *bitte*

Of þe mete forto tel,

Ne of þe metes <sup>2</sup> bidde i nout dwelle ;

þat is þe storie for to lenge,

It wolde anuye þis fayre genge.

But hwan he hauden þe kiwing <sup>3</sup> deled, *deled*

And fele sipes hauden wosseyled,

And with gode drinks seten longe,

[Fol. 212 b, col. 1.]

1716

Ubbe's wife is to  
eat with Havelok,  
and Goldborough  
with Ubbe.

1720

1724 There were  
cranes, swans,  
venison, fish,  
and wines.

1728

1732

No need to tell  
it all.

1736 When the feast is  
over,

<sup>1</sup> MS. is.      <sup>2</sup> Qu. win.      <sup>3</sup> Uncertain in MS. See note.

Ubbe thinks he  
must let them  
have an escort.

And it was time for to gonge,  
Il man to þer he cam fro, 1740

þouthe ubbe, "yf I late hem go,  
þus one foure, with-uten mo,  
So mote ich brouke finger or to,  
For þis winman bes mike wo ! *ful. shalþe* 1744  
For hire shal men hire louerd slo."

He tok some knithes ten,  
And wel sixti oþer men,  
Wit gode bowes, and with gleiues, 1748

He sends them to  
Bernard Brown,  
and bids him  
take care of them  
till next day.

And sende him unto þe greyues, *spone*  
þe beste man of al þe toun,  
þat was named bernard brun ;  
And bad him, als he louede his lif, 1752  
Hauelok wel y[e]men,<sup>1</sup> and his wif,  
And wel do wayten al þe nith,  
Til þe oþer day, þat it were lith.

Bernard was trewe, and swiþe with, 1756  
In al þe borw ne was no knith  
þat betere coupe on stede riden,  
Helm on heued, ne swerd bi side.

[Fol. 212 b, col. 2.]  
Bernard provides  
a rich supper for  
Havelok.

Hauelok he gladlike under-stod, *reueine* 1760  
With mike loue, and herte god,  
And dide greyþe a super riche,  
Also he was no with chinche, *supperly*  
To his bihoue euer-il del, 1764  
þat he mithe suþe swiþe wel.

At suppertime  
sixty-one thieves  
come to the  
house,

Also he seten, and sholde soupe,  
So comes a ladde in a ioupe, *supperly*  
And with him sixti oþer stronge, 1768

With swerdes drawn, and kniues longe,  
Ilkan in hande a ful god gleiue,

and bid Bernard  
open the door.

And seyde, "undo, bernard þe greyue !  
Vndo swiþe, and latus<sup>2</sup> in, 1772

<sup>1</sup> MS. ymen.

<sup>2</sup> Sic in MS.

Or þu art ded, bi seint austin !”

Bernard stirt up, þat was ful big,

Bernard starts  
up, arms himself,

And caste a brinie up-on his rig, *cuttars*

And grop an ax,<sup>1</sup> þat was ful god, 1776

Lep to þe dore, so he wore wod,

And seyde, “hwat are ye, þat are þer-oute,

þat þus biginnen forto stroute ? *the thieves come out*

Goth henne swiþe, fule þeues, 1780 and tells them to  
go away.

For, bi þe louerd, þat man on leues,

Shol ich casten þe dore open,

Summe of you shal ich drepen !

And þe oþre shal ich kesten 1784

In feteres, and ful faste festen !”

“Hwat haue ye seid,” quoth a ladde, They defy him.

“Wenestu þat we ben adradde ?

We shole at þis dore gonge 1788

Maugre þin, earl, or outh longe.”

He gripen sone a bulder ston,

And let it fleye, ful god won, *the door is broken*

They break the  
door open with a  
boulder.

Agen þe dore, þat it to-rof : 1792

Auelok it saw, and þider drof,

And þe barre sone vt-drow,

þat was unride, and gret ynow, *unwillingly*

Havelok seizes  
the bar of the  
door, and says,

And caste þe dore open wide, 1796

And seide, “her shal y now abide :

Comes swiþe vn-to me !<sup>2</sup>

“Come here to  
me.”

Datheyt hwo you henne fle !”

“No,” quodh on, “þat shaltou coupe,” *they say* 1800

And bigan til him to loupe, *for*

In his hond is swerd ut-drawe,

Three men attack  
Havelok.

Hauelok he wende þore haue slawe ;

And with [him] comen oþer two, 1804

þat him wolde of liue haue do.

[Fol. 213, col. 1.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. ar ; but see l. 1894.

<sup>2</sup> MS. vnto me datheit,—evidently the repetition of the first word in the succeeding line.



- Havelok lifte up þe dore-tre,  
 He kills them all. And at a dint he slow hem þre ;  
 Was non of hem þat his hermes *hermes* 1808  
 Ne lay þer-ute ageyn þe sternes.  
 A fourth he þe ferþe þat he siþen mette,  
 knocks down Wit þe barre so he him grette,  
 with a blow on the head. Bifor þe heued, þat þe rith eye 1812  
 Vt of þe hole made he fleye,  
 And siþe clapte him on þe crune,  
 So þat he stan-ded fel þor dune.  
 A fifth he hits þe fifte þat he ouer-tok, 1816  
 between the Gaf he a ful sor dint[e] ok,  
 shoulders. Bitwen þe sholdres, þer he stod,  
 þat he spen his herte blod.  
 A sixth he smites on the þe sixte wende for to fle, 1820  
 neck. And he clapte him with þe tre  
 Rith in þe fule necke so,  
 þat he smot hise necke on to.  
 þanne þe sixe weren doun feld, 1824  
 A seventh aims at þe senenþe brayd ut his swerd,  
 Havelok's eye. And wolde havelok Riht in the eye ;  
 And havelok le[t þe] <sup>1</sup> barre fleye,  
 Havelok kills him. And smot him sone ageyn þe brest, 1828  
 þat hauede he neuere sch[r]ifte of prest ;  
 For he was ded on lesse hwile,  
 þan men mouthe renne a mile.  
 The rest divide Alle þe opere weren ful kene, 1832  
 into two parties, A red þei taken hem bi-twene,  
 þat he sholde him bi-halue,  
 And brisen so, þat wit no salue  
 Ne sholde him helen leche non : 1836  
 þey drowen ut swerdes, ful god won,  
 and shoot at him And shoten on him, so don on bere *shot*  
 from a distance. Dogges, þat wolden him to-tere,

<sup>1</sup> Qu. Havelok let the. MS. "haue le."

þanne men cloth þe bere beyte : 1840

þe laddes were kaske and teyte, *stonen and*

And vn-bi-yeden him ilkon, *surrounded*

Sum smot with tre, and sum wit ston ;

Summe putten with gleyue, in bac and side, 1844

And yeuen wundes longe and wide ;

In twenti stedes, and wel mo,

Fro þe croune til the to.

Hwan he saw þat, he was wod, 1848

And was it ferlik hw he stod,

For the blod ran of his sides

They wound  
Havelok in  
twenty places.

So water þat fro þe welle glides ;

But þanne bigan he for to mowe

With the barre, and let hem shewe,

Hw he cowþe sore smite,

For was þer non, long ne lite,

þat he Mouthe ouer-take,

þat he ne garte his croune krake ;

So þat on a litel stund,

Felde he twenti to þe grund.

[Fol. 213, col. 2.]

1852

1856

He at last  
succeeds in  
killing twenty of  
them.

þo bigan gret dine to rise, 1860

For þe laddes on ilke wise

Him asayleden wit grete dintes,

Fro fer he stoden, him with flintes

And gleyues schoten him fro ferne, 1864

For drepn him he wolden yerne ;

But dursten he newhen him no more, *approach*

þanne he bor or leun wore.

They throw  
stones at him.

Huwe rauen þat dine herde, 1868

And þowthe wel, þat men mis-ferde

With his louerd, for his wif,

And grop an ore, and a long knif,

And þider drof al so an hert,

And cham þer on a litel stert,

Hugh Raven  
hears the noise,

1872

and comes to  
help.

And saw how þe laddes wode  
 Haue lok his louerd umbistode, *a laddes wode*  
 And beten on him so doth þe smith 1876  
 With þe hamer on þe stith.

“**A**llas!” hwat hwe, “þat y was boren!  
 þat euere et ich bred of koren!  
 þat ich here þis sorwe se!” 1880

Hugh calls out to  
 Robert and  
 William.

Roberd! willam! hware ar ye?  
 Gripeth eþer unker a god tre, *of your lord*  
 And late we nouth þise doges fle,  
 Til ure louerd wreke [we]; 1884  
 Cometh swiþe, and folwes me!  
 Ich haue in honde a ful god ore:  
 Datheit wo ne smite sore!”

Robert comes to  
 the rescue,

“Ya! leue, ya!” quod roberd sone, 1888  
 “We hauen ful god lith of þe mone.”  
 Roberd grop a staf, strong and gret,  
 þat mouthe ful wel bere a net,

and William too,  
 and Bernard.

And willam wendut grop a tre 1892  
 Mikel grettere þan his þe,<sup>1</sup>  
 And bernard held his ax ful faste;

[Fol. 213 b, col. 1.]

I seye, was he nouth þe laste;  
 And lopen forth so he weren wode 1896  
 To þe laddes, þer he stode,  
 And yaf hem wundes swiþe grete;

They fight with  
 the thieves.

þer mithe men wel se boyes bete,  
 And ribbes in here sides breke, 1900  
 And haue lok on hem wel wreke.

He broken armes, he broken knes,  
 He broken shankes, he broken thes.  
 He dide þe blode þere renne dunc 1904  
 To þe fet rith fro the crune,

No head was  
 spared.

For was þer spared heued non:  
 He leyden on heuedes, ful god won,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þre, the r being caught from the word above. Cf. l. 1903.

And made croune[s] breke and crake, 1908

Of þe broune, and of þe blake ;

He maden here backes al so bloute

He made their  
backs as soft  
as their bellies,

Als h[er]e<sup>1</sup> wombes, and made hem rowte

Als he weren kradelbarnes :

1912

So dos þe child þat moder þarnes. *lose*

Dapeit wo<sup>2</sup> recke ! for he it seruede,

Hwat dide he þore weren he werewed ; *slain*

So longe haueden he but and bet *thought* 1916

With neues under hernes set, *lives*

þat of þo<sup>3</sup> sixti men and on

Ne wente þer away liues non.

All sixty  
assailants are  
slain.

ON þe morwen, hwan<sup>3</sup> it was day,

1920

At morn, there  
they lay like  
dogs.

Ilc on other wirwed lay,

Als it were dogges þat weren hinged,

And summe leye in dikes slenget, *slain*

And summe in gripes bi þe her *lives*

1924

Drawen ware, and laten ther.

Sket cam tiding intil ubbe, *sumbody*

þat haue lok hauede with a clubbe

Of hise slawen sixti and on

1928

Sergaunz, þe beste þat mithen gon.

“Deus !” quoth ubbe, “hwat may þis be !

Betere his i nime<sup>4</sup> miself and se,

Ubbe comes to  
see what is the  
matter.

þat þis baret on hwat is wold, *contest*

1932

þanne i sende yunge or old.

For yif i sende him un-to,

I wene men sholde him shame do,

And þat ne wolde ich for no þing :

1936

<sup>1</sup> Qu. here. MS. he.

<sup>2</sup> MS. “pe,” clearly miswritten for “po” or “wo.” See ll. 2047, 296, 300, &c.

<sup>3</sup> MS. “hhan,” miswritten for “hpan,” from which it differs very slightly.

<sup>4</sup> MS. inime.

- I loue him wel, bi heuene king!  
 Me wore leuere i wore lame,  
 þanne men dide him ani shame,  
 [Fol. 213 b, col. 2.] Or tok, or onne handes leyde, 1940  
 Vn-ornelike,<sup>1</sup> or same seyde." *ba. col.*  
 He lep up on a stede lith,  
 And with him mani a noble knith,  
 And ferde forth un-to þe tun, 1944  
 And dide calle *bernard* brun  
 Vt of his hus, wan he þer cam ;  
 And *bernard* sone ageyn [him] nam,  
 Al to-tused and al to-torn, 1948  
 Ner also naked so he was born,  
 And al to-brised, bac and þe :  
 Ubbe asks who Quoth ubbe, "*bernard*, hwat is þe ?  
 has beaten him about so ? I Iwo haues þe þus ille maked, 1952  
 þus to-riuen, and al mad naked ?"
- "**L**ouerd,<sup>2</sup> merci," quot he sone,  
 "To-nicht also ros þe mone  
 Comen her mo þan sixti þeues, 1953  
 With lokene copes, and wide sleues,  
 Me forto robben, and to pine,  
 And for to drepe me and mine.  
 Mi dore he broken up ful sket, 1960  
 And wolde me binden hond and fet.  
 Wan þe godemen þat sawe,  
 Havelok, and he þat bi þe wowe *well*  
 Leye, he stirten up sone on-on, 1964  
 And summe grop tre, and sum grop ston,  
 And driue hem ut, þei he weren crus, *crus*  
 So dogges ut of milne-hous.  
 Havelok grop þe dore-tre, 1968  
 And [at] a dint he slow hem thre. *thre*

He calls for  
Bernard Brown.

Ubbe asks who  
has beaten him  
about so ?

"Sixty thieves  
attacked me last  
night.

Havelok and his  
friends drove  
them off.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Vn ornelfke ; but f should certainly be i.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Iouerd.



- He is þe beste man at nede,  
 þat euere mar shal ride stede !  
 Als helpe god, bi mine wone, 1972  
 A þhousend of men his he worth one !  
 Yif he ne were, ich were nou ded,  
 So haue ich don Mi soule red ;  
 But it is hof him mikel sinne ; 1976  
 He maden him swilke woundes þrinne,  
 þat of þe alþer-leste wounde  
 Were a stede brouht to grunde.  
 He haues a wunde in the side, 1980  
 With a gleyue, ful un-ride,  
 And he haues on þoru his arum,  
 þer-of is ful mikel harum,  
 And he haues on þoru his þhe, 1984 [Fol. 214, col. 1]  
 þe vn-rideste þat men may se,  
 And oþe[r] wundes haues he stronge,  
 Mo than twenti swiþe longe.  
 But sipen he hauede lauth þe sor 1988  
 Of þe wundes, was neuere bor  
 þat so fauth so he fauth þanne ;  
 Was non þat hauede þe hern-panne *sture*  
 So hard, þat he ne dede alto-cruhsse, 1992  
 And alto-shiuere, and alto-frusshe. *look to þe*  
 He folwede hem so hund dōs hare,  
 Dapeyt on he wolde spare,  
 þat [he] ne made hem euerilk on 1996  
 Ligge stille so doth þe ston :  
 And þer nis he nouth to frie, *thou*  
 For oþer sholde he make hem lye  
 Ded, or þei him hauede slawen, 2000  
 Or alto-hewen, or al-to-drawen. *long ok to draw*
- Louerd, haui no more plith  
 Of þat ich was þus greþed to-nith. *haued*  
 þus wolde þe theues me haue reft, 2004

He is worth a  
 thousand men.

He has some bad  
 wounds, more  
 than twenty.

He followed them  
 like a dog does a  
 hare.

But I fear  
Havelok is all  
but dead."

But god-þank, he hauenet sure keft.

*bitterly pained*

But it is of him mikel scape :

I woth þat he bes ded ful rape."

Quoth ubbe, "bernard, seyst þou soth?"

2008

"Ya, sire, that i ne <sup>1</sup> lepe oth.

*escape from (?)*

Yif y, louerd, a word leye,

To-morwen do me hengen heye."

The rest confirm  
Bernard's story.

þe burgeys þat þer-bi stode þore,

2012

Grundlike and grete opes swore,

*deeply*

Litle and mikle, yunge and holde,

þat was soth, þat bernard tolde.

Soth was, þat he wolden him bynde,

2016

And trusse al þat he mitheþ fynde

Of hise, in arke or in kiste,

þat he mouthe in seekes þriste.

*search*

"The thieves  
wanted to steal  
all he had.

"Louerd, he haueden al away born

2020

His þing, and him-self alto-torn,

But als god self barw him wel,

þat he ne tinte no catel.

*lost*

Hwo mithe so mani stonde ageyn,

2024

Bi nither-tale, knith or swein?

*right-trace*

He weren bi tale sixti and ten,

Starke laddes, stalworþi men,

They were led on  
by one G[r]iffin  
Gall."

And on, þe mayster of hem alle,

2028

þat was þe name giffin <sup>2</sup> galle.

[Fol. 214, col. 2.]

Hwo mouthe agey[n] <sup>3</sup> so mani stonde,

But als þis man of ferne londe

Haueth hem slawen with a tre?

2032

Mikel ioie haue he !

God yeue him mikel god to welde,

Boþe in tun, and ek in felde !

We[l] <sup>4</sup> is set he etes mete."

2036

Ubbe sends for  
Havelok,

Quoth ubbe, "doth him swiþe fete,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ine.

<sup>2</sup> Qu. griffin.

<sup>3</sup> MS. agey.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. ll. 772, 907.

þat y mouthe his wundes se,  
 Yf that he mouthen heled <sup>1</sup> be.  
 For yf he mouthe couere yet, 2040  
 And gangen wel up-on hise fet,  
 Mi-self shal dubbe him to knith, to dub him  
 For-þi þat he is so with. knight.

And yif he liuede, þo foule theues, 2044  
 þat weren of kaym kin and eues,  
 He sholden hange bi þe necke ;  
 Of here ded dapeit wo reeke,  
 Hwan he yeden þus on nithes 2048  
 To binde boþe burgmen and knithes.  
 For bynderes loue ich neuere mo,  
 Of hem ne yeue ich nouht a slo."

H auelok was bifore ubbe browth, 2052 Havelok is  
 þat hauede for him ful mikel þouth, brought before  
 And mikel sorwe in his herte Ubbe.  
 For hise wundes, þat we[r] so smerte.

B ut hwan his wundes weren shewed, 2056  
 And a leche hauede knawed, A leech says he  
 þat he hem mouthe ful wel hele, can be healed.  
 Wel make him gange, and ful wel mele,  
 And wel a palefrey bistride, 2060  
 And wel up-on a stede ride,  
 þo let ubbe al his care

And al his sorwe ouer-fare ;  
 And seyde, " cum now forth with me, 2064 Ubbe invites him  
 And goldeboru, þi wif, with þe, and Goldborough  
 to his own castle.

And þine seriaunz al þre,  
 For nou wile y youre warant be ;  
 Wile y non of here frend 2068  
 þat þu slowe with þin hend  
 Mouete wayte þe [to] slo,

<sup>1</sup> MS. holed. See l. 2058.

Also þou gange to and fro.

I shal lene þe a bowr, 2072

þat is up in þe heye tour,

Til þou mowe ful wel go,

[Fol. 214b, col. 1.] And wel ben hol of al þi wo.

It ne shal no þing ben bitwene 2076

þi bour and min, also y wene,

But a fayr firrene wowe ;— *for I wene*

Speke y loude, or spek y lowe,

þou shalt <sup>1</sup> ful wel heren me, 2080

And þan þu wilt, þou shalt me se.

He promises to  
protect  
Goldborough.

A rof shal hile us boþe o-nith, *to us*

þat none of mine, clerk ne knith,

Ne sholen þi wif no shame bede, 2084

No more þan min, so god me rede ! ”

**H**E dide un-to þe borw bringe

Sone anon, al with ioynge,

His wif, and his serganz þre, 2088

þe beste men þat mouthe be.

The first night,  
about midnight,

þe firste nith he lay þer-inne,

Hise wif, and his serganz þrinne,

Aboute þe middel of þe nith 2092

Ubbe wakes and  
sees a great light.

Wok ubbe, and saw a mikel lith

In þe bour þat hauelok lay,

Also brith so it were day.

Ubbe says he  
must go and see  
what it means.

“ Deus ! ” quoth ubbe, “ hwat may þis be ? 2096

Betere is i go miself, and se :

Hweþer he sitten nou, and wesseylen,

Or of ani shotshipe to-deyle, *seemly wende*

þis tid nithes, also foles ; *to be* 2100

þan birþe men casten hem in poles, *he leane, poles*

Or in a grip, or in þe fen : *water*

<sup>1</sup> MS. sahalt; and the second a is expuncted by mistake, instead of the first.

Nou ne sitten none but wicke men,  
 Glotuns, reu[e]res, or wicke þeues, 2104  
 Bi crist, þat alle folk onne leues !” *hallo*

He stod, and totede in at a bord, *peep*  
 Her he spak anilepi word, He peeps in, and  
 sees them all  
 asleep.

And saw hem slepen faste ilkon, 2108

And lye stille so þe ston ;

And saw al þat mikel lith

Fro havelok cam, þat was so brith.

Of his mouth it com il del,

2112 The light issues  
 from Havelok's  
 mouth.

þat was he war ful swiþe wel.

“Deus !” quoth he, “hwat may þis mene !”

He calde boþe arwe men and kene, *seene*

Knithes, and serganz swiþe sleie, 2116

Mo þan an hundred, with-uten leye,

And bad hem alle comen and se,

Hwat þat selcuth mithe be.

Als þe knithes were comen alle, 2120 [Fol. 214 b, col. 2.]  
 þer havelok lay, ut of þe halle,

So stod ut of his mouth a glem,

Rith al swilk so þe sunne-bem ;

þat al so lith wa[s] þare, bi heuene !

2124 The light is like  
 that of 107  
 candles.

So þer brenden serges seuene,

And an hundred serges ok :

þat durste hi sweren on a bok.

He slepen faste alle fue,

2128

So he weren brouth of liue ;

And havelok lay on his lift side,

In his armes his brithre bride.

Havelok and  
 Goldborough are  
 fast asleep.

Bi þe pappes he leyen naked :

2132

So faire two weren neuere maked

In a bed to lyen samen :—

þe knithes þouth of hem god gamen,

Hem forto shewe, and loken to.

2136



They see a bright  
cross on his back,  
denoting king-  
ship.

Rith also he stoden alle so,  
And his bac was toward hem wend,  
So weren he war of a croiz ful gent, *neat*  
On his rith shuldre sw[iþ]e <sup>1</sup> brith, 2140  
Brithter þan gold ageyn þe lith.

It was light  
enough to choose  
a penny by.

So þat he wiste heye and lowe,  
þat it was kunrik þat he sawe. 2144  
It sparkede, and ful brith shon,  
So doth þe gode charbucle ston,  
þat men Mouthe se by þe lith,  
A peni chesen, so was it brith.

They know he is  
Birkabeyn's son  
and heir.

þanne bihelden he him faste, 2148  
So þat he knewen at þe laste,

þat he was birkabeynes sone,  
þat was here king, þat was hem wone 2152  
Wel to yeme, and wel were

Ageynes uten-laddes here. *longer*  
“For it was neuere yet a broþer  
In al denemark so lich anoþer,  
So þis man þat is so fayr 2156  
Als birkabeyn, he is hise eyr.”

They weep  
for joy.

**H**e fellen sone at hise fet,  
Was non of hem þat he ne gret,  
Of ioie he weren alle so fawen, *alight* 2160  
So he him haueden of erþe drawen.

Hise fet he kisten an hundred syþes,  
þe tos, þe nayles, and þe lithes, *and he*  
So þat he bigan to wakne, <sup>2</sup> 2164

[Fol. 215, col. 1.]

And wit hem ful sore to blakne, *and he*  
For he wende he wolden him slo,

Havelok wakes.

Or elles binde him, and do wo.

**Q**uoth ubbe, “louerd, ne dred þe nowth, 2168  
Me pinkes that I se þi þouth.

<sup>1</sup> MS. swe, *for* swiþe. Cf. l. 1252.

<sup>2</sup> Here follows the catchword—“And wit hem.”

Dere sone, wel is me,

þat y þe with cyn[e]<sup>1</sup> se.

Man-red, louerd, bede y þe, *homage* 2172

þi man auht i ful wel to be,

For þu art comen of birkabeyn,

þat hauede mani knith and sweyn ;

And so shalt þou, louerd, haue, 2176

þou þu be yet a ful yung knaue.

þou shalt be king of al denemark,

Was þer-inne neuere non so stark.

and says he shall  
be king of  
Denmark.

To-morwen shaltu manrede take 2180

Of þe brune and of þe blake ;

Of alle þat aren in þis tun,

Boþe of erl, and of barun,

And of dreng, and of thayn, 2184

And of knith, and of sweyn.

And so shaltu ben mad knith

Wit blisse, for þou art so with."

**Þ**o was havelok swiþe bliþe, 2188  
And þankede God ful fele siþe. Havelok is blithe,  
and thanks God.

On þe morwen, wan it was lith,

And gon was pisternesse of þe nith, *last*

Vbbe dide up-on a stede 2192

A ladde lepe, and þider bede

Erles, barouns, dreges, theynes,

Klerkes, knithes, bu[r]geys,<sup>2</sup> sweynes,

Ubbe summons  
all his lords.

þat he sholden comen a-non, 2196

Biforen him sone euerilkon,

Also he louen here liues,

And here children, and here wiues.

**H**ise bode ne durste he non at-sitte, 2200  
þat he ne neme<sup>3</sup> for to wite All come to  
receive his  
orders.

<sup>1</sup> We find *cyn*e in ll. 680, 1273, &c.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *bugeyf*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *meme* ; *miswritten for neme* ; see ll. 1207, 1931.

- Sone, hwat wolde þe iustise :  
 And [he] bigan anon to rise,  
 And seyde sone, "liþes me, 2204  
 Alle samen, þeu and fre.  
 A þing ich wile you here shauwe,  
 þat ye <sup>1</sup> alle ful wel knawe.  
 Ye witen wel, þat al þis lond 2208  
 Was in birkabeynes hond,  
 [Fol. 215, col. 2.] þe day þat he was quic and ded ;  
 And how þat he, bi youre red,  
 who commended 2212  
 his children to  
 Godard ; Bitauhte hise children þre  
 Godard to yeme, and al his fe.  
 Hauelok his sone he him tauhte,  
 And hise two douhtres, and al his auhte,  
 2216  
 Alle herden ye him swere  
 On bok, and on messe-gere,  
 þat he shulde yeme hem wel,  
 With-uten lac, with-uten tel.  
 and how Godard 2220  
 slew the two  
 girls, **H**e let his oth al ouer-go,  
 Euere wurþe him yuel and wo !  
 For <sup>2</sup> þe maydnes here lif  
 Refte he boþen, with a knif,  
 2224  
 And him shulde ok haue slawen,  
 þe knif was at his herte drawen,  
 but had pity on 2228  
 the boy ; But god him wolde wel haue saue,  
 He hauede reunesse of þe knaue,  
 So þat he with his hend  
 2232  
 Ne drop him nouth, þat sor[i] fend,  
 But sone dide he a fishere  
 Swiþe grete oþes swere,  
 þat he sholde drenchen him  
 2236  
 In þe se, þat was ful brim. *may day*  
 But Grim fled 2240  
 with him to  
 England. **H**wan grim saw þat he was so fayr,  
 And wiste he was þe Rith eir,

<sup>1</sup> MS. he.<sup>2</sup> Qu. Fro.

Fro denemark ful sone he fledde 2236  
 In-til englond, and þer him fedde  
 Mani winter, þat til þis day  
 Haues he ben fed and fostred ay.  
 Lokes, hware he stondes her : 2240 Then Ubbe shows  
 In al þis werd ne haues he per ; Havelok to them  
 Non so fayr, ne non so long, all,  
 Ne non so mikel, ne non so strong.  
 In þis middelerd nis no knith 2244  
 Half so strong, ne half so with.  
 Bes of him ful glad and bliþe,  
 And cometh alle hider swiþe,  
 Manrede youre louerd forto make, 2248 and bids them  
 Boþe brune and þe blake. swear fealty  
 I shal mi-self do first þe gamen, to him.  
 And ye siþen alle samen."

O knes ful fayre he him sette, 2252 Ubbe swears  
 Mouthe noþing him þer-fro lette, fealty first.  
 And bi-cam is man Rith þare,  
 þat alle sawen þat þere ware. [Fol. 215 b, col. 1.]

A fter him stirt up laddes ten, 2256 All the rest do  
 And bi-comen hise men ; <sup>1</sup> the same,  
 And siþen euerilk a baroun,  
 þat euere weren in al that toun ;  
 And siþen drenges, and siþen thaynes, 2260  
 And siþen knithes, and siþen sweynes ;  
 So þat, or þat day was gon,  
 In al þe tun ne was nouth on  
 þat it ne was his man bicomen : 2264  
 Manrede of alle hauede he nomen.

H wan he hauede of hem alle Havelok makes  
 Manrede taken, in the halle, them swear to be

<sup>1</sup> A word is added in the MS. after *men*, apparently *beye*. Perhaps we should read: *hise heye men*.

faithful to him  
always.

Grundlike dide he hem swere, 2268

þat he sholden him god feyth bere

Ageynes alle þat weren on liue ;

þer-yen ne wolde neuer on striue,

þat he ne maden sone þat oth, 2272

Riche and poure, lef and loth.

Hwan þat was maked, sone he sende,

Ubbe sends for  
all the sheriffs  
and constables.

Vbbe, writes fer and hende,

After alle þat castel ymede, 2276

Burwes, tunces, sibbe an fremde, *releasid + clene*

þat þider sholden comen swiþe

Til him, and heren tiþandes bliþe,

þat he hem alle shulde telle : 2280

Of hem ne wolde neuere on dwelle,

þat he ne come sone plattinde, *maye, hounde*

Hwo hors ne hauede, com gangande.

So þat with-inne a fourtenith, 2284

In al denemark ne was no knith,

Ne conestable, ne shireue,

þat com of adam and of eue,

They all come.

þat he ne com biforn sire ubbe : 2288

He dredden him so þhes <sup>1</sup> doth clubbe.

**H**wan he haueden alle þe king gret,

And he weren alle dun set,

Ubbe shows  
Havelok to them  
all.

þo seyde ubbe, "lokes here, 2292

Vre louerd swiþe dere,

þat shal ben king of al þe lond,

And haue us alle under hond.

For he is birkabeynes sone, 2296

þe king þat was vmbe stonde wone *thoumely*

For to yeme, and wel were,

Wit sharp[e] <sup>2</sup> swerd, and longe spere.

<sup>1</sup> *Qu.* þes, *i. e.* thighs; or the spelling þhes may be intentional; see l. 1984. But Sir F. Madden suggests þeues.

<sup>2</sup> See l. 2645 for the final *e*.



Lokes nou, hw he is fayr ; 2300 [Fol. 215 b, col. 2.]  
 Sikerlike he is hise eyr.  
 Falles alle to hise fet,  
 Bicomēs hise men ful sket."  
 He weren for ubbe swiþe adrad, 2304 All swear to obey  
 And dide sone al þat he bad, Havelok,  
 And yet deden he sumdel more,  
 O bok ful grundlike he swore,  
 þat he sholde with him halde 2308  
 Boþe ageynes stille and bolde,  
 þat euere wo[l]de his bodi dere :  
 þat dide [he] hem o boke swere.

Hwan he hauede manrede and oth 2312  
 Taken of lef and of loth,  
 Vbbe dubbede him to knith, Ubbe dubs  
 With a swerd ful swiþe brith, Havelok a  
 And þe folk of al þe lond 2316 knight,  
 Bitauhte him al in his hond,  
 þe cunniche eueril del,  
 And made him king heylike and wel. and makes him  
 Hwan he was king, þer mouthe men se 2320 king.  
 þe moste ioie þat mouhte be :  
 Buttinge with sharpe speres, Great joy and  
 Skirming with taleuaces, þat men beres, many sports.  
 Wrastling with laddes, putting of ston, 2324  
 Harping and piping, ful god won,  
 Leyk of mine, of hasard ok,  
 Romanz reding on þe bok ;  
 þer mouthe men here þe gestes singe, 2328  
 þe gleymen on þe tabour dinge ;  
 þer mouhte men se þe boles beyte,  
 And þe bores, with hundes teyte ; There is baiting  
 þo mouthe men se eueril gleu, 2332 of bulls and  
 þer mouthe men se hw grim greu ; boars,  
 Was neuere yete ioie more

In al þis werð, þan þo was þore.  
 þer was so mikel<sup>1</sup> yeft of cloþes, 2336  
 þat þou i swore you grete othes,  
 I ne wore nouth þer-offe croud :  
 þat may i ful wel swere, bi god !  
 and plenty of þere was swiþe gode metes, 2340  
 meat and wine.  
 And of wyn, þat men fer fetes,  
 Rith al so mik and gret plente,  
 So it were water of þe se.  
 þe feste fourti dawes sat, 2344  
 [Fol. 216, col. 1.] So riche was neuere non so þat.  
 The king makes þe king made Roberd þere knith,  
 Robert, William, and Hugh all þat was ful strong, and ful with,  
 barons, And willam, wendut het, his þroþer, 2348  
 And huwe rauen, þat was þat oper,  
 And made hem barouns alle þre,  
 And yaf hem lond, and oper fe,  
 So mikel, þat ilker twent[i] knihtes 2352  
 Hauede of genge, dayes and nithes, *returne*

A thousand Hwan þat feste was al don,  
 knights A thusand knihtes ful wel o bon  
 accompany the With-held þe king, with him to lede ; 2356  
 king, þat ilkan hauede ful god stede,  
 Helm, and sheld, and brinie brith,  
 And al þe wepne þat fel to knith.  
 and five thousand With hem fwe thusand gode 2360  
 sergeants, Sergaunz, þat weren to fyht wode,  
 With-held he al of his genge :  
 Wile I na more þe storie lenge.  
 Yet hwan he hauede of al þe lond 2364  
 þe casteles alle in his hond,  
 And conestables don þer-inne,  
 He swears to be He swor, he ne sholde neuer bliþne, *peace*

<sup>1</sup> See l. 2342.

- Til þat he were of godard wreken,  
 þat ich haue of ofte speken.  
 Hal hundred knithes dede he calle,  
 And hise fif thousand sergaunz alle,  
 And dide sweren on the bok  
 2368 avenged of  
 Godard,  
 Sone, and on þe auter ok,  
 þat he ne sholde neuere blinne,  
 Ne for loue, ne for sinne,  
 Til þat he haueden godard funde,  
 2372  
 And brouth biforn him faste bunde. 2376 and to find and  
 bind him.

- þanne he haueden swor þis oth,  
 Ne leten he nouth for lef ne loth,  
 þat he ne foren swiþe rathe,  
 2380  
 þer he was unto þe paþe,  
 þer he yet on hunting for,  
 With mikel genge, and swiþe stor. *story*  
 Robert, þat was of al þe ferl *story*  
 2384  
 Mayster, was girt wit a sward,  
 And sat up-on a ful god stede,  
 þat vnder him Rith wolde weþe ; *911*  
 He was þe firste þat with godard  
 2388 Robert accosts  
 Spak, and seyde, "hede <sup>1</sup> cauenard !  
 Godard,  
 Wat dos þu here at þis paþe ?  
 [Fol. 216, col. 2.]  
 Cum to þe king, swiþe and raþe.  
 2392 and tells him to  
 þat sendes he þe word, and bedes,  
 come to the king,  
 þat þu þenke hwat þu him dedes,  
 Hwan þu refstes with a knif  
 Hise sistres here lif,  
 An siþen bede þu in þe se  
 2396  
 Drenchen him, þat herde he.  
 He is to þe swiþe grim :  
 Cum nu swiþe un-to him,  
 þat king is of þis kuneriche.  
 2400  
 þu fule man ! þu wicke swike !

<sup>1</sup> *Qu.* helde, *i. e.* old. Unless it means "heed!"

who will repay  
him.

And he shal yelde þe þi mede,  
Bi crist þat wolde on rode blede !”

Godard and  
Robert strike  
each other.

Hwan godard herde þat þer þrette, 2404  
With þe neue he robert sette *for*  
Biforn þe teth a dint ful strong.  
And robert kipt ut a knif long,  
And smot him þoru þe rith arum : 2408  
þer-of was ful litel harum.

Godard's men  
flee,

Hwan his folk þat sau and herde,  
Hwou robert with here louerd ferde,  
He haueden him wel ner browt of liue, 2412  
Ne weren his two breþren and oþre fwe  
Slown of here laddes ten,  
Of godardes alþer-beste men.

but Godard  
rallies them.

Hwan þe oþre sawen þat, he fledden, 2416  
And godard swiþe loude gredde :  
“ Mine knithes, hwat do ye ?  
Sule ye þus-gate fro me fle ?  
Ich haue you fed, and yet shal fede, 2420  
Helpe me nu in þis nede,  
And late ye nouth mi bodi spille,  
Ne haelok don of me hise wille.  
Yif ye id <sup>1</sup> do, ye do you shame, 2424  
And bringeth you-self in mikel blame.”  
Hwan he þat herden, he wenten ageyn,  
And slown a knit and <sup>2</sup> a sweyn  
Of þe kinges oune men, 2428  
And woundeden abuten ten.

The king's men  
kill all Godard's  
men.

The kinges men hwan he þat sawe,  
T Scuten on hem, heye and lowe,  
And euerilk fot of hem slowe, 2432  
But godard one, þat he flowe,

<sup>1</sup> Qu. it.

<sup>2</sup> MS. and and.

- So þe þef men dos henge,  
 Or hund men shole in dike slenge. [Fol. 216 b, col. 1.]  
 He bunden him ful swiþe faste, 2436  
 Hwil þe bondes wolden laste,  
 þat he rorede als a bole,  
 þat he wore parred in an hole,  
 With dogges forto bite and beite : 2440  
 Were þe bondes nouth to leite.  
 He bounden him so <sup>1</sup> fele sore, They bind  
 þat he gan crien godes ore, Godard,  
 þat he sholde of his hend plette, *stude* 2444  
 Wolden he nouht þer-fore lette, *case*  
 þat he ne bounden hond and fet :  
 Dapeit þat on þat þer-fore let !  
 But dunten him so man doth bere, *beat* 2448  
 And keste him on a scabbed mere,  
 Hise nese went un-to þe crice :  
 So ledden he þat fule swike,  
 Til he was biforn hauelok brouth, 2452  
 þat he haue[de] ful wo wrowht,  
 Boþe with hungre <sup>2</sup> and with cold,  
 Or he were twel winter old,  
 And with mani heui swink, 2456  
 With poure mete, and feble drink,  
 And [with] swiþe wikke cloþes,  
 For al hise manie grete othes.  
 Nu beyes he his holde blame : *alone* 2460  
 ‘Old sinne makes newe shame :’  
 Wan he was [brouth] so shamelike  
 Biforn <sup>3</sup> þe king, þe fule swike,  
 þe king dede ubbe swiþe calle 2464  
 Hise erles, and hise barouns alle,  
 Dreng and thein, burgeis and knith,

They bind  
Godard,

and cast him on  
an old mare, to  
take him to  
Havelok.

“Old sin makes  
new shame.”

The king  
summons Ubbe  
and the rest.

<sup>1</sup> MS. fo.

<sup>2</sup> MS. hungred.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Brouht biforn; but the word brouht clearly belongs to the preceding line, in which, however, it is omitted.



And bad he sholden demen him rith :  
 For he kneu, þe swike dam, *Lord* 2468  
 Euerildel god was him gram. *grief*

He setten hem dun bi þe wawe,  
 Riche and pouere, heye and lowe,  
 þe helde men, and ek þe grom, *young men* 2472  
 And made þer þe rithe dom, *judgment*  
 And seyden unto þe king anon,

þat stille sat [al] so þe ston :  
 " We deme, þat he be al quic slawen,<sup>1</sup> *drawn* 2476  
 And siþen to þe galwes drawe[n],

At þis foule mere tayl ;  
 þoru is fet a ful strong nayl ;  
 [Fol. 216 b, col. 2.] And þore ben henged wit two feteres, 2480

And þare be writen þise leteres :  
 ' þis is þe swike þat wende wel,  
 þe king haue reft þe lond il del,  
 And hise sistres with a knif 2484  
 Boþe refte here lif.'  
 þis writ shal henge bi him þare ;  
 þe dom is demd, seye we na more."

Godard is  
 shriven.

**H**wan þe dom was demd and giue, 2488  
 And he was wit þe prestes shriue,

And it ne mouhte ben non oþer,  
 Ne for fader, ne for broþer,  
 þat he sholde þarne lif ; *he drew out* 2492

A lad slays him.

Sket cam a ladde with a knif,  
 And bigan Rith at þe to  
 For to ritte, and for to flo, *fight*  
 And he bigan for to rore, 2496

He roars.

So it were grim or gore,  
 þat men mithe þeþen a mile  
 Here him rore, þat fule file.  
 þe ladde ne let no with for-pi, 2500

<sup>1</sup> We should perhaps read *slawen*, as required by the sense. See ll. 2495, 2502.

þey he criede 'merci ! merci !'  
 þat [he] ne flow [him] eueril del  
 With knif mad of grunden stel.

þei garte bringe þe mere sone,  
 Skabbed <sup>1</sup> and ful iuele o bone,  
 And bunden him rith at hire tayl  
 With a rop of an old seyl,  
 And drowen him un-to þe galwes,  
 Nouth bi þe gate, But ouer þe falwes ;  
 And henge [him] þore Bi þe hals :  
 Dapeit hwo recke ! he was fals.

2504 He is bound on  
 an old mare,

2508 drawn over  
 rough ground,  
  
 and hung.

þanne he was ded, þat sathanas,  
 Sket was seysed al þat his was  
 In þe kinges hand il del,  
 Lond and lith, and oper catel,  
 And þe king ful sone it yaf  
 Vbbe in þe hond, wit a fayr staf,  
 And seyde, "her ich sayse þe  
 In al þe lond, in al þe fe."

2512

þo swor havelok he sholde make,  
 Al for grim, of monekes blake  
 A priorie to seruen inne ay

2516 Havelok makes  
 Ubbe his steward.

Ihesu crist, til domesday,  
 For þe god he haueden him don,  
 Hwil he was pouere and iuel <sup>2</sup> o bon.

2524

[Fol. 217, col. 1.]

And þer-of held he wel his oth,  
 For he it made, god it woth !

In þe tun þer grin was grauen,  
 þat of grim yet haues þe name.  
 Of grim bidde ich na more spelle.<sup>3</sup>—  
 But wan godrich herde telle,

2528 in the town of  
 Grimsby.

Godrich, earl  
 of Cornwall,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Skabbeth.

<sup>2</sup> The MS. has "we," which the scribe several times writes instead of "wel." But "wel" is a manifest blunder, since "iuel" is meant. Cf. l. 2505.

<sup>3</sup> The author has here omitted to tell us that Havelok, at the desire of his wife, invades England. See the note.

- Of cornwayle þat was erl, 2532  
 (þat fule traytour, that mixed cherl!) *note*  
 þat hauelok was king of denemark,  
 And ferde with him strong and stark,  
 Comen engelond with-inne, 2536  
 Engelond al for to winne,  
 And þat she, þat was so fayr,  
 þat was of engelond rith eir,  
 þat was comen up at grimesbi, 2540  
 He was ful sorful and sori,  
 And seyde, "Hwat shal me to rape?  
 Goddoth! i shal do slou hem baþe.  
 I shal don hengen hem ful heyde, 2544  
 So mote ich brouke mi Rith eie!  
 But yif he of mi lond[e] <sup>1</sup> fle;  
 Hwat? wenden he to desherite me?"  
 He dide sone ferd ut bidde, *order* 2548  
 þat al þat euere mouhte o stede  
 Ride, or helm on heued bere,  
 Brini on bac, and sheld, and spere,  
 Or ani oþer wepne bere, 2552  
 Hand-ax, syþe, gisarm, or spere, *full*  
 Or aunlaz,<sup>2</sup> and god long knif, *to go*  
 þat als he louede leme or lif,  
 þat þey sholden comen him to, 2556  
 With ful god wepne ye ber so,  
 To lincolne, þer he lay,  
 Of marz þe seuentenþe day,  
 So þat he coupe hem god þank; 2560  
 And yif þat ani were so rang, *intention*  
 That he þanne ne come anon,  
 He swor bi crist, and [bi]<sup>3</sup> seint Iohan,

hears that  
Havelok has  
invaded England.

He says he will  
slay Havelok and  
his wife.

He raises a great  
army.

The army is to  
meet at Lincoln  
on the 17th of  
March.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. l. 2599.

<sup>2</sup> Printed "alinlaz" in the former edition. The first stroke of the *u* is longer than the second, and the tail of the *x* in the line above converts the second downstroke of the *u* into an apparent *i*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. l. 1112.

That he sholde maken him þral, 2564  
And al his of-spring forth with-al.

þe englishe þat herde þat,  
Was non þat euere his bode sat,  
For he him dredde swiþe sore, 2568

So Runci spore, and mikle more. *have an eye*  
At þe day he come sone [Fol. 217, col. 2.]

þat he hem sette, ful wel o bone,  
To lincolne, with gode stedes, 2572  
And al þe wepne þat knith ledes. All come to  
that day.

Hwan he wore come, sket was þe erl yare,<sup>1</sup>  
Ageynes denshe men to fare,  
And seyde, "lyþes me <sup>2</sup> alle samen, 2576

Haue ich gadred you for no gamen,  
But ich wile seyen you forþi ;  
Lokes hware here at grimesbi,  
Hise uten-laddes here comen, 2580  
And haues nu þe priorie numen ;  
Al þat euere mithen he finde,  
He brenne kirkes, and prestes binde ;  
He strangleth monkes, and nunnes boþe : 2584  
Wat wile ye, frend, her-offe Rede ?  
Yif he regne þus-gate longe,  
He Moun us alle ouer-gange,  
He moun vs alle quic henge or slo, 2588  
Or þral maken, and do ful wo,  
Or elles reue us ure liues,  
And ure children, and ure wiues.

But dos nu als ich wile you lere, 2592  
Als ye wile be with me dere ;  
Nimes nu swiþe forth and raþe,  
And helpes me and yu-self baþe,  
And slos up-o[n] þe dogges swiþe : 2596  
For shal [i] neuere more be bliþe,

Godrich tells  
them what  
Havelok is doing  
at Grimsby.

He excites them  
to attack  
Havelok.

<sup>1</sup> Or þare ; but see l. 2954.      <sup>2</sup> MS. mi. Cf. l. 2204.

- Ne hoseled ben, ne of prest shriuen,  
 Til þat he ben of londe driuen.  
 Nime we swiþe, and do hem fle, 2600  
 And folwes alle faste me,
- He will lead them himself. For ich am he, of al þe ferd,  
 þat first shal slo with drawen swerd.  
 Daþeyt hwo ne stonde faste 2604  
 Bi me, hwil hise armes laste !”
- Earl Gunter and Earl Reyner of Chester support him. “Ye ! lef, ye !”<sup>1</sup> couth þe erl gunter ;  
 “Ya !” quoth þe erl of cestre, reynr.  
 And so dide alle þat þer stode, 2608  
 And stirte forth so he were wode.  
 þo mouthe men se þe brinies brihte  
 On backes keste, and late rithe, *past*  
 þe helmes heye on heued sette ; 2612  
 To armes al so swiþe plette, *hewied*  
 þat þei wore on a litel stunde
- [Fol. 217 b, col. 1.] Grethet, als men mithe telle a pund, *under pound*  
 And lopen on stedes sone anon, 2616
- They approach Grimsby. And toward grimesbi, ful god won,  
 He foren softe bi þe sti, *road*  
 Til he come ney at grimesbi.
- Havelok meets them boldly. Havelok, þat hauede spired wel *ingult* 2620  
 Of here fare, eueril del,  
 With al his ferd cam hem a-geyn,  
 For-bar he noþer knith ne sweyn.  
 þe firste knith þat he þer mette, 2624  
 With þe swerd so he him grette,  
 For his heued of he plette,  
 Wolde he nouth for sinne lette.  
 Roberd saw þat dint so hende, 2628  
 Wolde he neuere þepe[n] wende,  
 Til þat he hauede anoþer slawen,  
 With þe swerd he held ut-drawen.

<sup>1</sup> MS. has *þe, pe, or ye* in both places. But see l. 1888.



Willam wendut his swerd vt-drow,  
 And þe þredde so sore he slow,  
 þat he made up-on the feld  
 His lift arm fleye, with the swerd.<sup>1</sup>

2632 William disables  
 a third.

Huwe rauēn ne forgat nouth  
 þe swerd he hauede þider brouth,  
 He kipte it up, and smot ful sore  
 An erl, þat he saw priken þore,  
 Ful noblelike upon a stede,  
 þat with him wolde al quic wede. *þe 2632*

2636 Hugh Raven  
 seizes his sword,

He smot him on þe heued so,  
 þat he þe heued clef a-two,  
 And þat bi þe shu[l]dre-blade  
 þe sharpe swerd let [he] wade,  
 þorw the brest unto þe herte;  
 þe dint bigan ful sore to smerte,  
 þat þe erl fel dun a-non,

and cleaves an  
 earl's head  
 in two.

2640

2644

Al so ded so ani ston.

Quoth ubbe, "nu dwelle ich to longe,"

Ubbe attacks  
 Godrich.

And leth his stede sone gonge

To godrich, with a god spere,

2652

þat he saw a-noþer bere,

And smoth godrich, and *Godrich* him,

Hetelike with herte grim,

So þat he boþe felle dune,

2656 Both fall.

To þe erþe first þe croune.

þanne he worn fallen dun boþen,

Grundlike here swerdes ut-drownen,

þat weren swiþe sharp and gode,

2660 [Fol. 217 b, col. 2.]

And fouhten so þei wornen wode,

þat þe swot ran fro þe crune

They fight on  
 foot.

[To the fet rith þere adune.]<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. l. 1825. We should otherwise be tempted to read *sheld*; especially as the *shield* is more appropriate to the *left* arm.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. l. 1904.

	þer mouthe men se to knithes bete	2664
	Ayþer on oþer dintes grete,	
	So þat with alþer-lest[e] dint	
	Were al to-shiuered a flint.	
The fight lasts from morn to night.	So was bi-twenen hem a fiht,	2668
	Fro þe morwen ner to þe niht,	
	So þat þei nouth ne blinne,	
	Til þat to sette bigan þe sunne.	
Godrich wounds Ubbe sorely.	þo yaf godrich þorw þe side	2672
	Vbbe a wunde ful un-ride,	
	So þat þorw þat ilke wounde	
	Hauede ben brouth to þe grunde,	
	And his heued al of-slawnen,	2676
Hugh Raven rescues him.	Yif god ne were, and huwe rauen,	
	þat drow him fro godrich away,	
	And barw him so þat ilke day.	
	But er he were fro godrich drawen,	2680
A thousand knights slain.	þer were a þousind knihtes slawnen	
	Bi boþe halue, and mo y-nowe,	
	þer þe ferdes to-gidere slowe.	
	þer was swilk dreping of þe folk,	2684
The pools are full of blood.	þat on þe feld was neuere a polk	
	þat it ne stod of blod so ful,	
	þat þe strem ran intil þe hul.	
Godrich attacks the Dunes like lightning.	þo tarst <sup>1</sup> bigan godrich to go	2688
	Vp-on þe danshe, and faste to slo,	
	And forth rith also leuin fares,	
	þat neuere kines best ne spares,	
	þanne his [he] gon, for he garte alle	2692
	þe denshe men biforn him falle.	
	He felde browne, he felde blake,	
	þat he mouthe ouer-take.	
	Was neuere non þat mouhte þaue	2696
	Hise dintes, noyþer knith ne knaue,	
He mows them down like grass.	þat he felden so dos þe gres	

<sup>1</sup> So in MS. *Qu.* faste, as in next line.

Bi-forn þe syþe þat ful sharp is.

Hwan hauelok saw his folk so brittene, *destine* 2700

And his ferd so swiþe littene, *cut to pieces*

He cam driuende up-on a stede,

And bigan til him to grede,

And seyde, "godrich, wat is þe 2704

þat þou fare þus with me ?

And mine gode knihtes slos,

[Fol. 215, col. 1.]

Siker-like þou mis-gos. *Siker-like*

þou wost ful wel, yif þu wilt wite,

2708 Havelok reproves  
Godrich,

þat aþelwold þe dide site

On knes, and sweren on messe-bok,

On caliz, and on [pateyn] <sup>1</sup> hok

þat þou hise douhter sholdest yelde, 2712

þan she were winnan <sup>2</sup> of elde,

Engelond eueril del :

Godrich þe erl, þou wost it wel.

Do nu wel with-uten fiht,

2716 and bids him per-  
form his oaths.

Yeld hire þe lond, for þat is rith.

Wile ich forgiue þe þe lathe, *my lord*

Al mi dede and al mi wrathe,

For y se þu art so with,

2720

And of þi bodi so god knith."

"þat ne wile ich neuere mo,"

Godrich refuses.

Quoth erl godrich, "for ich shal slo

þe, and hire for-henge heye.

2724

I shal þrist ut þi rith eye

þat þou lokes with on me,

But þu swiþe heþen fle."

He grop þe swerd ut sone anon,

2728

And hew on hauelok, ful god won,

So þat he clef his sheld on two :

He cleaves  
Havelok's shield  
in two.

Hwan hauelok saw þat shame do

<sup>1</sup> MS. *here repeats messe, by mistake. Read pateyn. Cf. l. 187.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *wīman, i. e. winman or wimman; but we are sure, from l. 174, that winnan is meant.*

- His bodi þer bi-forn his ferd, 2732  
 He drow ut sone his gode swerd,  
 Havelok smites And smot him so up-on þe crune,  
 him down. þat godrich fel to þe erþe adune.  
 But godrich stirt up swiþe sket, 2736  
 Lay he nowth longe at hise fet,  
 Godrich rises, And smot him on þe sholdre so,  
 and wounds þat he dide þare undo  
 Havelok in the Of his brinie ringes mo, 2740  
 shoulder. þan þat ich kan tellen fro ;  
 And woundede him rith in þe flesh,  
 þat tendre was, and swiþe nesh,  
 So þat þe blod ran til his to : 2744  
 Havelok is þo was havelok swiþe wo,  
 enraged, þat he hauede of him drawen  
 Blod, and so sore him slawen.  
 Hertelike til him he wente, 2748  
 and cuts off his And godrich þer fulike shente ; *shamed*  
 foe's hand. For his swerd he hof up heyne,  
 [Fol. 218, col. 2.] And þe hand he dide of fleye,  
 þat he smot him with so sore : 2752  
 Hw mithe he don him shame more ?

- H**wan he hauede him so shamed,  
 His hand of plat, and yuele lamed,  
 He tok him sone bi þe necke 2756  
 Als a traytour, daþeyt wo recke !  
 And dide him binde and fetere wel  
 With gode feteres al of stel,  
 He has him And to þe quen he sende him, 2760  
 bound and þat birde wel to him ben grim ;  
 fettered, And Bad she sholde don him gete, *quene*  
 and sends him to the queen. And þat non ne sholde him bete,  
 Ne shame do, for he was knith, 2764  
 Til knithes haueden demd him Rith.  
 þan þe englishe men þat sawe,
- When the  
 English find out

- þat þei wisten, heye and lawe,  
 þat Goldeboru, þat was so fayr, 2768 that Goldborough  
 Was of engeland rith eyr, is the heiress,  
 And þat þe king hire hauede wedded,  
 And haueden ben samen bedded,  
 He comen alle to crie *merci*, 2772 they submit to  
 Vnto þe king, at one eri, Havelok.  
 And beden him sone manrede and oth,  
 þat he ne sholden, for lef ne loth,  
 Neuere more ageyn him go, 2776  
 Ne ride, for wel ne for wo.
- Þe king ne wolde nouth for-sake,  
 þat he ne shulde of hem take  
 Manrede þat he beden, and ok 2780  
 Hold oþes sweren on þe bok ;  
 But or bad he, þat þider were brouth  
 þe quen, for hem, swilk was his þouth,  
 For to se, and forto shawe, 2784 Havelok wishes  
 Yif þat he hire wolde knawe. to show Gold-  
 þoruth hem witen wolde he, borough to the  
 Yif þat she aucte quen to be. English.
- Sixe erles weren sone yare, 2788 Six earls fetch  
 After hire for to fare. her in,  
 He nomen on-on, and comen sone,  
 And brouthen hire, þat under mone  
 In al þe werd ne hauede per, 2792  
 Of hende-leik, fer ne ner.  
 Hwan she was come þider, alle  
 þe englishe men bi-guarne to falle  
 O knes, and greten swiþe sore, 2796 [Fol. 218 b, col. 1.]  
 And seyden, “leuedi, k[r]istles ore,  
 And youres ! we hauen misdo mikel,  
 þat we ayen you haue be fikel,  
 For englond auhte forto ben youres, 2800 The English ask  
 her pardon.



And we youre men and youres.  
 Is non of us, yung ne old,  
 þat we ne wot, þat aþelwold  
 Was king of þis kunerike, 2804  
 And ye his eyr, and þat þe swike  
 Haues it halden with mikel wronge :  
 God leue him sone to honge !”

They admit she  
 is heiress.

Quot<sup>1</sup> hanelok, “hwan þat ye it wite. 2808  
 Q Nu wile ich þat ye doun site,  
 And after godrich haues wrouht,  
 þat haues in sorwe him-self brouth,  
 Lokes þat ye demen him rith, 2812  
 For dom ne spared<sup>2</sup> clerk ne knith,  
 And sipen shal ich under-stonde  
 Of you, after lawe of londe,  
 Manrede, and holde oþes boþe, 2816  
 Yif ye it wilen, and ek rothe.” *advice*

Havelok says  
 they must pass  
 judgment on  
 Godrich.

They say he is to  
 be bound on an  
 ass's back,

Anon þer dune he hem sette,  
 For non þe dom ne durste lette,  
 And demden him to binden faste 2820  
 Vp-on an asse swiþe un-wraste, *forbe*  
 Andelong, nouht ouer-þwert,  
 His nose went unto þe stert ;

taken to Lincoln,

And so to lincolne lede, 2824  
 Shamelike in wicke wede,  
 And hwan he cam un-to þe borw,  
 Shamelike ben led þer-þoru,  
 Bisceþe þe borw, un-to a grene, 2828  
 þat þare is yet, als[o] y wene,

bound to a stake,  
 and burnt.

And þere be bunden til a stake,  
 Abouten him ful gret fir make,  
 And al to dust be brend Rith þere ; 2832  
 And yet demden he þer more,  
 Oþer swikes for to warne,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Quot. Cf. l. 1954.

<sup>2</sup> Qu. spares.

þat hise children sulde þarne *loose*  
 Euere more þat eritage, 2836  
 þat his was, for hise utrage.

**H**wan þe dom was demd and seyd,  
 Sket was þe swike on þe asse leyð, *Havelok*  
 And [led vn-]til <sup>1</sup> þat ilke grene, 2840  
 And brend til asken al bidene.  
 þo was Goldeboru ful blipe,  
 She þanked god fele syþe,  
 þat þe fule swike was brend, 2844  
 þat wende wel hire bodi haue shend,  
 And seyde, “nu is time to take  
 Manrede of brune and of blake,  
 þat ich se ride[n] and go : 2848  
 Nu ich am wreke[n] <sup>2</sup> of mi fo.”

So he is laid on  
the ass,  
and burnt.  
[Fol. 218 b, col. 2.]

Goldborough  
rejoices.

**H**auelok anon manrede tok  
 Of alle englishe, on þe bok,  
 And dide hem grete opes swere, 2852  
 þat he sholden him god feyth bere  
 Ageyn alle þat woren liues,  
 And þat sholde ben born of wiues.

Havelok makes  
the English  
swear fealty.

**Þ**anne he hauede <sup>3</sup> sikernesse 2856  
 Taken of more and of lesse,  
 Al at hise wille, so dide he calle  
 þe erl of cestre, and hise men alle,  
 þat was yung knith wit-uten wif, 2860  
 And seyde, “sire erl, bi mi lif,  
 And þou wile mi conseyl tro,  
 Ful wel shal ich with þe do,  
 For ich shal yeue þe to wiue 2864  
 þe fairest þing that is oliue.

He proposes that  
Earl Reynner  
of Chester

<sup>1</sup> MS. “And him til,” which is nonsense. See l. 2827.

<sup>2</sup> See l. 2992.

<sup>3</sup> MS. hauden.

shall marry  
Gumild, Grim's  
daughter ;

þat is gunnild of grimesby,  
Grimes douthter, bi seint dauy !  
þat me forth broute, and wel fedde, 2868  
And ut of denemark with me fledde,  
Me for to burwe fro mi ded : *As for me*

Sikerlike, þoru his red  
Haue ich liued in-to þis day, 2872  
Blissed worþe his soule ay !

I rede þat þu hire take,  
And spuse, and curteyse make,  
For she is fayr, and she is fre, 2876  
And al so hende so she may be.

and he will ther  
always be his  
friend.

þertekene she is wel with me,  
þat shal ich ful wel shewe þe,  
For ich giue þe a giue, 2880

þat euere more hwil ich liue,  
For hire shal-tu be with me dere,  
þat wile ich þat þis fole al here."  
þe erl ne wolde nouth ageyn 2884  
þe king[e] be, for knith ne sweyn,

[Fol. 219, col. 1.]

Ne of þe spusing seyen nay,  
But spusede [hire] þat ilke day.  
þat spusinge was god time maked, 2888

They are  
married,

For it ne were neuere clad ne naked,  
In a þede samened two  
þat cam to-gidere, liuede so,  
So þey dide[n] al here liue : 2892

and have five  
sons.

He geten samen sones fiue,  
þat were þe beste men at nede,  
þat mouthe riden on ani stede.  
Hwan gunnild was to cestre brouth, 2896

Havelok  
remembers  
Bertram, the  
earl's cook

Hauelok þe gode ne for-gat nouth  
Bertram, þat was the erles kok,  
þat he ne dide callen ok,  
And seyde, " frend, so god me rede ! 2900  
Nu shaltu haue riche mede,

- For wissing, and þi gode dede,  
 þat tu me dides in ful gret nede.  
 For þanne y yede in mi euuel, 2904  
 And ich ne haue[de] bred, ne sowel,  
 Ne y ne hauede no catel,  
 þou feddes and claddes me ful wel.  
 Haue nu for-þi of cornwayle 2908 and makes him  
 þe erldom ildel, with-uten fayle, Earl of  
 And al þe lond þat godrich held, Cornwall.  
 Boþe in towne, and ek in feld ;  
 And þerto wile ich, þat þu spuse, 2912  
 And fayre bring hire un-til huse,  
 Grimes douthter, leuiue þe hende, He is to marry  
 For þider shal she with þe wende. Leuiue, Grim's  
 Hire semes curteys forto be, 2916 daughter,  
 For she is fayr so flour on tre ;  
 þe heu is swilk in hire ler  
 So [is] þe rose in roser, who is as fair  
 Hwan it is fayr sprad ut newe 2920 as a rose.  
 Ageyn þe sunne, brith and lewe."  
 And girde him sone with þe swerd  
 Of þe erldom, bi-forn his ferd,  
 And with his hond he made him knith, 2924  
 And yaf him armes, for þat was rith,  
 And dide him þere sone wedde  
 Hire þat was ful swete in bedde. They are  
 married.

- A fter þat he spused wore, 2928  
 Wolde þe erl nouth dwelle þore,  
 But sone nam until his lond,  
 And seysed it al in his hond,  
 And liuede þer-inne, he and his wif, 2932  
 An hundred winter in god lif,<sup>1</sup> Havelok and  
 Goldborough  
 [Fol. 219, col. 2.]  
 lived 100 years,  
 and had many  
 children.

<sup>1</sup> Between this line and the next are inserted in the MS. the words: *For he saw þat he*, which have been subsequently struck out by the same hand, and the word *racat* affixed.

And gaten mani children samen,  
 And liueden ay in blisse and gamen.  
 Hwan þe maydens were spused boþe, 2936  
 Hauelok anon bigan ful rathe  
 His denshe men to feste wel  
 Wit riche landes and catel,  
 So þat he weren alle riche : 2940  
 For he was large and nouth chinche.

The Danes are  
 enriched.

**Þ**er-after sone, with his here,  
 For he to lundone, forto bere  
 Corune, so þat [alle] it sawe, 2944  
 Henglishe ant denshe, heye and lowe,  
 Hwou he it bar with mikel pride,  
 For his barnage þat was un-ride. *lean says, 1000000*

Havelok is  
 crowned at  
 London.

The feast lasts  
 40 days.

**Þ**e feste of his coruni[n]g<sup>1</sup> 2948  
 Laste[de] with gret ioying  
 Fourti dawes, and sumdel mo ;  
 þo bigunnen þe denshe to go  
 Vn-to þe king, to aske leue, 2952  
 And he ne wolde hem nouth greue,

The Danes  
 return home.

For he saw þat he woren yare  
 In-to denemark for to fare,  
 But gaf hem leue sone anon, 2956  
 And bitauhte hem seint Johan ;

Ubbe is to rule  
 Denmark.

And bad ubbe, his iustise,  
 þat he sholde on ilke wise  
 Denemark yeme and gete so, 2960  
 þat no pleynte come him to.

Havelok  
 remained in

**H**wan he wore parted alle samen,  
 Hauelok bi-lefte wit ioie and gamen

<sup>1</sup> MS. corunig.



- In engelond, and was þer-inne 2964 England for  
Sixti winter king with winne, sixty years.  
And Goldeboru quen, þat I wene :  
So mikel loue was hem bitwene,  
þat al þe werd spak of hem two : 2968  
He louede hire, and she him so,  
þat neyþer oþe[r] mithe be  
For <sup>1</sup> oþer, ne no ioie se,  
But yf he were to-gidere <sup>2</sup> boþe ; 2972  
Neuere yete ne weren he wroþe,  
For here loue was ay newe,  
Neuere yete wordes ne grewe [Fol. 219t, col. 1.]  
Bitwene hem, hwar-of ne lathe 2976  
Mithe rise, ne no wrathe.
- He geten children hem bi-twene  
Sones and douthres rith fuetene, They had 15  
Hwar-of þe sones were kinges alle, 2980 children, all  
So wolde god it sholde bifalle ; kings and queens.  
And þe douthtres alle quenes :  
Him stondes wel þat god child strenes. *Sept*  
Nu haue ye herd þe gest al þoru 2984 Such is the *geste*  
Of hauelok and of goldeborw. of Havelok and  
Hw he weren born, and hw fedde, Goldborough.  
And hwou he woren with wronge ledde  
In here youþe, with trecherie, 2988  
With tresoun, and with felounye,  
And hwou þe swikes hauden thit  
Reuen hem þat was here rith,  
And hwou he weren wrenen wel, 2992  
Haue ich sey you euerildel ;  
And forþi ich wolde biseken you,  
þat hauen herd þe rim[e] nu,  
þat ilke of you, with gode wille, 2996 Each of  
you say a

<sup>1</sup> *Qu.* Fro.<sup>2</sup> *MS.* togidede.

*pater-noster*  
for the author.

Seye a pater-noster stille,  
For him þat haueth þe rym[e] maked,  
And þer-fore fele nihtes waked ;  
þat ihesu crist his soule bringe  
Bi-forn his fader at his endinge.

3000

Amen.

## NOTES.

[The following notes are abridged from the notes in Sir F. Madden's excellent edition, the abridgement being effected almost entirely by occasional omissions, and with but very slight unimportant changes of a few words, chiefly in the case of references to later editions of various works than were existing in 1828. I have added one or two short notes upon difficult constructions, but these are distinguished by being enclosed within square brackets.—W. W. S.]

9. *He was the wicteste man at nede*  
*That thurte riden on ani stede.*

This appears to have been a favourite expression of the poet, and to have comprehended, in his idea, the perfection of those qualifications required in a knight and hero. He repeats it, with some slight variation, no less than five times, viz. in ll. 25, 87, 345, 1757, and 1970. The lines, however, are by no means original, but the common property of all our early poetical writers. We find them in *Lazamon* :

þis wes þe feirnste mon  
 þe ænere æhte ær þusne kinedom,  
 þa he milite beren wepnen,  
 & his hors wel awilden.

*Lazamon*, vol. i. p. 174.

So also in the Romance of *Guy of Warwick* :

He was the best knight at neede  
 That euer bestrode any stede.

Coll. Garrick, K. 9. sign. Ll. ii.

Again, in the *Continuation of Sir Gy*, in the Auchinleck MS., (ed. for the Abbotsford Club, 1840, 4to ; p. 266),

The best bodi he was at nede  
 That ever might bistriden stele,  
 And freest founde in flit.

And again, in the *Chronicle of England*, published by Ritson from a copy in the British Museum, MS. Reg. 12. C. XII.

After him his sone Arthur  
 Hevede this lond thourh and thourh.  
 He was the beste kyng at nede  
 That ever mihte ride on stede,  
 Other wepne welde, other folk out-lede,  
 Of mon ne hede he never drede.—l. 261.

The very close resemblance of these lines to those in *Havelok*, ll. 87—90, would induce a belief that the writer of the *Chronicle* had certainly read, and perhaps copied from, the Romance. The MS. followed by Ritson was undoubtedly written soon after the death of Piers Gaveston, in 1313, with the mention of which event it concludes; but in the Auchinleck copy it is continued, by a later hand, to the minority of Edward III. It only remains to be observed, that the poem in MS. Reg. 12. C. XII. is written by the same identical hand as the MS. Harl. 2253 (containing *Kyng Horn*, &c.), whence some additional light is thrown on the real age of the latter, respecting which our antiquaries so long differed.

[15. "And I will drink ere I tell my tale." *Her* = ere.

19. *And wite*, &c., i.e. And ordain that it may be so; cf. ll. 517, 1316. Both metre and grammar require the final *e*.]

31. *Erl and barun*, *dreng and kayn*. The appellation of *Dreng*, and, in the plural, *Drenges*, which repeatedly occurs in the course of this poem, is uniformly bestowed on a class of men who hold a situation between the rank of *Baron* and *Thayn*. We meet with the term more than once in Domesday Book, as, for instance, in Tit. Cestresc: "Hujus manerii [Neuton] aliam terram xv. hom. quos *Drenches* vocabant, pro xv. maneriis tenebant." And in a Charter of that period we read: "Alger Prior, et totus Conventus Ecclesiæ S. Cuthberti, Edwino, et omnibus Teignis et *Drengis*, &c." Hence Spelman infers, that the *Drengs* were military vassals, and held land by knight's service, which was called *Drengagium*. This is confirmed by a document from the Chartulary of Welbeck, printed in Dugdale, *Mon. Angl.* V. II. p. 598, and in Blount, *Jocular Tenures*, p. 177, where it is stated, "In eadem villa [Cukenev, co. Nottingham.] manebat quidam homo qui vocabatur Gamelbere, et fuit vetus *Dreyinghe* ante Conquestum." It appears from the same document, that this person held two carucates of land of the King *in capite*, and was bound to perform military service for the same, whenever the army went into Wales. In the Epistle also from the Monks of Canterbury to Henry II. printed by Somner, in his Treatise on Gavelkind, p. 123, we find: "Quia vero non erant adhuc tempore Regis Willelmi Milites in Anglia, sed *Threnges*, præcepit Rex, ut de eis Milites fierent, ad terram defendendam." In Lazamon's translation of Wace the term is frequently used in the acceptance of *thayn*, and spelt either *dringches*, *drenches*, *dranches*, or *dringes*. [Cf. Sw. *dräng*, a man, servant; Dan. *dreng*, a boy.] In the Isl. and Su. Goth. *Dreng* originally signified *vir fortis*, *miles strenuus*, and hence Olaf, King of Norway, received the epithet of *Goddreng*. See Wormii Lex. Run. p. 26. Ihre, Vet. Cat. Reg.

p. 109. Langebek, *Script. Rer. Danic.* V. i. p. 156. The term subsequently was applied to persons in a servile condition, and is so instanced by Spelman, as used in Denmark. In this latter sense it may be found in Hickes, *Diction. Isl.*, and in Sir David Lyndsay's *Poems*,

Quhilk is not ordanit for *dringis*  
But for Duikis, Empriouris, and Kingis.

V. Pinkerton's *Scottish Poems Reprinted*, ii. 97.

V. Jamieson, *Dict. in voce*.

45. *In that time a man that bore*  
(*Wel fyfty pund, y woth, or more.*)

This insertion receives additional authority from a similar passage in the Romance of *Guy of Warwick*, where it is mentioned as a proof of the rigorous system of justice pursued by Earl Sigard,

Though a man bore an hundred pound,  
Upon him of gold so round,  
There n'as man in all this land  
That durst him do shame no schonde.

Ellis, *Metr. Rom.* V. ii. p. 9. Ed. 1811.

Many of the traits here attributed to Athelwold appear to be borrowed from the praises so universally bestowed by our ancient historians on the character of King Alfred, in whose time, as Otterbourne writes, p. 52, "*armillas aureas in bivio stratas vel suspensas, nemo abripere est ausus.*" Cf. *Annal. Eccl. Rossens.* MS. Cott. Nero, D. ii. The same anecdote is related of Rollo, Duke of Normandy, by Guillaume de Jumièges, and Dudon de Saint Quentin.

91. *Sprong forth so sparke of glede.* Cf. l. 870. It is a very common metaphor in early English poetry.

He sprong forð an stede,  
swa sparc ded of fure.

*Lazamon*, v. ii. p. 565.

He sprange als any sparke one glede.

*Sir Isumbras*, st. 39 (*Camd. Soc.* 1814)

He spronge as sparkle doth of glede.

*K. of Tars*, l. 194.

And lepte out of the arsoun,  
As sperk thogh out of glede.

*Ly Beaus Desconus*, l. 623.

Cf. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, l. 13833, and Tyrwhitt's note.

110. *Of his bodi*, &c. Compare the French text, l. 208.

Mes entre eus n'eurent enfant  
Mes qe vne fille bele ;  
Argentille out non la pucele.  
Rois Ekenbright fut enfermez,  
Et de grant mal forment greucz ;  
Bien siet n'en poet garrir.



[Here *Argentille* is *Goldborough*, and *Ekenbright* answers to *Athelwold*. This quotation, and others below, shewing the passages of the French text which most nearly resemble the English poem, are from a MS. in the Herald's College, marked E. D. N. No. 14. See the Preface.]

[118. *Wat shal me to rede*, lit. what shall be for a counsel to me. See *Rede* in the Glossary to *William of Palerne*.

130. *And don hem of þur hire were queme*, lit. and do them off where it should be agreeable to her; i. e. and keep men at a distance as she pleased. Such seems to me the meaning of this hitherto unexplained line.

132. For *me* we ought probably to read *hit*.]

136. *He sende* writes *sone onon*. We must here, and in l. 2275, simply understand *letters*, without any reference to the official summonses of parliament, which subsequently were so termed, κατ' ἐξοχήν. The word *briefs* is used in the same sense by the old French writers, and in *Lazamon* we meet with some lines nearly corresponding with the present; see ll. 6669—6673.

[175. þr. Frequently written for *þat*. See *William of Palerne*.]

189—203. *Ther-on he garte*, &c. Compare the French Romance, ll. 215—228.

Sa fille li ad comandée,  
Et sa terre tote liuerée.  
Primerement li fet iurer,  
Veiant sa gent & affier,  
Qe leaument la nurrireit.  
Et sa terre lui gardereit,  
Tant q'ele fust de tiel age  
Qe suffrir porroit mariage.  
Quant la pucele seit granz,  
Par le consail de ses tenanz.  
Au plus fort home la dorroit  
Qe el reaume troueroit:  
Qu'il li baillast ses citez,  
Ses chasteus & ses fermetez.

263. *Justises dede he maken newe*,  
*Al Engclond to furen thow*.

The earliest instance produced by Dugdale of the Justices Itinerant, is in 23 Hen. II. 1176, when by the advice of the Council held at Northampton, the realm was divided into six parts, and into each were sent three Justices. *Orig. Judic.* p. 51. This is stated on the authority of Hoveden. Dugdale admits however the custom to have been older, and in Gervasius Dorobernensis, we find, in 1170, certain persons, called *inquisitores*, appointed to perambulate England. Gervase of Tilbury, or whoever was the author of the *Dialogus de Scaccario*, calls them *deambulantes, vel perlustrantes iudices*. See Spelman, in *roc*. The office continued to the time of Edward III., when it was superseded by that of the Justices of Assize.

280. *The kinges douthter*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 233.

Argentille,  
La meschine qu'ert sa fille,  
Que ia estoit creue & grant,  
Et bien poeit auoir en'ant.

[338. *Sawe*, put for "Say we." Cf. *biddi* for "bidde i," l. 484; *hauedet* for "hauede it," 714; &c.

365. *His quiste*, &c. "His bequest made, and (things) distributed for him."]

433. *Crist warie him with his mouth!*

*Waried wrthe he of north and suth!*

So, in the Romance of Merlin, Bishop Brice curses the enemies of Arthur,

Ac, for he is king, and king's son,  
Y curse alle, and y dom  
His enemies with Christes mouth,  
By East, by West, by North, and South!  
Ellis, *Metr. Rom.* V. i. p. 260.

[506. For *nouth* we must read *mouth* or *wolde*. The sense is—"He thought that he would he were dead, except that he might not (*or would* not) slay him with his (own) hand."

550. The sense is—"When he had done that deed (i. e. gagged the child), *then* the deceiver had commanded him," &c.

560. *with* may mean *knowest*, but this hardly gives sense. Perhaps we should read *wilt*, i. e. "As thou wilt have (preserve) my life."

567. Mr Morris suggests that the riming words are *adoun* and *croune*. We might then read—

"And caste þe knaue so harde adoun,  
þat he crakede þer hise croune."]

591. *Of hise mouth*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 71. sq.

Totes les houres q'il dormoit,  
Vne flambe de lui issoit.  
Par la bouche li venoit fors,  
Si grant chalur auoit el cors.  
La flambe rendoit tiel odour,  
One ne sentit nul home meillour.

676. *And with thi chartre make (me) fre*. Instances of the manumission of villains or slaves by charter may be found in Hickes, *Diss. Epistol.* p. 12, Lye's Dict. *ad calc.*, and Madox's *Formulare Anglicanum*, p. 750. The practice was common in the Saxon times, and existed so late as the reign of Henry VIII.

[694. *Wite he him onliue*, if he knows him (to be) alive.

701. It is evident that the words *and gate* = and goats, must be supplied. For the spelling *gate*, cf. *Pricke of Conscience*, ed. Morris, l. 6134, where *gayte* is used collectively as a plural.]

706. *Hise ship*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 89.

Grim fet niefs apparailler,  
Et de viande bien charger.

715—720. *Hauelok the yunge*, &c. Comp. the Fr. ll. 97—105.

Quant sa nief fut apparaillée,  
Dedenz fist entrer sa meisnée,  
Ses cheualers & ses serganz,  
Sa femme demeine & ses enfanz :  
La reyne mist el batel,  
Haueloc tint souz son mantel.  
Il meismes apres entra,  
A Dieu del ciel se comanda,  
Del hauene sont desaneré,  
Car il eurent bon orré.

Instead of the storm, in the French text Grim's ship is attacked by pirates, who kill the whole of the crew, with the exception of himself and family, whom they spare on the score of his being an old acquaintance.

733—749. *In Humber*, &c. So in the Fr. *Ceo fut el north*, &c. Cf. ll. 122—135.

Tant ont nagé & tant siglé,  
Q'en vne hauene ont parvenu,  
Et de la nief a terre issu.  
Ceo fut el North, a Grimesbi ;  
A icel tens qe ieo vus di,  
Ni out onques home habité,  
Ne cele hauene n'ert pas haunté.  
Il i adresca primes maison,  
De lui ad Grimesbi a non.  
Quant Grim primes i ariua,  
En .ii. moitez sa nief trencha,  
Les chiefs en ad amont drescé,  
Ilocc dedenz s'est herbergé.  
Pescher aloit sicome il soloit,  
Siel vendoit & achatoit.

753. *He took the sturgiun and the qual,*  
*And the turbut, and lax withal,*  
*He tok the sele, and the hwel, &c.*

The list of fish here enumerated may be increased from l. 896, and presents us with a sufficiently accurate notion of the different species eaten in the 13th century. Each of the names will be considered separately in the Glossary, and it is only intended here to make a few remarks on those, which in the present day appear rather strangely to have found a place on the tables of our ancestors. The sturgeon is well known to have been esteemed a dainty, both in England and France, and specially appropriated to the King's service, but that the whale, the seal, and the porpoise

should have been rendered palatable, excites our astonishment. Yet that the whale was caught for that purpose, appears not only from the present passage, but also from the Fabliau intitled *Bataille de Charnage et de Caresme*, written probably about the same period, and printed by Barbazan. It is confirmed, as we learn from Le Grand, by the French writers; and even Rabelais, near three centuries later, enumerates the whale among the dishes eaten by the Gastrolatres. In the list of fish also published by Le Grand from a MS. of the 13th century, and which corresponds remarkably with the names in the Romance, we meet with the *Baleigne*. See *Vie Privée des François*, T. II. sect. 8.

Among the articles at Archbishop Nevil's Feast, 6 Edw. IV., we find, *Porposes and Seales* XII. and at that of Archbishop Warham, held in 1504, is an item: *De Seales & Porposs. prec. in gross* XXVI. s. VIII. d. Champier asserts that the Seal was eaten at the Court of Francis I., so that the taste of the two nations seems at this period to have been nearly the same. For the courses of fish in England during the 14th and 15th centuries, see Pegge's *Form of Cury*, and Warner's *Antiquitates Culinaræ*, to which we may add MS. Sloane, 1986. [*Cf. Babees Book*, &c., ed. Furnivall, 1868, p. 153.]

[784. For *setes* we should probably read *seten* or *sette*, which would be as good a rime as many others. The scribe has probably made the rime more perfect than the sense. It must mean, "In the sea were they oft set." We cannot here suppose *setes* = *set es* = set them.]

839. *And seyde, Havelok, dere sone*. In the French, Grim sends Havelok away for quite a different reason, viz. because he does not understand fishing.

903. *The kok stod*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 242.

Et vn keu le roi le retint,  
Purceo qe fort le vist & grant,  
Et mult le vist de bon semblant.  
Merueillous fes poeit leuer,  
Busche tailler, ewe porter.

The last line answers to l. 942 of the English version.

939. *He bar the turues, he bar the star*. The meaning of the latter term will be best illustrated by a passage in Moor's *Suffolk Words*, where, under the word *Bent*, he writes, "*Bent* or *Starr*, on the N.W. coast of England, and especially in Lancashire, is a coarse reedy shrub—like ours perhaps—of some importance formerly, if not now, on the sandy blowing lands of those counties. Its fibrous roots give some cohesion to the silicious soil. By the 15 and 16 G. II. c. 33, plucking up and carrying away *Starr* or *Bent*, or having it in possession within five miles of the sand hills, was punishable by fine, imprisonment, and whipping." The use stated in the Act to which the *Starr* was applied, is, "making of Mats, Brushes, and Brooms or Besoms," therefore it might very well be adapted to the purposes of a kitchen, and from its being coupled with *turves* in the poem, was perhaps sometimes burnt for fuel. The origin of the word is Danish, and still exists in the Dan. *Ster*, Swed. *Starr*, Isl.



*staer*, a species of sedge, or broom, called by Lightfoot, p. 560, *carex cespitosa*. Perhaps it is this shrub alluded to in the Romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*, and this circumstance will induce us to assign its author to the district in which the Starr is found.

The speris craketh swithe thikke,  
So doth on hegge *sterre-stike*.—l. 4428.

945. *of alle men*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 254.

Tant estoit franc & deboneire,  
Que tuz voloit lur pleisir fere,  
Pur la franchise q'il out.

959. *Of him ful wide the word sprong*. A phrase which from the Saxon times occurs repeatedly in all our old writers. A few examples may suffice.

Beowulf wæs brene.  
Blæd wide sprang.

*Beowulf*, ed. Thorpe, p. 2.

Welle wide sprong þas eorles word.  
*Lazamon*, l. 26242.

Of a knight is that y mene,  
His name is sprong wel wide.

*Sir Tristrem*, st. 2, p. 12.

The word of Horn wide sprong,  
How he was bothe michel and long.

*Horn Childe*, ap. Rits. *M'r. Rom.* V. iii. p. 291.

See also the *Kyng of Tars*, ll. 19, 1007, *Emare*, l. 256, *Roland and Ferragus*, as quoted by Ellis, *Ly beaus Desconus*, l. 172, and *Chronicle of England*, l. 71.

984. *In armes him noman (ne) nam*  
*þat he doune sone ne caste*.

The same praise is bestowed on Havelok in the French text, l. 265,—

Deuant eus liuter le fesoient  
As plus forz homes q'il sauoient,  
Et il trestouz les abatit—

and it was doubtless in imitation or ridicule of the qualities attributed to similar heroes, that Chaucer writes of Sir Thopas, "Of wrastling was ther non his per." *Cant. Tales*, l. 13670.

1006. *To ben þer at þe parlement*. Cf. l. 1178. If we examine our historical records, we shall find that the only parliament held at Lincoln was in the year 1300, 28 Edw. I., and the writs to the *Archbishop of York*, and other Nobles, both ecclesiastical and secular, are still extant. The proceedings are detailed at some length by Robert of Brunne, Vol. II. p. 312, who might have been in Lincoln at the time, or, at all events, was sufficiently informed of all that took place, from his residence in the



county. If we could suppose that the author of the Romance alluded to this very parliament, it would reduce the period of the poem's composition to a later date, than either the style or the writing of the MS. will possibly admit of. It is therefore far more probable the writer here makes use of a poetical, and very pardonable licence, in transferring the parliament to the chief city of the county in which he was evidently born, or brought up, without any reference whatever to historical data.

1022. *Biforn here fet þanne lay a tre,  
And putten with a mikel ston, &c.*

This game of *putting the stone*, is of the highest antiquity, and seems to have been common at one period to the whole of England, although subsequently confined to the Northern counties, and to Scotland. Fitzstephen enumerates casting of stones among the amusements of the Londoners in the 12th century, and Dr Pegge, in a note on the passage, calls it "a Welch custom." The same sport is mentioned by Geoffrey of Monmouth, among the diversions pursued at King Arthur's feast, as will appear in a subsequent note (l. 2320). By an edict of Edward III. the practice of casting stones, wood, and iron, was forbidden, and the use of the bow substituted, yet this by no means superseded the former amusement, which was still in common use in the 16th century, as appears from Strutt's *Popular Pastimes*, Introd. pp. xvii, xxxix, and p. 56, sq. In the Highlands this sport appears to have been longer kept up than in any other part of Britain, and Pennant, describing their games, writes, "Those retained are, throwing the *putting-stone*, or stone of strength (*Cloch neart*) as they call it, which occasions an emulation who can throw a weighty one the farthest." *Tour in Scoll.* p. 214. 4to. 1769. See also *Statist. Account of Argyleshire*, xi. 287. In the French Romance of Horn, preserved in MS. Harl. 527, is almost a similar incident to the one in Havelok, and would nearly amount to a proof, that Tomas, the writer of the French text of Horn, was an Englishman.

In the Romance of *Oetorian Imperator* it is said of Florent,

At *wrestelyng*, and at *ston castynge*  
He wan the prys, without lesynge;  
Ther n'as nother old ne yunge  
So moche of strength,  
That myght the ston to hys *but bryng*,  
Bi fedeme lengthe.—l. 895.

It is singular enough, that the circumstance of Havelok's throwing the stone, mentioned in the Romance, should have been founded on, or preserved in, a local tradition, as attested by Robert of Brunne, p. 26.

Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges ȝit a stone,  
That Havelok kast wele forbi euerilkone.

1077—1088. *The king Athelwald*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, ll. 354—370.

Quant Ekenbright le roi fini,  
 En ma garde sa fille mist ;  
 Vn serement iurer me fist,  
 Q'au plus fort home le dorroie,  
 Qe el reaume trouer porroie.  
 Assez ai quis & demandé,  
 Tant q'en ai vn fort troué ;  
 Vn valet ai en ma quisine,  
 A qui ieo dorrai la meschine ; &c.

1103. *After Goldeboru*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 377.

Sa niece lur fet amener,  
 Et a Cuaran esposer ;  
 Pur lui auiler & honir,  
 La fist la nuit lez lui gesir.

The French Romance differs here very considerably from the English, and in the latter, the dream of Argentille, her visit to the hermit, and the conversation relative to Havelok's parents, is entirely omitted.

[1174. This may mean—"He (Havelok) is given to her, and she has taken (him)"—but this makes *yaf* and *tok* past participles, which they properly are not ; or else we must translate it—"He (Godard) gave them to her, and she took them," i. e. the pence. This alone is the grammatical construction, and it suits the context best ; observe, that the words *ys* and *as* are equivalent to *es* = them. Cf. l. 970. See Morris ; *Gen. & Exod.*, Pref. p. xviii.]

1203. *Thanne he komen there*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 556.

A Grimesby s'en alerent ;  
 Mes li prodoms estoit finiz,  
 Et la Dame q'is out nurriz.  
 Kelloc sa fille i ont trouée,  
 Vn marchant l'out esposée.

The marriage of Kelloc, Grim's daughter, with a merchant is skilfully introduced in the French, and naturally leads to the mention of Denmark. The plot of the English story is wholly dissimilar in this respect.

1247. *On the nith*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 381.

Quant couché furent ambedui,  
 Cele out grant honte de lui,  
 Et il assez greindre de li.  
 As deuz se geut, si se dormi.  
 Ne voloit pas q'ele veist  
 La flambe qe de lui issist.

The voice of the angel is completely an invention of the English author, and the dream (which is transferred from Argentille to Havelok) is altogether different in its detail.

1260. *Ile beth heyman*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 521.

Il est né de real lignage,  
 Oncore auera grant heritage.  
 Grant gent fra vers li encline,  
 Il serra roi & tu reyne.

[1334. The words *euere-il del* are corruptly repeated from line 1330 above. Perhaps we should read *wit-uten were*, i. e. without doubt.]

1430. *Hauede go for him gold ne fe*. Cf. l. 44. So in *Lazamon*:

Ne sculde him neoðer gon fore  
 Gold ne na gærsome, &c.; vol. ii. p. 537.

[1444. The French text helps but little to supply the blank. It shows that Havelok and his wife sailed to Denmark, and, on their arrival, sought out the castle belonging to Sigar, who answers to the Ubbe of the English version.]

1632. *A gold ring drow he forth anon*, &c. A similar incident, and in nearly the same words, occurs in *Sir Tristrem*.

A ring he raught him tite,  
 The porter seyð nought nay,  
     In hand :  
 He was ful wis, y say,  
 That first yave yift in land.—fytte i. st. 57, p. 39.

So also Wyntoun, who relates the subsidy of 40,000 moutons sent from France to Scotland in 1353, and adds,

Qwha gyvis swilk gyftyis he is wyse.

[See also *Piers Plowman*, Text A. iii. 202.]

1646. *Hw he was wel of bones*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 743.

Gent cors & bele feture,  
 Lungs braz & grant furcheure  
 Ententiement l'esgarda.

[1678. This line has two syllables too little.]

1722. *Thanne he were set*, &c. This is an amplification of the Fr. l. 677, sq.

Quant fut houre del manger,  
 Et qe tuz alerent lauer,  
 Li prodoms a manger s'assist,  
 Les .iii. valez seeir i fist,  
 Argentille lez son seignur ;  
 Serui furent a grant honur.

1726. *Kranes, swannes, veneysun*, &c. We have here the principal constituents of what formed the banquets of our ancestors. The old Romances abound with descriptions of this nature, which coincide exactly with the present. See *Richard Cœur de Lion*, l. 4221; *Guy of Warwick*; *The Squyr of Lowe Degre*, l. 317; and *Morte Arthure*, ed. Perry, p. 7.

"Wine is common," says Dr Pegge, speaking of the entertainments of the 14th century, "both red and white. This article they partly had of their own growth, and partly by importation from France and Greece." A few examples will illustrate this :

He laid the cloth, and set forth bread,  
And also wine, both *white and red*.

*Sir Degore*, ap. Ellis, *Metr. Rom.* V. 3, p. 375.

And dronke wyn, and eke pyment,  
*Whyt and red*, al to talent.

*Kyng Alisaunder*, l. 4178.

[Cf. *Piers Plowman*, Text B, at the end of the *Prologue*.]

In the *Squyr of Lowe Degre* is a long list of these wines, which has received considerable illustration in the curious work of Dr Henderson.

[1736. I print *kirving*, as in Sir F. Madden's edition; but I quite give up the meaning of it, and doubt if it is put for *kirving*. The word is obscurely written, and looks like *kilping*, and my impression is that it is miswritten for *ilk ping*, the word *pe* being put for *per*, as frequently elsewhere. We should thus get *hwan he haueden per ilk ping deled*, when they had there distributed every thing. This is, at any rate, the sense of the passage.]

1749. *And sende him unto the greyues*. In the French, Havelok is simply sent to an *ostel*, and the *greyve* does not appear in the story.

1806. *Hauelok lifte up*, &c. In the French, all the amusing details relative to Robert and Huwe Raven are omitted, and Havelok is made to retire to a monastery, where he defends himself by throwing down the stones on his assailants.

[1826. *wolde*, offered at, intended to hit, *would* have hit.]

1838. *And shoten on him, so don on bere*  
*Dogges, that wolden him to-tere*.]

The same comparison is made use of in the Romance of Horn Childe :

The Yrise folk about him yode,  
As hondes do to bare.

Rits. *Metr. Rom.* V. III. p. 289.

See Note on l. 2320.

[1914. "Cursed be he who cares! for they deserved it! What did they? There were they worried." A mark of interrogation seems required after *dide he*.]

1926—1930. *Sket cam tiding*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 719.

La nouele vint a chastel,  
Au seneschal, qui n'est pas bel,  
Qe cil qu'il auoit herbergé  
Cinc de ses homes out tué.

[1932. Apparently corrupt. Perhaps *is* should be *it*. "That this strife—as to what it meant."]

2045. *That weren of Kaym kin and Eues*. The odium affixed to



the supposed progeny of Cain, and the fables engrafted on it, owe their origin to the theological opinions of the Middle Ages, which it is not worth while to trace to their authors. See *Beowulf*, ed. Thorpe, p. 8; and *Piers Plowman*, A. x. 135—156; answering to p. 177 of Whitaker's edition. See also the Romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*:

And of Sab the duk Mauryn,  
He was of *Kaymes kunrede*.—l. 1932.

In *Ywaine and Gawaine*, l. 559, the Giant is called "the karl of *Kaymes kyn*," and so also in a poem printed by Percy, intitled *Little John Nobody*, written about the year 1550.

Such caitives count to be come of *Cain's kind*.  
*Anc. Reliq.* V. II. p. 130. Ed. 1765.

2076. *It ne shal no thing ben bitwene*  
*Thi bour and min, also y wene,*  
*But a fayr firrene wowe.*

These lines will receive some illustration from a passage in Sir Tristrem, where it is said,

A borde he tok oway  
Of her bour.—p. 114.

On which Sir W. Scott remarks, "The bed-chamber of the queen was constructed of wooden boards or shingles, of which one could easily be removed." This will explain the line which occurs below, 2106, "He stod, and totede in at a bord."

2092. *Aboute the middel*, &c. In the French, a person is placed by the Seneschal to watch, who first discovers the light.

2132. *Bi the pappes he leyen naked*. "From the latter end of the 13th to near the 16th century, all ranks, and both sexes, were universally in the habit of sleeping quite naked. This custom is often alluded to by Chaucer, Gower, Lydgate, and all our ancient writers." Ellis, *Spec. Metr. Rom.* V. i. p. 324, 4th Ed. In the *Squyr of Lowe Degre* is a remarkable instance of this fact:

How she rose, that lady dere,  
To take her leue of that squyer;  
Al so naked as she was borne  
She stod her chambre-dore beforen.—l. 671.

The custom subsisted both in England and France to a very recent period, and hence probably was derived the phrase *naked-bed*, illustrated so copiously by Archdeacon Nares in his Glossary.

2192. Cf. the French, l. 843.

Ses chapelcins fet demander,  
Ses briefs escriure & ensecler;  
Par ses messages les manda,  
Et pur ses amis enuoia;  
Pur ses homes, pur ses parenz;  
Mult i assembla granz genz.



[2201. Read *ne neme* = took not, sc. their way, just as in l. 1207.]

2240—2255. *Lokes, hware he stondes her, &c.* Comp. the Fr. ll. 913—921.

“Veez ci nostre dreit heir,  
 Bien en deuom grant ioie aueir.”  
 Tut primerain se desafubla,  
 Par deuant lui s’agenuilla;  
 Sis homs deuint, si li iura  
 Qe leaument le seruira.  
 Li autre sont apres alé,  
 Chescuns de bone volenté;  
 Tuit si home sont deuenu.

2314. *Vbbe dubbede him to knith,*

*With a swerd ful swithe brith.*

So likewise in the Fr. l. 928, *A cheualier l’out adubbé.* The ceremony of knighthood is described with greater minuteness in the Romance of *Ly beaus Desconus*, l. 73; and see *Kyng Horn*, ed. Lumby, ll. 495—504.

2320. *Hwan he was king, ther mouthe men se, &c.* Ritson has justly remarked, Notes to *Ywayne and Gawaine*, l. 15, that the elaborate description of Arthur’s feast at Carlisle, given by Geoffrey of Monmouth, l. ix. c. 12, has served as a model to all his successors. The original passage stands thus in a fine MS. of the 13th century, MS. Harl. 3773. fol. 33 *b*. “Refecti autem epulis diversos ludos acturi campos extra civitatem adeunt. Tunc milites simulachra belli scientes *equestrem ludum* componunt, mulieribus ab edito murorum aspicientibus. Alii *cum cestibus*, alii *cum hastis*, alii *gravium lapidum jactu*, alii *cum facis*, [*saxis*, Edd.] alii *cum aleis*, diversisque alii alteriusmodi jocis contendentes.” In the translation of this description by Wace we approach still nearer to the imitation of the Romance before us.

A plusurs iuis se departirent,  
 Li vns alerent *buhurder*,  
 E lur ignels cheuals mustrer,  
 Li altre alerent *eskermir*,  
 V pere *geter*, v *saillir*;  
 Tels i-aueit ki *darz lanconent*,  
 E tels i-aueit ki *lutouent*:  
 Chescon del gru [geu?] s’entremetait  
 Dunt entremettre se saueit.—MS. Reg. 13. A. xxi.

The parallel versions, from the French, of *Lazamon*, Robert of Gloucester, and Robert of Brunne, may be read in Mr Ellis’s *Specimens of Early English Poets*. At the feast of Olimpias, described in the Romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*, we obtain an additional limitation.

Withoute theo toun was mury,  
 Was reised ther al maner pley;

There was knyghtis *turnyng*,  
 There was maiden es carolyng,  
 There was champions *skyrmyng*,  
 Of heom and of other *wrastlyng*,  
 Of liouns chas, of *beore baityng*,  
 And *bay of bor*, of *bole slatyng*.—l. 193. Cf. l. 1045.

Some additional illustrations on each of the amusements named in our text may not be unacceptable:

1. *Buttinge with sharpe speres*. This is tilting, or justing, expressed in Wace by *buhurdêr*. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, p. 96, sq. 108.

2. *Skirming with taleuaces*. This is described more at large by Wace, in his account of the feast of Cassibelaunus. Cf. *Lazamon*, v. i. p. 347; l. 8144. In Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes* is a representation of this game, taken from MS. Bodl. 264, illuminated between 1338 and 1344, in which the form of the *taleras* is accurately defined. It appears to have been pursued to such an excess, as to require the interference of the crown, for in 1286 an edict was issued by Edward I. prohibiting all persons *Eskirmer au bokeler*. This, however, had only a temporary effect in restraining it, and in later times, under the appellation of *sword and buckler play*, it again became universally popular.

3. *Wrastling with laddes, puttinge of ston*. See the notes on ll. 984 and 1022.

4. *Harping and piping*. This requires no illustration.

5. *Leyk of mine, of hasard ok*. Among the games mentioned at the marriage of Gawain, in the Fabliau of *Le Chevalier à l'Epée*, we have:

Cil Chevalier jeuent às tables,  
 Et as eschés de l'autre part,  
 O à la mine, o à hazart.

Le Grand, in his note on this passage, T. i. p. 57, Ed. 1779, writes: "Le Hasard était une sorte de jeu de dez. Je ne connais point la *Mine*; j'ai trouvé seulement ailleurs un passage qui prouve que ce jeu était très-dangereux, et qu'on pouvait s'y ruiner en peu de tems." It appears however from the Fabliau of *Du Prestre et des deuz Ribaus*, to have been certainly a species of *Tables*, or *Backgammon*, and to have been played with dice, on a board called *Minete*. The only passage we recollect in which any further detail of this game is given, is that of Wace, in the account of Arthur's feast, Harl. MS. 6508, and MS. Cott. Vit. A. x., but it must be remarked, that the older copy 13 A. xxi. does not contain it, nor is it found in the translations of *Lazamon*, or Robert of Gloucester.

6. *Romanz reding*. See Sir W. Scott's note on Sir Tristrem, p. 290, [p. 306, ed. 1811]; and the Dissertations of Percy, Ritson, and Ellis.

7. *Ther mouthe men se the boles beyte*,  
*And the bores, with hundes teyte*.

Cf. ll. 1838, 2438. Both these diversions are mentioned by Lucianus, in his inedited tract *De laude Cestriæ*, MS. Bodl. 672, who is supposed by

Tanner to have written about A.D. 1100, but who must probably be placed near half a century later. They formed also part of the amusements of the Londoners in the 12th century, as we learn from Fitzstephen, p. 77, and are noticed in the passage above quoted from the Romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*. In later times, particularly during the 16th century, these cruel practices were in the highest estimation, as we learn from Holinshed, Stowe, Laneham, &c. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, p. 192, and the plate from MS. Reg. 2. B. vii. Also Pegge's Dissertation on Bull-baiting, inserted in Vol. ii. of *Archæologia*.

8. *Ther mouthe men se hw Grim greu*. If this is to be understood of scenic representation (and we can scarcely view it in any other light), it will present one of the earliest instances on record of any attempt to represent an historical event, or to depart from the religious performances, which until a much later period were the chief, and almost only, efforts towards the formation of the drama. Of course, the words of the writer must be understood to refer to the period in which he lived, i. e. according to our supposition, about the end of Hen. III's reign, or beginning of Edw. I. See Le Grand's notes to the *Lai de Courtois*, V. i. p. 329, and Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, B. 3, ch. 2.

2344. *The feste fourti dawes sat*. Cf. l. 2950. This is borrowed also from Geoffrey, and is the usual term of duration fixed in the Romances.

Fourty dayes hy helden feste,  
Ryche, ryall, and oneste.—*Octouian Imperator*, l. 73.

Fourty dayes leste the feste.—*Launfal*, l. 631.

And certaynly, as the story sayes,  
The revell lasted forty dayes.

*Squyr of Lowe Degre*, l. 1113.

2384. The French story here differs wholly from the English. Instead of the encounter of Robert and Godard, and the cruel punishment inflicted on the latter, in the French is a regular battle between the forces of Havelok and Hodulf (Godard). A single combat takes place between the two leaders, in which Hodulf is slain.

2450. Cf. ll. 2505 and 2822. This appears to have been a common, but barbarous, method in former times of leading traitors or malefactors to execution. Thus in the Romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*, the treatment of the murderers of Darius is described :

He dude quyk harnesche hors,  
And sette theron heore cors,  
Hyndeforth they seten, saun faile ;  
In heore hand they hulden theo tailes.—l. 4708.

2461. We find a similar proverb in the *Historie de Melusine, tirée des Chroniques de Poitou*, &c. 12mo. Par. 1698, in which (at p. 72) Thierry, Duke of Bretagne, says to Raimondin ;—" Vous autorisez par votre silence notre Proverbe, qui dit, *Qu'un vieux péché fait nouvelle vergogne*."

2513. *Sket was seysed*, &c. Comp. the Fr. l. 971.

Après cest fet, ad receu  
Le regne q'a son piere fu.

2516. *And the king ful sone it yaf*  
*Vbbe in the hond, wit a fuyr staf.*

So in *Sir Tristrem* :

Rohant he yaf *the wand*,  
And bad him sitte him bi,  
That fre ;  
' Rohant lord mak y  
To held this lond of me.'—fytte i. st. 83 ; p. 52.

The editor is clearly mistaken in explaining the *wand* to be a *truncheon*, or *symbol of power*. For the custom of giving seisin or investiture *per fustim*, and *per baculum*, see Madox's *Formul. Anglican.* pref. p. ix. and Spelman, Gloss. in v. *Investire*, and *Traditio*. The same usage existed in France, *par rain et par baton*.

2521. ——— *of monukes blake*  
*A priorie to seruen inne ay.*

The allusion here may be made either to the Abbey of Wellow, in Grimsby, which was a monastery of *Black Canons*, said to have been built about A.D. 1110, or (what is more probable) to the Augustine Friary of Black Monks, which is stated in the *Monumental Antiquities of Grimsby*, by the Rev. G. Oliver, to have been "founded about the year 1280," p. 110. No notice of it occurs in Tanner till the year 1304. Pat. 33 Edw. I. Some old walls of this edifice, which was dissolved in 1543, still remain, and the site is still called "The Friars." If the connection between this foundation and the one recorded in the poem be considered valid, the date of the composition must be referred to *rather* a later period than we wish to admit.

2530. The French supplies what is here omitted, viz. that Havelok sails to England by the persuasion of his wife.

[Indeed, ll. 979—1006 of the French text may serve to fill up the evident gap in the story ; a translation of the passage is added, to shew this more clearly.

Quant Haveloc est rois pussanz,  
Le regne tint plus de .iiii. anz ;  
Merueillos tresor i auna.  
Argentille li cominanda  
Qu'il passast en Engleterre  
Pur son heritage conquerre,  
Dont son oncle l'out engettée,  
[Et] A grant tort desheritée.  
Li rois li dist qu'il fera  
Ceo qu'ele li comandera.

When Havelok is a mighty king,  
He reigned more than 4 years,  
Marvellous treasure he amassed.  
Argentille (Goldborough) bade him  
Pass into England  
To conquer her heritage,  
Whence her uncle had cast her out,  
And very wrongly disinherited her.  
The king told her that he would do  
That which she should command  
him.

Sa nauie fet a-turner,

He got ready his fleet,



Ses genz & ses ostz mander.  
 En mîer se met quant orré a,  
 Et la reyne od lui mena.  
 Quatre vinz & quatre cenx  
 Out Haveloc, pleines de genz.  
 Tant out nagé & siglé,  
 Q'en Carleflure est ariué.  
 Sur le hauene se herbergerent,  
 Par le pais viande quierent.

Puis enuoia li noble rois,  
 Par le conseil de ses Danois,  
 A Alsî qu'il li rendist

La terre qe tint Ekenbright,

Q'a sa niece fut donée,  
 Dont il l'out desheritée ;  
 Et, si rendre n'el voleit,  
 Mande qu'il le purchaceroit.  
 Av roi uindrent li messager—

And sent for his men and his hosts.  
 He puts to sea when he has prayed,  
 And took the queen with him.  
 Four score and four hundred (ships)  
 Had Havelok, full of men.  
 So far has he steered and sailed  
 That he has arrived at Carleflure.  
 Hard by the haven they abode,  
 And sought food in the country  
 round.

Then sent the noble king,  
 By the advice of his Danes,  
 To Alsî (Godrich)—that he should  
 restore to him

The land that Ekenbright (Athel-  
 wold) held,

Which was given to his niece,  
 And of which he had deprived her.  
 And, if he would not give it up,  
 He sends word that he will take it.  
 To the king came the messengers.]

The remainder of the French poem altogether differs in its detail from the English.

2927. *Hire that was ful swete in bedde.*] Among Kelly's Scotch Proverbs, p. 290, we find: "*Sweet in the bed*, and sweir up in the morning, was never a good housewife;" and in a ballad of the last century quoted by Laing, the editor of that highly curious collection, the *Select pieces of Ancient Popular Poetry of Scotland*, we meet with the same expression:

A Clown is a Clown both at home and abroad,  
 When a Rake he is comely, and *sweet in his bed*.

[2990. The last word is written *thit* in the MS., but, as it rimes to *rith*, we should suppose *tilt* to be the word meant. *Thit* cannot be explained, but *tilt* (or perhaps *tith*, according to our scribe's spelling) is the pp. of a verb signifying *to purpose*, which is the exact meaning required. Cf.

"And y to turne to þee have *tizt*;"

i. e. "I have resolved to turn to thee."

*Political, Religious, and Love Poems*; ed. Furnivall, 1866; p. 177.]



## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

Barb. Barbour's Bruce.—Chauc. Chaucer.—Doug. Gawin Douglas's Transl. of the Æneid.—Ellis, M. R. Ellis's Specimens of Metrical Romances.—Gl. Glossary.—Jam. Jamieson's Dictionary.—Lazam. Lazamon's Transl. of Wace (ed. Madden).—Lynds. Sir D. Lyndsay's Works.—N.E. Northern English.—Percy, A. R. Percy's Reliques of Ancient English Poetry.—P. Plowm. Piers Plowman.—R. Br. Robert of Brunne.—R. Gl. Robert of Gloucester, ed. Hearne (2nd ed. 1810).—Rits. A. S. Ritson's Ancient Songs.—Rits. M. R. Ritson's Metrical Romances.—Sc. Scotch, Scotland.—Sir Tr. Sir Tristrem.—Wall. Wallace.—Web. Weber's Metrical Romances.—Wilb. Wilbraham's Cheshire Glossary.—Wynt. Wyntoun's Chronicle.—B. Lat. Barbarous Latin.—Belg. Belgic.—Fr. French.—Isl. Islandic.—Lat. Latin.—S. Saxon.—Sibb. Sibbald's Chronicle of Scottish Poetry.—Su. G. Suio-Gothic.—Teut. Teutonic.—*q. v.* Quod vide.—The Romances separately cited are sufficiently indicated by the Titles. The numbers refer to the line of the Poem.

It may be useful to add that the names of the Romances edited by Ritson are—vol. i. Ywaine and Gawin; Launfal.—vol. ii. Lybeaus Disconus; King Horn; King of Tars; Emare; Sir Orpheo; Chronicle of England.—vol. iii. Le bone Florence; Erle of Tolous; Squyr of Lowe Degre; Knight of Curtesy. Those edited by Weber are—vol. i. Kyng Alisaunder; Sir Cleges; Lai-le-freine.—vol. ii. Richard Cœur de Lion; Ipomydon; Amis and Amiloun.—vol. iii. Seuvn Sages; Oetouian; Sir Amadas; Hunting of the Hare. Beowulf and the Codex Exoniensis are quoted from Thorpe's editions.

A, 610, 936. Apparently an error of the scribe for *Al*, but perhaps written as pronounced. N.E. and Sc. *aw*. V. Jam.

A before a *noun* is commonly a corruption of the S. *on*, as proved clearly by the examples in Tyrwhitt's Gl., Jam., and Gl. Lynds. *Adoun*, *q. v.* is an exception. *Atico*, 1413, 2643. See *On*.

Aboven, *prep.* S. above, 1700.

Abouten, *prep.* S. [*on-bûtan*] about, 521, 670, 1010, &c. *Abuten*, 2429.

Adoun, *adv.* S. down, 567. *Adune*, 2735. *Down*, 901, 925, &c. *Dun*, 888. 927. *Dune*, 1815, 2656. A.S. *of-dûne*.

Adrad, *part. pa.* S. afraid, 278, 1048, 1163, 1682, 2304. *Adradde*, 1787. *Adred*, 1258. *Odrat*, 1153. Sir Tr. p. 174; K. Horn, 124. See *Dred*.

Agen, *prep.* S. [*on-gean*] against, 1792. *Ageyn*, 493, 569, 2024, &c. *Ageynes*. 2153. 2270, &c. *Agen*, 489, 1210, 2799. *Yen*, 2271. *Ageyn*, toward, 451, 1696, 1947;

- opposite to, 1809; upon, on, 1828.  
*Ayen*, towards, 1207. *Ageyn him go*, 934, opposite him, so as to bear an equal weight. *Ageyn hire*, 1106, at her approach. *Ageyn þe lith*, 2141, opposed to the light, on which the light shines. V. R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc., &c.
- Ageyn*, *adv.* S. again, 2426.
- Al*, *adv.* S. wholly, entirely, 34, 70, 139, 203, &c.
- Al*, *adj.* S. all, 203, 264, &c.; every one, 104; every part, 224; *plu.* alle, 2, 150, &c.
- Albidene*, *adv.* See *Bidene*.
- Als*, *Also*, *Also*, *conj.* S. [*eal-swá*] as, like, so, 306, 319, &c. *Als*, 1912, as if. *Al so foles*, like fools, 2100. *Als* is merely the abbreviation of *Al so*; and the modern *as* is again shortened from *als*. In *Lazamon* it is often written *alse*, as in l. 4953.
- And he hæfde a swithe god wif  
 & he heo leouede *alse* his lif.
- Cf. *Havelok*, l. 1663. *Als* and *Also* are used indifferently, and universally by the old English and Scotch poets.
- Alper-beste*, *adj.* S. best of all, 182, 720, 1040, 1197, 2415. *Alper-lest*, *Alper-leste*. 1978, 2666, least of all. It is the gen. c. pl. of *Alle*, joined to an adj. in the superl. degree, and is extensively employed. *Alre-leofust*, *Alre-hendest*, *Alre-kenest*, *Lazamon*, *Althe-werste*, K. Horn, MS. *Alder-best*, *Alder-most*, R. Br. *Alther-best*, *Alther-formest*, &c. Web. *Alther-furste*, *Alther-next*, *Alther-last*, Rits. M. R. *Alder-first*, *Alder-last*, *Alder-lestest*, Chauc. *Alder - liefest*, Shakespeare.
- Amideward*, *prep.* S. in the midst, 872. *Amiddewart*, K. Horn, 556. *Amydward*, K. Alisaund. 690. *A mydward*, Ly Beaus Desc. 852. *Amydwart*, Doug. Virg. 137, 35.
- An*, *conj.* S. and, 29, 359, &c. So used by *Lazamon*, and still in Somersetsh. V. Jennings. *Ant*, 36, 557, K. Horn, 9, &c.
- And*, *conj.* *if*, 2862.
- Andelong*, *adv.* S. lengthways, i. e. from the head to the tail, 2822.
- Oyrtwart and *endelang*  
 With strenges of wyr the stones  
 hang.—R. *Cœur de Lion*, 2649.  
 Chauc. *endelong*, C. T. 1993.
- Anilepi*, *adj.* S. [*ánlepiq*] one, a single, 2107. *Onlepi*, 1094. In the very curious collection of poems in MS. Digb. 86 (written in the Lincolnshire dialect, temp. Edw. I.) we meet with this somewhat rare word:
- A! quod the vox, ich wille the telle,  
*On alpi* word ich lie nelle.  
*Of the vox and of the wolf* (Rel. Ant. ii. 275).
- It occurs also in the *Ormulum*.
- Anoþer*, *adj.* S. *Al another*, 1395, in a different way, on another project.
- Ah al hit iwrath *on other*  
 Sone ther after.  
*Lazamon*, l. 21005.
- Ac* *Florice* thought *al another*.  
*Flor. and Blauncheft.* ap. Ellis, M. R. V. 3, p. 125, ed. 1803.  
 (Cf. *Horn*, ed. Lumby, p. 52, l. 32.)
- Anuye*, *v.* Fr. to trouble, weary, 1735; R. Gl., K. Alisaund. 876; Chauc. *Melibeus*. *Noye*, Lynds. Gl. q. v.
- Are*, *adj.* S. former, 27. Cf. *are*, *adv.*, Sir Tr. p. 32; Rits. M. R., Web., R. Gl., R. Br., Minot. p. 31. *Air*, *Ayr*, Sc. V. Jam. See *Er*, *Or*.
- Aren*, 1 and 3 *p. pl.* S. *are*, 619, 1321, &c. *Arn*, Chauc.
- Arke*, *n.* S. Lat. a chest or coffer, 2018. R. Br., Jam.
- Armes*, *n. pl.* Lat. arms, armor, 2605, 2613, 2925.
- Arum* for *Arm*, 1982, 2408.

Arwe, S. [*earg*] timid, 2115.

Alter the punctuation, and read—

He calde bope arwe me~~n~~ and kene,

Knithes and serganz swi~~p~~e sleie.

“Arwe or ferefulle. *Timidus*.”

Prompt. Parv. Cf. Stille, q. v.

As for Has, 1174.

Asayleden, *pa. t. pl.* Fr. assailed, 1862.

Asken, *n. pl.* S. ashes, 2841.

*Aske*, R. Gl. *Askes*, R. Br. *Ashen*,

Chauc. *Assis*, Doug.

Astirte, *pa. t.* leaped, 893. *Astert*,

King's Quair, ap. Jam. See Stirt.

At, *prep.* S. of or to, 1387. Yw.

and Gaw. (Rits.) 963. Still existing in Scotland.

At-sitte, *v.* S. contradict. oppose, 2200. It corresponds with the term *with-sitten*, 1683. In R. Gl. it is used synonymously with *at-stonde*.

For ther nas so god knygt non no  
-wer a-boute France,

That in joustes scholde *at-sitte* the  
dynt of ys lance.—p. 137.

See Sat.

Aucte, Auchte, Auhte, Authe, *n.*  
S. possessions, 531, 1223, 1410,  
2215.

And alle the *æhten* of mine londe.

*Lazamon*, l. 25173.

*Aughtte*, K. Alisaund. 6884. *Aucht*,  
Doug. Virg. 72, 4; Lynds. Gl.

Aucte, Auht, Auhte, *v. imp.*  
(originally *pa. t.* of Aw, or Owe)  
S. [*agan, ahte*] ought, 2173, 2787,  
2800. *Aught*, Sir Tr. p. 44. *Ohte*,  
K. Horn, 418. *Aght*, Yw. and  
Gaw. 3229. *Aute*, R. Gl. *Aught*,  
Chauc. Troil. 3, 1501. *Aucht*,  
Doug. Virg. 110, 33.

Aute, Awete, (*pa. t.* of the same  
verb), possessed, 207, 743. *Aught*,  
Sir Tr. p. 182. Ly Beaus Desc.  
1027. *Oght*, Le bone Flor. 650.  
*Auht*, R. Br. p. 126; Wynt., Lynds.  
Gl.

Aueden. See Haueden.

Aunlaz, *n.* Anelace, 2554. “A

kind of knife or dagger, usually  
worn at the girdle.” Tyrw. note  
on Chauc. l. 359. So in Matth.  
Paris, “Genus cultelli, quod vul-  
gariter *Anelacius* dicitur.” V. Gl.  
in voc. and Todd's Gl. to Illustr. of  
Chauc. In *Sir Gawain and Sir*  
*Galoran*, ii. 4, an *unlas* signifies a  
sharp spike fixed in the chanfron  
of a horse. Probably from the  
Francic *Anelaz*, *Analeze*. V. Jam.

Auter, *n.* Fr. Lat. altar, 389,  
1386, 2373. Sir Tr. p. 61, Octo-  
vian, 1312, R. Br., Chauc. *Auter*,  
Barb.

Ax, *n.* S. axe, 1776, 1894.

Ay, *adv.* S. ever, aye, always,  
159, 946, 1201, &c. *Ae*, Sc. V.  
Jam.

Ayen. See Agen.

Ayper, *pron.* S. [*Ægþer*] either,  
each, 2665. *Eper*, 1882. *Athir*,  
Sc. V. Jam. See Other.

Awe, *v.* S. to owe, own, possess,  
1292. It may also very possibly be  
a corruption of *Have*. Cf. ll. 1188,  
1298.

Bac, *n.* S. back, 1844, 1950, &c.;  
*backes*, pl. 2611.

Baldelike, *adv.* S. boldly, 53.  
*Baldeliche*, R. Glouc. *Baldely*, R.  
Br., Minot, p. 20.

Bale, *n.* S. sorrow, misery, 327.

Bar. See Beren.

Baret, *n.* (O. Fr. *barat*, Isl. *bar-atta*) contest, hostile contention,  
1932.

Ther nis *baret*, nothir strif,  
Nis ther no deth, ac euer lif.

*Land of Cokaygne*, ap. Hickes,  
Thes. 1, p. 231.

In alle this *barette* the kyng and  
Sir Symon Tille a lokyng tham  
sette, of the prince suld it be don.  
*R. Brunne*, p. 216. Cf. p. 274.

That mekill bale and *barete* till  
Ynglande sall bryngc. *Aventyrs*  
of *Arthure*, st. 23.

- Barfot, *adj.* S. barefoot, 862.
- Barnage, *n.* Fr. barons or noblemen collectively. baronage, 2947. Yw. and Gaw. 1258. Wcb. Doug. Virg. 314, 48.
- Barre, *n.* Fr. bar of a door, 1794, 1811, 1827. Synonymous with Dore-tre, *q. v.* Chauc. C. T. 552.
- Barw. *See* Berwen.
- Bape, *adj.* S. both, 1336, 2543. *Bethe*, 694, 1680.
- Be. *See* Ben.
- Be-bedde, *v.* S. to provide with a bed, 421.
- Bede, *n.* S. prayer, 1385.
- Bede, *v.* S. to order, to bid, 668, 2193, 2396; to offer, 1665, 2084, 2172. *Beden*, *pa. t. pl.* offered, 2774, 2780. *Bedes*, bids, 2392. Of common occurrence in both senses. *See* Bidd.
- Bedden, *v.* S. to bed, put to bed, 1235. *Bedded*, *Beddeth*, *part. pa.* put to bed, 1128, 2771.
- Bedels, *n. pl.* S. beadles, 266. V. Spelm. in *v. Bedellus*, and Blount, *Joc. Ten.* p. 120, ed. 1784.
- Beite, Beyte, *v.* to bait, to set dogs on, 1840, 2330, 2440. *Bayte*, R. Br. From the Isl. *Beita*, incitare; Su. Goth. *Beita biorn*, to bait the bear. V. Jam. and Thomson's Etymons.
- Bem. *See* Sunne-bem.
- Ben, *v.* S. to be, 19, 905, 1006, &c. *Ben*, *pr. t. pl.* are, 1787, 2559. *Be*, *Ben*, *part. pa.* been, 1428, 2799. *Bes*, *Beth*, *imp.* and *fut.* be, shall be, 1261, 1744, 2007, 2246. *Lat be*, 1265, 1657, leave, relinquish, a common phrase in the Old Romances. *Lat abee*, Sc. V. Jam.
- Benes, *n. pl.* S. beans, 769.
- Beneysun, *n.* Fr. blessing, benediction. 1723. R. Br., Web., Chauc. C. T. 9239. Lynds. Gl.
- Bere, *n.* S. bear, 573, 1838, 1840, 2448.
- Bere, Beren, *v.* S. to bear, to carry, 581, 762, 805. *Ber*, 2557; *Bar*, *pa. t.* bore, 557, 815, 877. *Bere*, 974. *Beres*, *pr. t. pl.* bear, 2323.
- Bermen, *n. pl.* S. bar-men, porters to a kitchen, 868, 876, 885. The only author in which this term has been found is Lazamon, in the following passages :  
Vs selve we habbet cokes,  
to queechen to cuchene,  
Vs sulue we habbet *bermen*,  
& birls inowe.—l. 3315.  
Weoren in peos kinges cuchene  
twa hundred cokes,  
& ne mæi na man tellen  
for alle þa *bermannen*.—l. 8101.
- Bern, *n.* S. child, 571. *Burn*, *bearne*, R. Br. *Bairn*, Sc.
- Berwen, *v.* S. [*beorgan*] to defend, preserve, guard, 697, 1426; *burwe*, 2870. *Barw*, *pa. t.* 2022, 2679. The original word is found in Beowulf :  
Scyld-weall gebearg  
Lif and lîce.  
(The shield-wall defended  
Life and body.)—l. 5134.  
So in K. Horn, MS. Laud. 108.  
At more ich wile the serue,  
And fro sorwe the *berwe*.—f. 224b,  
c. 2.
- Bes. *See* Ben.
- Bes for Best, 354.
- Best, Beste, *n.* Fr. beast, 279, 574, 944, 2691.
- Bete, *v.* S. [*bedtan*] to beat, fight, 1899, 2664, 2763. *Beten*, *pa. t. pl.* beat, struck, 1876. Chauc. C. T. 4206, to which Tyrwh. gives a Fr. derivation.
- Betere, *adv. comp.* S. better, 1758.
- Beye, *v.* S. to buy, 53, 1654. *Byen*, 1625.



Beyes, *pr. t.* for Abeyes, S. suffers, or atones for, 2460.

His deth thou *bist* to night,  
Mi fo. *Sir Tristr.* p. 146.

We shulden alle deye  
Thy fader deth to *beye*.  
*K. Horn*, 113.

An of yow schall *bye* thys blunder.  
*Le bone Flor.* 1330.

See Jam. in v. Aby. Web. Gl. and Lynds. Gl.; also Nares, v. Bye.

Bicomen, *pa. t. pl.* became, 2257;  
*part. pa.* become, 2264. *Bicomes*,  
*imp. pl.* become (ye), 2303.

Bidd, Bidde, *v. S.* offer, 484,  
2530; order, bid, 529, 1733. *Ut*  
*bidde*, 2548, order out. *Biddes*,  
*pr. t.* bids, orders, 1232. *Bidde*,  
to ask, 910. R. Glouc., Lynds.  
Gl. See Bede.

Bidene, *adv.* forthwith, 730,  
2841.

"Rohand told anon  
His aventours *al bidene*."  
*Sir Tr.* p. 45.

From Du. *bij dien*, by that.

Bifalle, *v. S.* to happen, befall,  
2981. Bifel, *pa. t.* 824. *Fel*, 1009;  
appertained, 2359.

Biforn, *prep. S.* (1) before, 1022,  
1034, 1364, &c.; *bifor*, 1357; *bifo-*  
*ren*, 1695; (2) in front of, 2406;  
*bifor*, 1812.

Bigan, *pa. t.* began, 1357. *Bi-*  
*gunnen*, *pl.* 1011, 1302. *Biginnen*,  
*pr. t. pl.* begin, 1779.

Bihalue, *v. S.* to divide into two  
parts, or companies, 1834. *Halue*  
occurs as a *noun* in Chauc. Troil.  
4, 945.

Bihel for Beheld, 1645. *Bihel-*  
*den*, *pa. t. pl.* beheld, 2148.

Bihetet, *pa. t. S.* promised, 677.  
*Bihight*, *Sir Tr.* p. 105. *Behet*, *Bi-*  
*het*, R. Gl. *Be-hette*, R. Br. *Be-*  
*hete*, Web., Rits. M. R. *Behighte*,  
Chauc.

Bihoten, *part. pa.* promised, 564.  
*Behighte*, Chauc.

Bihoue, *n. S.* behoof, advantage,  
1764. R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc.

Bikenneth, *pa. t. S.* betokens,  
1268. *Bikenne*, R. Br.

Bileue, *imp.* tarry, remain, 1228.

Bilefte, *pa. t.* remained, 2963. From  
*v. S. belifan*, to be left behind.

Winde thai hadde as thai wolde,  
A lond *bilafst* he.

*Sir Tristr.* p. 29. Cf. pp. 38, 60.

He schal wiþ me *bileue*,  
Til hit beo nir eue.

*K. Horn*, ed. Lumby, 363.

Horn than, withouten lesing,  
*Bilafst* at hom for blode-leteing.

*Horn Childe*, ap. Rits. M. R. V.  
3, p. 298.

Sojourn with us evermo,  
I rede thee, son, that it be so.  
Another year thou might over-fare,  
But thou *bileve*, I die with care.

*Guy of Warw.* ap. Ellis, M. R.  
V. 2, p. 23.

See also the Gl. to R. Gl., R. Br.  
and Web., to which add *Emare*,  
496, and Gower, Conf. Am. This  
is sufficient authority for the read-  
ing adopted in the text, and it  
may hence be reasonably ques-  
tioned, whether *bilened* in Lye, and  
*belenes* in *Sir Gawan* and *Sir Ga-*  
*loran*, i. 6, quoted by Jamieson in  
v. Belene, be not the fault of the  
scribe, or of the Editors.

Bimene, *v. S.* mean, 1259.

Binden, *v. S.* to bind, 1961.

Used passively, 2820, as *Bynde*, 42.

*Bounden*, *pa. t. pl.* 2442. *Bunden*,  
2506. *Bounden*, *part. pa.* 545.  
*Bunden*, 1428.

Binne, *adv. S.* within, 584. *Byn*,  
Rits. M. R. *But and ben*, Doug.,  
Virg., 123, 40; without and with-  
in. V. Jam., in v. Ben.

Birde. See Birpe.

Birpe (*should rather be birþ*),  
3 p. s. pres. it behoves, 2101.  
*Hence* birde, 3 p. s. pt. t. behoved,  
2761. A.S. *byrian*, *gebyrian*, to fit,  
suit, be to one's taste. See *Buren*  
in Stratmann.



Birþene, *n.* S. burden, 900, 902.

Bise, *n.* Fr. a north wind. *Bise traverse*, a north-west or north-east wind. *Cotgr.*

Après grant joie vient grant ire,  
Et après Noel vent bise.

*Rom. de Renart*, 13648.

The term is still in common use.

Biseken, *v.* S. to beseech, 2994.

Biswike, *part. pa.* S. cheated, deceived, 1249.

Hu þu biswikest  
Monine mon.

*Lazam.* l. 3412.

*Byswike*, K. Horn, 296; Yw. and Gaw. 2335. *Biswike*, R. Br. *Be-swyke*, R. Cœur de L. 5918.

Bitaken, *v.* S. [*bitécān*, *técān*] to commit, deliver, give in charge, 1226. *Bitechen*, 203, 384, 395. *Bi-teche*, *pr. sing.* 384; *imp. sing.* 395. *Lazam.* 5316. *Bitake*, Sir Tr. p. 87. *Byteche*, K. Horn, 577. *Biteche*, Web. *Betake*, *Beteche*, Chauc., Barb., Wall. *Bitauhte*, *pa. t.* delivered, 206, 558. *Bitauhte*, 2212, 2317, 2957. *Bitawchte*, 1224. *Bitarte*, 1408. *Tauhte*, 2214. *Bitæht*, *Bitachet*, *Lazam.* *Bitought*, Sir Tr. p. 85. *Bitoke*, K. Horn, 1103. *Betok*, Ly Beaus Desc. 82. *Betauht*, *bitauht*, *tauht*, *biteched*, R. Br. *Bitake*, R. Gl. *Betake*, Sir Guy. *Betaught*, Chauc. *Be-tauht*, Doug., Lynds.

Bite, *v.* S. to taste, drink, 1731.

Horn toc hit hise yfere,  
Ant seide, Quene, so dere,  
No beer nullich bite,  
Bote of coppe white.

*K. Horn* (Ritson), 1129.

Bip for By the, 474. Cf. l. 2470.

Bituene, Bitwenen, Bitwene, *prep.* S. between, 748, 2668, 2967.

Blac, *adj.* S. black, 555, 1008. *Pl. Blake*, 1909, 2181, &c.

Blakne, *v.* S. to blacken in the face, grow angry, 2165.

And Arthur sæt ful stille,  
ænne stunde he wes *blac*,  
and on heuwe swithe wak,  
ane while he wes reod.

*Lazam.* l. 19887.

Tho Normans were sorie, of con-  
tenance gan *blaken*.

*R. Brunne*, p. 183.

Blawe, *v.* S. to blow, 587. *Blou*, *imp.* blow, 585.

Blede, *v.* S. to bleed, 2403.

Bleike, *pl. adj.* bleak, pale, wan, 470. A.S. *blác*, bleak, Su.-G. *blek*.

Blenkes, *n. pl.* blinks, winks of the eye, in derision, 307. R. Br. p. 270; Sc. V. Jam. Suppl. Derived from S. *blīcan*, Su.-G. *blænka*, Belg. *blencken*, to glance. See Gl. Lynds.

Blinne, *v. n.* S. to cease, 2367, 2374. Sir Tr. p. 26; Rits. M. R. Web., R. Gl., Chauc.; so in Sc. V. Jam. Gl. Lynds. *Blinne*, *pa. t. pl.* ceased, 2670. *Blinmeth*, *pr. t.* ceases, 329.

Blissed, *part. pa.* S. blessed, 2873.

Bliþe, *adj.* S. happy, 632, 651.

Blome, *n.* S. bloom, flower, 63.

Bloute, *adj.* soft, 1910. Sw. *blöt*, soft, pulpy.

Bode, *n.* S. command, 2200, 2567. Sir Tr. p. 121, Web.

Bok, *n.* S. book, 1173, 1418, &c. See Messe-bok.

Bole, *n.* [Isl. *bolli*, W. *bwla*. Cf. A.S. *bulluca*] bull, 2438. *Boles*, *pl.* 2330.

Bon, Bone. See O-bone.

Bondemen, *n. pl.* S. husbandmen, 1016, 1308. R. Gl.

Bone, *n.* S. [*bén*] boon, request, 1659. Sir Tr. p. 31, and all the Gloss.

Bor, *n.* S. boar, 1867, 1989. *Bores*, *pl.* 2331.

Bord, *n.* S. (1) table, 1722, K. Horn, 259; Rits. M. R., Web.,

- Chauc.; (2) a board, 2106. *See* the note on l. 2076.
- Boren, *part. pa.* S. born, 1878.
- Boru, *n.* S. borough, 773, 847, 1014, 1757, 2086, 2826. *Borwes*, *pl.* 1293, 1444, 1630. *Burwes*, 55, 2277. Sir Tr. pp. 12, 99. Chalmers is certainly mistaken when he says it does not signify *boroughs*, but *castles*. Introd. Gl. p. 200. In *Lazamon* the word is always clearly distinguished from *castle*, as it is in many other writers. V. Spelm. in v. *Burgus*.
- Bote, *adv.* S. but, only, 721. *See* But.
- Bote, *n.* S. remedy, help, 1200. *Lazam.*, Sir Tr. p. 93; Web., Rits. M. R., Rob. Gl., R. Br., Minot, Chauc., Doug., Lynds. Gl.
- Bopen, *adj. pl.* S. both, 173, 697, 958; *g. c.* of both, 2223.
- Bounden, Bunden. *See* Binden.
- Bour, Boure, Bowr, *n.* S. [*búr*] chamber, 239, 2072, 2076, &c. In *Beowulf* the apartment of the women is called *Bryd-bur*; l. 1846.  
Ygarne beh to *bure*  
& lætte bed him makien.  
*Lazam.* l. 19042.
- Honder hire *boures* wowe, *K. Horn*, 982, MS., where Rits. Ed. reads *chambre wowe*. Cf. Sir Tr. p. 114; Rits. M. R., Web., R. Br., Doug., V. Jam. *See* note on l. 2076.
- Bouthe, *pa. t.* S. bought, 875, 968. Cf. Sir Tr. p. 104.
- Bouth, *part. pa.* bought, 883.
- Boyes, *n. pl.* S. boys, men, 1899.
- Brayd, *pa. t.* S. (1) started, 1282. Chauc., Gaw. and Gal. iii. 21; R. Hood, ii. p. 83; (2) drew out, 1825, a word particularly applied to the action of drawing a sword from the scabbard.  
Sone his sweord he ut *abræid*.  
*Lazam.* l. 26533.
- Cf. Am. and Amil. 1163; Sir Ferumbras, ap. Ellis, M. R. V. 2, p. 387. Rauf Coilzear, ap. Laing, and Wall. i. 223.
- Brede, *n.* S. bread, 98. *Bred*, 1879.
- Breken, *v.* S. to break, 914. *Broken*, *pa. t. pl.* broke, 1238.
- Brennen, Brenne, *v.* S. to burn, 916. 1162; Rits. M. R., Rob. Gl., R. Br., Chauc. *Brenden*, *pa. t. pl.* burnt, 594, 2125. *Brend*, *part. pa.* burnt, 2832, 2841, &c. Sir Tr. p. 93.
- Brenne. *See* On brenne.
- Brigge, *n.* S. bridge, 875. Sir Tr. p. 148. Still used in Sc. and N. E.
- Brihte. *See* Brith.
- Brim, *adj.* S. furious, raging, 2233; R. Br. p. 244; Chauc. Rom. Rose, 1836. *Breme*, Rits. M. R. It originally signified the sea itself, and was afterwards used for the raging of the sea, *Beowulf*, l. 56; Compl. of Scotland, p. 62. V. Jam.
- Bringe, Bringen, *v.* S. to bring, 72, 185, &c.
- Brini, Brinie, *n.* S. [*Mæso-Goth. brunjo*] cuirass, 1775, 2358, 2551. *Brinies*, *pl.* 2610. Sir Tr. p. 20. *Burne*, *Lazam.* *Brenye*, *K. Horn*, 719, MS. *See* Merriek's Gl. to Ess. on Anc. Armor. The *Brini* then worn was of *mail*, as appears from l. 2740, *Of his brinie ringes mo*. Hence in *Beowulf* it is termed *Bræostnet*, l. 3100; *Here-net*, 3110; *Hringedbyrne*, 2495. So in the French *K. Horn*, MS. Douce, *Mes vnc de sun halberc mæle ne falsa*. *See* Rits. Gl. M. R.
- Brisen, *v.* S. to bruise, beat, 1835. *See* To-Brised.
- Brith, *adj.* S. bright, 589, 605, &c. *Brihte*, 2610. *Bryth*, 1252. *Brithter*, *comp.* brighter, 2141.
- Brittene, *part. pa.* S. destroyed, 2700; R. Br. p. 244. *Pistill of Sussan*, ap. Laing. In Doug., Virg. pp. 76, 5; 296, 1, the verb has the sense of *to kill*, which it

- may also bear here. See *Bruten* in *Will. of Palerne*.
- Brod, *adj.* S. broad, 1647.
- Broucte, *pa. t. and pp.* brought, 767. *Brouht*, 1979. *Broute*, 2868. *Brouth*, 336, 64. *Browt*, 2412. *Browth*, 2052. *Brouct of line*, 513, 2412, dead. *Brouthen*, *pl.* brought, 2791.
- Brouke, 1 *p. pres. sing.* S. brook, enjoy, use, 311, 1743, 2545 (cf. *Ch. Non. Pr. Ta.* 480).  
So *brouke* thou thi croune!  
*K. Horn*, 1041.
- Cf. Rits. Gl. M. R., Rich. C. de Lion, 4578; Chauc. C. T. 10182, 15306, R. Hood, V. i. 48, II. 112; Lynds. Gl. Percy, A. R. In Sc. *Bruike*. With these numerous instances before him, it is inconceivable how Jamieson, except from a mere love of his own system, should write: 'There is no evidence that the Engl. *brook* is used in this sense, signifying only to bear, to endure.'
- Broys, *n.* S. broth, 924. *Brouwys*, R. Cœur de L. 3077; Sc. V. Jam. and Brockett's North country words, v. *Brewis*; also Nares. Sc. *brose*.
- Brune, *adj. pl.* S. brown, 2181, 2249.
- Bulder, *adj. or n.* 1790. In the north a *Boother* or *Boulder*, is a hard flinty stone, rounded like a bowl. Brockett's Gl. So also in Grose, *Boulder*, a large round stone. *Boulders*, Marsh. Midl. Count. Gl. The word has a common origin with Isl. *ballaðr*, Fr. *boulet*, Sc. *boule*, in Doug. V. Jam.
- Bunden. See Binden.
- Burgeys, *n.* S. burgess, 1328. *Burgeis*, 2466, *pl.* 2012. *Burgmen*, 2049. *Burhmen*, *Borkmen*, *Lazamon*, V. Spelm. in v. *Burgarii*.
- Burwe. See Berwen.
- Burwes. See Boru.
- But, Bute, *conj.* S. except, unless, 85, 690, 1149, 1159, 2022, 2031, 2727. *But on*, 535, 962, except. *Butand*, Sc. *But yf*, 2972, unless. [It should be noted that *but on* should properly be *one* word, being the A. S. *búton* or *bútan*, except. But it is written as two words in the MS.]
- But, *n.* 1040. Probably the same as *Put*, q. v. The word *Bout* is derived from the same source.
- But, *part. pa.* contended, struggled with each other (*or perhaps* struck, thrust, pushed), 1916. *Buttinge*, *part. pr.* striking against with force, 2322. From the Fr. *Bouter*, Belg. *Botten*, to impel, or drive forward. V. Jam. Suppl. in v. *Butte*, and *Butt* in Wedgwood.
- Butte, *n.* a flounder or plaice, 759. Du. *bot*. See Halliwell.
- Byen. See Beye.
- Bynde. See Binden.
- Bynderes, *n. pl.* S. binders, robbers who bind, 2050.
- Caliz, *n.* S. chalice, 187, 2711.  
Lunet than riche relikes toke,  
The *chalis* and the mes boke.  
*Yw. and Gaw.* 3907.
- Callen, *v.* S. to call, 747, 2899.
- Cam. See Komen.
- Canst, *pr. t.* S. knowest, 846. *Cone*, 622, *canst*. *Kunne*, *pl.* 435. V. Gl. Chauc. in v. *Conne*. Jam. and Gl. Lynds. See Couthe.
- Carl, *n.* S. churl, slave, villain, 1789. *Cherl*, 682, 684, 2533. *Cherles*, *g. c.* churl's, 1092. *Cherles*, *pl.* villains, bondsmen. 262, 620. Sir Tr. p. 39; V. Spelm. in v. *Ceorlus*, and Jam. and Gl. Lynds.
- Casten. See Kesten.
- Catel, *n.* Fr. chattels, goods, 225, 2023, 2515, 2906, 2939. Web. Gl., R. Br., P. Plowm., Chauc.
- Nowe hath Benis the treasure wone,  
Through Arundell that wyll runne,



Wherefore with that and other *catel*,  
He made the castel of Arundel.

*Syr Bevis*, O. iii.

Cauenard, *n.* Fr. [*cagnard caignard*] a term of reproach, originally derived from the Lat. *canis*, 2339.  
V. Roquef. Menage.

This crokede *caynard* sore he is adred.

Rits. A.S. p. 36.

Sire *olde kaynard*, is this thin aray?

Chauc. C. T. 5817.

Cayser, Caysere, *n.* Lat. emperor,  
977, 1317, 1725. *Kaysere*, 353.

Cerges, *n. pl.* Fr. wax tapers, 594.  
*Serges*, 2125. Chauc. Rom. R.  
6251: V. Le Grand. *Vie privee des F.*; V. 3, p. 175.

Chaffare, *n.* S. merchandise, 1657.  
R. Cœur de L. 2468, R. Gl., Sir  
Ferumbras, ap. Ellis, M. R. V. 2,  
p. 412, Chauc., R. Hood, i. 87.  
*Chaffery*, Sc. V. Lynds. Gl.

Cham for Came, 1873.

Chanbioun, *n.* Fr. champion,  
1007. Sir Tr. p. 97. *Channpionns*,  
*pl.* 1015, 1031, 1055; V. Spelm.  
in v. *Campio*. Cf. A.S. *cempa*.

Chapmen, *n. pl.* S. merchants,  
51, 1639; R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc.  
In Sc. pedlars. V. Jam., and Gl.  
Lynds.

Charbucle, *n.* Fr. Lat. a carbuncle,  
2145. *Charboele*, Syr Bevis. *Char-*  
*bokull*, Le bone Flor. 390. *Char-*  
*boucle*, Chauc. C. T. 13800. *Char-*  
*bukill*, Doug. Virg. 3, 10.

Cherl. See Carl.

Chesen, *v.* S. to choose, select,  
2147. Sir Tr. p. 27; K. Horn,  
666; Rits. M. R., Web., R. Br.,  
Chauc., V. Jam. in v. *Cheis*.

Chinche, *adj.* Fr. niggardly,  
penurious, 1763, 2941.

Bothe he was scars, and *chinche*.

*The Seryn Sayes*, 1244.

So in Chauc. Rom. Rose, 5998,  
and Gower, *Conf. Am.* 109 b.

Chiste, *n.* S. Lat. chest, 222.

*Kiste*, 2018. *Kist*, Yorksh. and  
Sc.; V. Jam. and Lynds. Gl.

Citte, *pa. t.* S. cut, 942. *Kit*,  
Web. M. R. *Kyt*, Syr Eglam. B.  
iv. *Kette*, Syr Bevis, C. iii. So  
Chauc. C. T. 6304.

Claddes, *pa. t.* 2 p. S. claddest,  
2907.

Clapte, *pa. t.* S. struck, 1814,  
1821.

Clare, *n.* Fr. spiced wine, 1728.  
See Claret in Prompt. Parv.

Clef, *pa. t.* S. cleft, 2643, 2730.

Cleue, *n.* S. dwelling, 557, 596.  
A.S. *cleofa*.

Cleuen, *v.* S. to cleave, cut, 917.

Clothe, Clothen, *v.* S. to clothe,  
1138, 1233. In l. 1233, Garnett  
suggests that *cloþen* may be a *nom.*  
*pl.* = clothes. If so, *dele* the  
comma after it.

Clutes, *n. pl.* S. clouts, shreds of  
cloth, 547. *Clottys*, Hunting of the  
hare, 92. Cf. Chauc. C. T. 9827,  
and *Clut* in Bosworth.

Clyueden, *pa. t. pl.* S. cleaved,  
fastened, 1300.

Cok, *n.* Lat. cook, 967. *Kok*,  
903, 921, 2898. *Cokes*, *Kokes*, *g. c.*  
cook's, 1123, 1146.

Comen, Comes, Cometh. See  
Komen.

Cone. See Canst.

Conestable, *n.* Fr. constable, 2286.  
*Conestables*, *pl.* 2366.

Conseyl, *n.* Fr. counsel, 2862.

Copes. See Kope.

Corporaus, *n.* Fr. Lat. the fine  
linen wherein the sacrament is put,  
188; Cotgr. V. Du Cange, and  
Jam. in v. *Corperale*.

After the relies they send;

The *corporas*, and the mass-gear,

On the handon [halidom?] they  
gun swear,

With wordes free and hend.

*Guy of Warw.* ap. Ellis,  
M. R. V. 2, p. 77.

- Corune, *n.* Lat. crown, 1319, 2944.
- Coruning, *n.* Lat. coronation, 2948.
- Cote, *n.* S. cot, cottage, 737, 1141.
- Couel, *n.* coat, garment, 768, 858, 1144. *Cunel*, 2904. *Kouel*, 964. The word is connected with A.S. *cufle*, *cugele*, a cowl.
- Couere, *v.* Fr. to recover, 2040. And prayde to Marie bryght, *Kevere* hym of hys care. *Ly Beaus Desc.* 1983. Hyt wolde *covyr* me of my care. *Erle of Tol.* 381.
- Coupe, *v.* buy, buy dearly, get in exchange, 1800. *Ieel. kaupā.*
- Couth. *See* Quath.
- Coupe, *pa. t.* of Conne, *v. aux.* S. knew, was able, could, 93, 112, 194, 750, 772. *Koupen*, *pl.* 369. More he *coulthe* of veneri, Than *couth* Manerions. *Sir Tristr.* p. 24. *See* Canst.
- Crake, Crakede. *See* Kraken.
- Crauede, *pa. t.* S. craved, asked, 633.
- Crice, *n.* explained to mean *rima podicis* in Coleridge's Glossarial Index, 2450. Cf. A.S. *crecca*. *Ieel. kryki*, a corner. In Barb. x. 602, *crykes* is used for *angles*, corners. *See* Krike.
- Crist, *n.* Lat. Gr. Christ, 16, &c. *Cristes*, *g. c.* 153. *Kristes*, 2797.
- Croiz, *n.* Fr. Lat. cross, 1263, 1268, 1358, &c. *Croice*, *Sir Tr.* p. 115.
- Croud, *part. pa.* crowded, oppressed (?) 2338. K. Alisaund, 609. Cf. A.S. *crydan*, *p. p. gecróden*.
- Croun, Croune, *n.* Fr. crown, head, 568, 902, 2657. *Crune*, 1814, 2734. *Fykenildes croune* He fel ther doune. *K. Horn*, 1509.
- Cf. K. of Tars, 631; Le bone Flor. 92, and Erle of Tol. 72.
- Cruhse. *See* To-cruhse.
- Crus, brisk, nimble, 1966. It is the Sw. *krus*, excitable, Sc. *crouse*. *See* *Crouse* in Atkinson's Cleveland Glossary.
- Cunriche, *n.* S. kingdom, 2318. *Kinneriche*, 976. *Kuneriche*, 2400. *Kunerike*, 2804. *Kunrik*, 2143. In the last instance it means a *mark of royalty*, or *monarchy*. Web. *Kyngriche*, *Kynryche*.
- Curt, *n.* Fr. court, 1685.
- Curteys, Curteyse, *ulj.* Fr. courteous, 2875, 2916.
- Cunel. *See* Couel.
- Dam, *n.* 2468, here used in a reproachful sense, but apparently from the same root as the Fr. *Dam*, *Damp*, *Dan*, and *Don*, i.e. from *Dominus*.
- Dame, *n.* Fr. Lat. mistress, lady, 558, 1717. V. Gl. Chauc.
- Danshe, *n. pl.* Danish men, 2689, 2945, &c. *See* Denshe.
- Datheit, *interj.* 296, 300, 926, 1125, 1887, 1914, 2047, 2447, 2511. *Datheyit*, 1799, 1995, 2601, 2757. An interjection or imprecation, derived from the Fr. *Deshait*, *dehait*, *dehet*, explained by Barbazan and Roquefort, *affliction*, *malheur*; [possibly from *haïr*, to hate]. It may be considered equivalent to Cursed! Ill betide! In the old Fables it is used often in this sense: *Fils à putain*, fet-il, leehiere, Vo jouglerie m'est trop chiere, *Dehait* qui vous i aporta, Par mon chief il le comparra. *De S. Pierre et du Jogleor*, 381. The term was very early engrafted on the Saxon phraseology. Thus in the *Disputation of Ane Hule and a Nȳtingale*, l. 99. *Dahet* habbe that ilke best, That fuleth his owe nest!



- It occurs also frequently in the Old English Romances. *See* Sir Tristr. pp. 111, 191; Horn Childe, ap. Rits. V. 3, p. 290; Amis and Amil. 1569; Seryn Sages, 2395; R. Brunne, where it is printed by Hearne *Dayet*. To this word, in all probability, we are indebted for the modern imprecation of *Dase you! Dise you! Dash you!* still preserved in many counties, and in Scotland. V. Jam. Suppl. v. *Dash you*.
- Dawes, *n. pl.* S. days, 27, 2344, 2950. *Dayes*, 2353.
- Ded, Dede, *n. S.* death, 149, 167, 332, 1687, 2719, &c.
- Ded, *part. pa.* S. dead, 2007.
- Dede, *n. S.* deed, action, 1356.
- Dede, Deden, Dedes. *See* Do.
- Deide. *See* Deye.
- Del, *n. S.* deal, part, 218, 818, 1070, &c. Web., R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc. *Deil*, Sc. V. Jam.
- Deled, *part. pa.* S. distributed, 1736. *See* To-deyle.
- Demen, *v. S.* to judge, pass judgment, 2467. *Deme. Demen, pr. t. pl.* judge, 2476, 2812. *Demden, pa. t. pl.* judged. 2820, 2833. *Demd, part. pa.* judged, 2488, 2765, 2838.
- Denshe, *adj.* Danish, 1403, 2575, 2693. *See* Danshe.
- Deplike, *adj. S.* deeply, 1417. Synonymous with *Grundlike*, q. v.
- Dere, *n. S.* dearth, scarcity, 824, 841. R. Gl. p. 416.
- Dere, *adv. S.* dearly, 1637, 1638.
- Dere, *v. S.* to harm, injure, 490, 574, 806, 2310. *Dereth, pr. t.* injures, 648. K. Horn, 148; R. Br. p. 107; K. of Tars, 192; Chauc. *Deir*, Sc. Doug. Virg. 413, 52; Lynds. Gl.
- Dere, *adj. S.* dear, 1637, 2170, &c.
- Deuel, *n. S.* devil, 446, 496, 1188. *Deueles, g. c.* devil's, 1409.
- Deus. This is undoubtedly the vocative case of the Lat. *Deus*, used as an interjection, 1312, 1650, 1930, 2096, 2114. "Its use was the same in French as in English. Thus in King Horn:
- Enuers Den en sun quer a fait grant clamur,  
Ohi, *Deus!* fait il, ki es uerrai creatur,  
Par ki deuse, &c.
- Harl. MS.* 527, f. 66 b. c. 2.
- It was probably introduced into the English language by the Normans, and its pronunciation remained the same as in the French. And gradde 'as armes,' for *Dovee* Mahons!—K. *Alisaunder*, 3674.
- It is curious to remark, that we have here the evident and simple etymology of the modern exclamation *Deuce!* for the derivation of which even the best and latest Lexicographers have sent us to the *Dusii* of St Augustine, the *Dues* of the Gothic nations, *Diis* of the Persians, *Teus* of the Armoricans, &c. Thomson very justly adds, that all these words, 'seem, like daemon, to have been once used in a good sense,' and in fact are probably all corruptions of the same root. Cf. R. Brunne, p. 254, and Gl. in v. *Deus*. For the first suggestion of this derivation the Editor is indebted to Mr Will. Nicol."—M.
- Deye, *v. S.* to die, 840. *Deide, pa. t. pl.* died, 402.
- Dide, Diden, Dides. *See* Do.
- Dike, *n. S.* ditch, 2435. *Dikes, pl.* 1923. N.E. and Sc., V. Jam. and Brockett.
- Dine, *n. S.* din, noise, 1860, 1868.
- Dinge, *v. S.* to strike, scourge, beat, 215, 2329. *Dong, pa. t.* struck, 1147. *Dungen, part. pa.* beaten, or scourged. 227. Sc. and N. E. *See* Jam. Gl., Lynds., and Ray.

- Dint, *n.* S. blow, stroke, 1807, 1817, 1969, &c. *Dent*, Sir Tr. p. 92; *Chauc.* *Dynt*, R. Br. *Dintes*, *pl.* 1437, 1862, 2665. *Dantes*, K. Horn, 865. *Dentys*, Rits. M. R. *Dyntes*, R. Gl. *Dintes*, Minot, p. 23; V. Gl. Lynds.
- Dunten, *pa. t. pl.* S. struck, beat, 2448.
- Do, Don, *v.* S. The various uses of this verb in English and Scotch, in an auxiliary, active, and passive sense, have been pointed out by Tyrwhitt, Essay on Vers. of Chauc. Note (37), Chalmers, Gl. Lynds. and Jamieson. It signifies: to do, *facere*, 117, 528, 1191; to cause, *efficere*, 611; *do casten*, 519; *do hem fle*, 2600, to put or place (used with *in* or *on*), 535, 577, &c. *Dones on* = *don es on* = do them on, put them on (*see Es*), 970. *Dos*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* dost, 2390. *Dos*, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* does, 1994, 2434, 2698. *Doth*, *Don*, *pr. t. pl.* do, 1838, 1840. *Doth*, *imp.* do, cause (ye), 2037. *Dos*, *imp. pl.* do ye, 2592. *Dede*, *Dide*, *pa. t.* caused, 658, 970, &c. *Dede*, *Dide*, *pa. t.* put, placed, 659, 709, 859. *Dedes*, *Dides*, *pa. t.* 2 *p.* didest, 2393, 2903. *Deden*, *Diden*, *pa. t. pl.* caused, 242; did, performed, 953, 1176, 2306. *Don*, *part. pa.* caused, 1169. *Don*, *part. pa.* done, 667. *Of line have do*, 1805, have slain.
- Dom, *n.* S. doom, judgment, 2473, 2487, 2813, &c. Sir Tr. p. 127.
- Dore, *n.* S. door, 1788.
- Dore-tre, *n.* S. bar of the door, 1806. *See Tre.*
- Douhter, *n.* S. daughter, 120, 2712. *Douthe*, 1079. *Douther*, 2867, 2914. *Douhtres*, *pl.* 350, 2982. *Douthres*, 2979. *Doutres*, 717.
- Doun. *See* Adoun.
- Doutede, *pa. t.* Fr. feared, 708.
- Douthe, *n.* Fr. fear, 1331, 1377.
- Douthe, *pa. t.* of Dow, *v. imp.* S. [*dugan*, *valere*, *prodesse*] was worth, was sufficient, availed, 703, 833, 1184. It is formed in the same manner as *Mouthe*, *Might*. *See* Sir Tr. p. 77; Jam. and Gl. Lynds. in *v.* Dow.
- Drad. *See* Dred.
- Drawe, Drawen. *See* Drou.
- Dred, *imp.* dread, fear (thou), 2168. *Dredden*, *Dredde*, *pa. t. pl.* dreaded, feared, 2289, 2568. *Drad*, *part. pa.* afraid, 1669. *See* Adrad.
- Drede, *n.* S. dread, 1169; doubt, anxiety, care, 828, 1664. *Chauc.*
- Dremede, *pa. t.* S. (used with *me*), dreamed, 1284, 1304.
- Dreinen, Drenchen, Drinchen, *v.* S. to drown, 553, 561, 583, 1416, 1424, &c. *Drenched*, *part. pa.* drowned, 520, 669, 1368, 1379. V. Gl. Web., R. Gl., Chauc.
- Dreng, *n.* *See* note on l. 31.
- Drepen, *v.* S. to kill, slay, 1783, 1865, &c. *Drepe*. would slay, 506. *Drop*, *pa. t.* killed, slew, 2229. Bosworth gives *drepan*, to slay. Cf. Sw. *dräpa*.
- Dreping, *n.* slaughter, 2684. Cf. A.S. *drepe*.
- Drinchen. *See* Dreinen.
- Drinken, *v.* S. to drink, 459, 800.
- Drinkes, *n. pl.* S. drinks, liquors, 1738.
- Drit, *n.* [Icel. *drítr*; Du. *dreet*] dirt, 682. A term expressing the highest contempt. K. Alisaund. 4718; Wickliffe. So, in an ancient metrical invective against Grooms and Pages, written about 1310,  
Thah he zeuc hem cattes *dryt* to  
huere companage,  
3et hym shulde arewen of the  
arrerge.
- MS. Harl. 2253, f. 125.  
Cf. Jam. Suppl. in *v.* *Dryte*, and Gl. Lynds.
- Driuende. *See* Drof.

- Drou, *p. t.* S. drew, 705, 719, &c. *Vt-drow*, *pa. t.* out-drew, 2632. *With-drow*, withdrew, 498; (*spelt* wit-drow), 502. *Drawe*, *Drawen*, *part. pa.* drawn, 1925, 2225, 2477, 2603, &c. *Ut-drawe*, *Ut-drawen*, out-drawn, 1802, 2631. *See* To-Drawe.
- Drof, *pa. t.* S. drove, 725; hastened, 1793, 1872. *Drivende*, *part. pr.* driving, riding quickly, 2702.
- Drurye, *n.* Fr. courtship, gallantry, 195. Web., Rits. M. R., P. Plowm., Chauc., Lynds.
- Dubbe, *v.* Fr. S. to dub, create a knight, 2012. *Dubbede*, *pa. t.* dubbed, 2314. *Dubban to ridere*, Chron. Sax. An. 1085, [1086]. *To cnihte hine dubben*, *Lazam.* l. 22497. "Hickes, Hearne, Gl. R. Gl., and Tyrwhitt, Gl. Chauc., all refer the word to the Saxon root, which primarily signified *to strike*, the same as the Isl. *at dubba*. Todd on the contrary, Gl. Illustr. Chauc., thinks this questionable, and refers to Barbazau's Gl. in *v.* *Adouber*, which is there derived from the Lat. *adaptare*. Du Cange and Dr Merriek give it also a Latin origin, from *Adoptare*, and by corruption *Adobare*."—M. The etymology is discussed in Wedgwood, s. *v.* *Dub*. *See* Note on l. 2314.
- Duelle, *v.* S. to dwell, give attention, 4.  
     A tale told Ysoude fre,  
     Thai *duelle* :  
     Tristrem that herd he.  
     *Sir Tristr.* p. 181.  
 Cf. Sir Otuel, l. 3, and Sevyng Sages, l. *Dwellen*, to dwell, remain, 1185; to delay, 1351. *Dwellen*, *pr. t. pl.* dwell, tarry, 1058. *Dwelleden*, *pa. t. pl.* dwelt, tarried, 1189.
- Dwelling, *n.* delay, 1352
- Dun. *See* Adoun.
- Dungen. *See* Dinge.
- Dursten, *pa. t. pl.* S. durst, 1866.
- Eie, *n.* S. eye, 2545. *Heie*, 1152. *Eyne*, *pl.* eyes, 680, 1273, 1364; *eyen*, 1340; *eyn*, 2171.
- Eir, *n.* Fr. Lat. heir, 410, 2539. *Eyr*, 110, 289, &c. Jam. gives it a Northern etymology, in *v.* *Ayr*.
- Ek, *conj.* S. [*eac*] eke, also, 1025, 1038, 1066, &c. *Ok* [Su.-G. *och*, Du. *ook*] 187, 200, 879, 1081, &c. V. Jam. in *v.* *Ac*.
- Eld, *adj.* S. old, 546. *Helde*, 2472. *Heldeste*, *sup.* 1396.
- Elde, *n.* S. age, 2713. *Helde*, 128, 174, 387, 1435.  
     *Elde hæfde heo na mare*  
     *Buten fihdene 3ere.*  
     *Lazam.* l. 25913.  
 R. Br. In Se. *Eldl.* It was subsequently restricted to the sense of *old age*, as in Chauc.
- Elles, *adv.* S. else, 1192, 2590.
- Em, S. uncle, 1326. Sir Tr. p. 53. Properly, says Sir W. Scott, an uncle by the father's side. It appears however to have been used indifferently either on the father's or mother's side. *See* Hearne's Gl. on R. Gl. and R. Br., Web., Erle of Tol. 988; Chauc. Troil. 2, 162, and Nares. Prov. Eng. *Lam*.
- Er, *adv.* S. before, 684. *Her*, 541. *Are*, Sir Tr. p. 152. *Er*, K. Horn, 130. *See* *Are*, *Or*.
- Er, *conj.* S. before, 317, 1261, 2680. *Her*, 229.
- Erl, *n.* S. earl, 189, &c. *Erles*, *g. c.* 2898, earl's. *Herles*, 883. *Erl-dom*, earldom, 2909.
- Ern, *n.* S. eagle, 572. Rits. M. R. Octovian, 196; R. Gl. p. 177; Will. of Palerne.
- Erpe, *n.* S. earth, 740; ground, 2657.
- Erpe, *v.* S. to dwell, 739. A.S. *cardian*.



- Es, a plural pronoun signifying *them*, as in *don es on* = put them on, 970. See *Gen. and Exod.* ed. Morris, pref. p. xix.
- Et, a singular pronoun, equivalent to *it*, used in *haucet* = *hauen et*, 2005; *haudet* = *haued et*, 714.
- Ete, Eten, *v. S.* to eat, 791, 800, 911, &c. *Hete, Heten*, 146, 317, 457, 641. *Et, imp.* eat (thou), 925. *Et, Het, pa. t.* ate, 653, 656. *Etes, fut. 2 p.* thou shalt eat, 907. *Eteth, fut. 3 p.* shall eat, 672. *Eten, part. pa.* eaten, 657.
- Epen, *adv. S.* hence, 690. *Hepen*, 683, 845, 1085, 2727.
- Eper. See Ayper.
- Euere, Eure, *adv. S.* ever, 207, 424, 704, &c. *Heuere*, 17, 327, 830.
- Euereich, *adj. S.* every, 137. *Euere il*, 218, 1334, 1644. *Euere ilc*, 1330. *Eueri*, 1070, 1176, 1383. *Eueril*, 1764, 2318, &c. *Euerilk*, 2258, 2432. *Euerilkon*, every one, 1062, 1996, 2197. See II.
- Euere-mar, *adv. S.* evermore, 1971.
- Eyen, Eyn, Eyne. See Eie.
- Eyr. See Eir.
- Fader, *n. S. Lat.* father, 1224, 1403, 1416. Sir Tr. p. 35; K. Horn, 114. The cognate words may be found in Jam.
- Faderles, *adj.* fatherless, 75.
- Fadmede, *pa. t. S.* fathomed, embraced, 1295. From *fathmian*, *Utraque manu extensa complecti*. Cod. Exon., ed. Thorpe, p. 334. It has the same meaning in Sc. V. Jam.
- Falle, *v. S.* to fall, 39, &c. *Falles, imp. pl.* fall ye, 2302. *Fel, pa. t.* fell, appertained. 1815, 2359. *Fellen, pa. t. pl.* fell, 1303.
- Fals, *adj. S.* false, 2511.
- Falwes, *n. pl. S.* fallows, fields, 2509. Chauc. C. T. 6238, where Tyrwh. explains it *harrowed lands*.
- Fare, *n. S.* journey, 1337, 2621. R. Gl. p. 211; R. Br., Minot, p. 2 (left unexplained by Rits.); Barb. iv. 627. *Schip-fare*, a voyage, Sir Tr. p. 53.
- Faren, *v. S.* to go, 264. *Flare*, 1378, 1392, &c. *Fare, pr. t. 2 p.* farest, behavest, 2705. *Fares, pr. t. 3 p.* goes, flies, 2690. *Ferde, pa. t.* went, 447, 1678, &c.; behaved, 2411. *For* (went), 2382, 2943. *Foren, pa. t. pl.* went, 2380, 2618.
- Faste, *adv. S.* attentively, earnestly, 2148.  
Tristrem as a man  
Fast he gan to fight.  
*Sir Tristr.* p. 167.
- Bidde we ȝeorne Ihū Crist, and  
seint Albon wel *faste*,  
That we moten to the Ioye come,  
that euere schal i-laste.  
*Vita S. Albani*, MS. Laud. 108.  
f. 47 b.
- Fastinde, *part. pr. S.* fasting, 865.
- Fauth. See Fyht.
- Fawen, *adj. S.* fain, glad, 2160. *Fawe*, K. of Tars, 1058; Octovian, 307; R. Gl. p. 150; Chauc. C. T. 5802.
- Fe, *n. S.* fee, possessions, or money, 386, 563, 1225, &c. See Jam. and Lynds. Gl.
- Feble, *adj. Fr.* feeble, poor, scanty, 323.
- Feblelike, *adv.* feebly, scantily, 418. *Febli*, Sir Tr. p. 179, for *meanly*.
- Feden, *v. S.* to feed, 906. *Feddes, pa. t. 2 p.* feddest, 2907.
- Fel. See Bifalle, Falle.
- Felawes, *n. pl. S.* fellows, companions, 1338.
- Feld, *n. S.* field, 2634, 2685, 1291.

- Felde, Felede. *pa. t.* S. felled, 67, 1859, 2694. *Felden* (? read *he ne fellen*, they did not fall), 2698. *Feld*, *part. pa.* felled, 1824. Sir F. Madden writes—"in l. 2698, I prefer reading *ne felden*, did not fell, governed by *that*. In l. 67, Garnett suggested *felede*, pursued, from Swed. *följade*."
- Fele, *adj.* S. many, often, 778, 1277, 1737, &c. Sir Tr. p. 19.
- Fele, *adv.* S. very, 2442.
- Fend, *n.* S. fiend, 506, 1411, 2229.
- Fer, *adv.* S. far, 359, 1863, 2275, &c. *Ferne*, far, 1864; *pl. adj.* foreign, 2031.  
*pa kingges buh stronge,*  
*And of ferrene lond.*  
*Lazam. l. 5528.*
- Cf. Chauc. Prol. l. 14.
- Ferd, *n.* S. army, 2384, 2548, &c. *Ferde*, 2535. *Lazam.*, R. Gl., R. Br., Web. *Ferdes*, *pl.* 2683.
- Ferde. *See* Fare.
- Fere, *n.* S. companion, wife, 1214. Sir Tr. p. 157. K. Horn, Web., R. Gl., R. Br., Minot, Chauc. *Feir*, Sc. V. Jam. and Gl. Lynds.
- Ferlike, *n.* S. wonder, 1258. *Ferlik*, 1849. Sir Tr. p. 21. Originally in all probability an *adj.*
- Ferpe, *adj.* S. fourth, 1810.
- Feste, *n.* Fr. feast, 2344, &c.
- Feste, *v.* Fr. to feast, 2938.
- Festen, *v.* S. to fasten, 1785; (used passively) 82. *Fest*, *pa. t.* fastened, 144.
- Fet. *See* Fot.
- Fete, *v.* S. to fetch, bring, 642, 912, 937, &c. Used passively, 316, 2037. *Fetes*, *pr. t. s.* fetch, 2341. V. Pegge's Anecd. of Engl. Lang. p. 135.
- Fetere, *v.* S. to fetter, chain, 2758. Used passively.
- Feteres, *n. pl.* S. fetters, 82, 2759.
- Fey, *n.* Fr. faith, 255, 1666. *Feyth*, 2853.
- Filt, *n.* S. fight, 2668, 2716.
- Fikel, *adj.* S. fickle, inconstant, 1210, 2799.
- File, *n.* vile, worthless person, 2499.  
*Men seth ofte a muche file,*  
*They he serue boten a wile,*  
*Bicomen swithe riche.*  
*Hending the hende*, MS. Digb. 86.  
 So in R. Br. p. 237.  
 David at that while was with Edward the kyng,  
 3it auanced he that *file* vntille a faire thing.  
 It is used for *coward* by Minot, pp. 31, 36. Cf. Du. *vuil*, foul, malicious.
- Finden; *v.* S. to find, 1083. *Finde*, 220. *Fynde*, 42. *Funden*, *pa. t. pl.* found, 602. *Funde*, *part. pa.* found, 2376. *Funden*, 1427.
- Fir, *n.* S. fire, 585, 1162, &c. *Fyr*, 915.
- Firene, *adj.* S. made of fir, 2078. *Firron*, Doug. Virg. 47. 34.
- Flaunes, *n. pl.* Fr. custards, or pancakes, 644. *See* Way's note in Prompt. Parv.
- Fledden, *pa. t. pl.* S. fled, 2416.
- Flemen, *v.* S. to drive away, banish, 1160. R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc., Rits. A.S. So in Sc. V. Jam.
- Flete, *pres. subj.* S. float, swim, 522. Sir Tr. p. 27; K. Horn, 159; Chauc. *Fleit*, Sc. V. Jam.
- Fleye, *v.* S. to fly, 1791, 1813, 1827, 2751. *Fley*, *pa. t.* flew, 1305.
- Flo, *v.* S. to flay, 612, 2495. K. Horn, 92. *Flow*, *pa. t.* flayed, 2502. *Flowe*, *pa. t. pl.* 2433.
- Flok, *n.* S. flock, troop, 24. *See* Tromc.
- Flote, *n.* S. boat, 738. A.S. *flōta*, a ship; Icel. *floti*, (1) a ship, (2) a fleet; cf. *Lazam.* 4530.



Flour, *n.* Fr. flower, 2917.

Fnaste, *v.* S. to breathe, 548.

Cf. A.S. *Fnæstiað*, the wind-pipe, *Fnæstan*, puffs of wind. *Fnæst* = breath in *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 44.

Fo, *n.* S. foe, 1363, 2849; *pl.* foos, 67.

Fol, *n.* Fr. fool, 298. *Foles*, *pl.* 2100.

Fole, Folk, *n.* S. men collectively, people, 89, 438, &c.

Folwes, *imp.* S. follow ye, 1885, 2601.

Fonge, *v.* S. to take, receive, 763; 2 *p. pres. subj.* 856. In common use from Lazam. to Chauc. and much later.

For, *prep.* S. *For to* is prefixed to the inf. of verbs in the same manner as the Fr. *pour*, or Sp. *por*. It is so used in all the old writers, and in the vulgar translation of the Scriptures, and is still preserved in the North of England. Cf. 17, &c. *For* = on account of, 1670. Sir Tr. p. 62.

For, Foren. See Faren.

Forbere, *v.* S. spare, abstain from, 352. Chauc. Rom. R. 4751. *Forbar*, *pa. t.* spared, abstained from, 764, 2623.

Forfaren, *v.* S. to perish, 1380. R. Br. *Forfard* (*p. p.*) Ly Beaus Desc. 1484. The inf. is also used in Web., P. Plowm., Chauc. In Sc. *Forfair*. V. Compl. of Scotl. p. 100, and Gl. Lynds.

Forgat, *pa. t.* S. forgot, 2636, &c. *Foryat*, 249.

For-henge, *v.* to kill by hanging, 2724. Cf. Du. *verhangen zich*, to hang one's self.

Forlorn, *part. pa.* S. utterly lost, 770, 1424. *Forloren*, 580. R. Br., Rits. M. R., Chauc. Used actively, Sir Tr. p. 35.

Forþi, *adv.* S. on this account, therefore, because, 1194, 1431,

2043, 2500, 2578. Sir Tr. p. 14, and in all the Gloss.

Forthwar, *adv.* S. forthward; i. e. as we go on, 731.

Forw, *n.* S. furrow, 1094.

Forward, *n.* S. promise, word, covenant, 486. *Forwarde*, 554. Lazam. l. 4790. Sir Tr. p. 13. Rits. M. R., Web., R. Gl., R. Br., Minot, Chauc.

Fostred, *part. pa.* S. nourished, 1434, 2239.

Fot, *n.* S. *Euerilk fot*, 2432, every foot, or man. *Fet*, *pl.* 616, 1022, 1303, 2479. *Fote*, 1054, 1199.

Fouhten. See Fyht.

Fourtenith, *n.* S. fortnight, 2284.

Fremde, *adj.* (used as a *n.*) S. stranger, 2277.

Vor hine willeth sone uorgiete  
Tho fremde and tho sibbe.

MS. Digb. 4.

Ther ne myhte libbe  
The fremede ne the sibbe.

K. Horn, 67.

See also R. Gl. p. 346; Chron. of Eng. 92; P. Plowm., Chau., Jam. and Gl. Lynds.

Freme, *v.* S. to perform, 441.

Fri, *adj.* S. free, liberal, 1072. Chauc.

Frie, *v.* to blame, 1998. Icel. *frýja*, to blame. Cf. *freles*, blameless. *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris, A. 431.

Fro, *prep.* S. from, 265, &c.

Frusshe. See To-frusshe.

Ful, *adv.* S. very, much, completely, 6, 82, &c. *Ful wo*, 2589, much sorrow.

Ful, Fule, *adj.* S. foul, 506, 555, 626, 965, &c. *Foule*, 1158.

Fulike, *adv.* S. foully, shamefully, 2749.

Fulde, *part. pa.* S. filled, complete, 355.

Funde, Funden. *See* Finde.

Fyht, *v.* S. to fight, 2361. *Fauth*, *pa. t.* fought, 1990. *Fouhten*, *pa. t. pl.* fought, 2661.

Fyn, *n.* Fr. Lat. ending, 22. R. Br., Minot, Chauc., &c.

Ga, *v.* S. to go. *See* Ouer-ga.

Gad, *n.* S. goad, 279. *Gaddes*, *pl.* 1016. In Gl. Ælfr. among the instruments of husbandry occur *Gad*, stimulus, and *Gadiron*, aculeus. So in *The Fermeror and his Docter*, printed by Laing :

Quhen Symkin standis quhisling with  
ane quhip and ane *gaid*,

Priking and zarkand ane auld ox hide.  
V. Jam. in *v. Gade*, 4. and Nares.

Gadred, *part. pa.* S. gathered, 2577.

Gadeling, *n.* S. an idle vagabond, low man, 1121.

þa wes æuer alc cheorl

Al swa bald also an eorl,

& alle þa *gadelinges*

Also heo weoren sunen kinges.

*Lazam.* l. 12333.

Cf. K. Alisaund. 1733, 4063. *Gad-lyng*, Rob. of Cicyle, MS. Harl. 1701. R. Gl. p. 277, 310. Chauc. Rom. Rose, 938. The word originally meant *Vir generosus*. *See* Beowulf, l. 5227.

Gaf. *See* Yeue.

Galwe-tre, *n.* S. the gallows, 43, 335, 695. Le Bone Fl. 1726. Erle of Tol. 657. *Galues*, *Galvres*, *Galerces*, 687, 1161, 2477, 2508. R. Br., Chauc. Cf. Ihre Gl. Suiog. in *v. galge*, ab Isl. *gayl*, ramus arboris.

Gamen, *n.* S. game, sport, 980, 1716, 2135, 2250, 2577; joy, 2935, 2963. *Gamyu*, Barb. iii. 465. V. Jam.

Gan, *pa. t.* S. began, 2443. V. Jam.

Gangen, *v.* S. to go, walk, 370, 845, &c. *Gange*, 796. *Gongen*,

855. *Gonge*, 1185, 1739, &c. *Gonge*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* goest, 690, 843. *Gangande*, *part. pr.* on foot, walking, 2283. Wynt. V. Jam.

Garte, *pa. t.* S. made, 189, 1857, &c. *Gart*, 1001, 1082. *Gert*, Sir Tr. p. 147. V. Jam. and Gl. Lynds.

Gat, Gaten. *See* Geten.

Gate, *n.* S. (1) way, road, 846, 889. Sir Tr. p. 27; (2) manner, fashion (*see* bus-gate), 783, 2419, 2586.

Genge, *n.* S. family, company, 786, 1735; retinue, 2353, 2362, 2383.

þe king of þan londe

Mid muchelere *genge*.

*Lazam.* l. 6156.

Hence *Gang*. V. Todd's Johns.

Gent, *adj.* Fr. neat, pretty, 2139. Sir Tr. p. 87, R. Br., Chauc.

Gere. *See* Messe-gere.

Gest, *n.* Fr. tale, adventure, 2984. *See* Note in Warton's Hist. E. P., V. i. p. 69. Ed. 1840.

Gete, *v.* to guard, watch, keep, 2762, 2960. Iccl. *gata*, to guard. Cf. *O. mulum*, 2079. [Suggested by Garnett.]

Geten, *v.* S. to get, take, 792. *Gete*, 1393. *Gat*, *pa. t.* begot, got, 495, 730. *Gaten*, *Geten*, *pa. t. pl.* begot, 2893, 2934, 2978. *Getes*, *f. t.* 2 *p.* shalt get, 908.

Ghod for Good, 255.

Gisarm, *n.* Fr. a bill, 2553. *See* Gl. Rits. M. R., Spelm. in *v.* Jam. Diet., and Merrick's Gl. in *v. Gesa*, *Gesum*. ["Distinguished from other weapons of the axe kind by a spike rising from the back. There were two kinds, viz. the *glaive-gisarme*, with a sabre-blade and spike; and the *bill-gisarme*, in shape of a hedging-bill with a spike." Godwin's Archæol. Handbook, p. 254.]

Giue. *See* Yeue.

Giue, *n.* S. gift, 2880. *Gyue*, 357. *Yeft*, 2336.

- Giueled**, piled up, 814. [The O.Fr. *garelé* means piled up, heaped together. To *garel* corn (see Halliwell) is to put it into heaps, and a *gavel* is a heap of corn. But this may very well be derived from *gable*, since a heap takes the shape of a peaked end of a house; and the O.Fr. term is probably originally Teutonic, and connected, as *gable* is, with Mæso-Goth. *gibla*, a pinnacle, with which compare German *giebel*, Du. *gevel*, and hence our word would be taken from a verb *givelen*, to pile up. The fish in Havelok's basket would be what the Dutch call *gevelvormig*, or formed like a gable, or like the peaked end of a *stack* of hay or corn, whence the author's expression—*giueled als a stac*, piled up in the shape of a stack. Other explanations are *flayed*, from Du. *rillen*, to flay; or *filed*, ranged in rows upon a stick, where *stick* is represented by *stac*. But the latter supposition would require the reading *on* rather than *als*; not to mention the fact that if fish are carried in a *pannier* they would not resemble fish carried *on a stick*. Nor is it quite satisfactory to say that *giueled* is put for *gefilled*, filled; for this is not elucidated by the expression *als a stac*, any more than the explanation *flayed* is. *Gable* is Icel. *gast*, Sw. *gafsel*, Dan. *garl*, Du. *gevel*, Ger. *giebel*, *gipsel*, &c. Its forked shape seems to give rise to Ger. *gabel*, Sw. *gaffel*, a fork; respecting which set of words see *Gaff* in Wedgwood.]
- Gladlike**, *adv.* S. gladly, 805, 906, 1760.
- Glede**, *n.* S. a burning coal, 91, 869. Rits. M. R., Web., R. Br., Chauc. See Note on l. 91.
- Gleive**, **Gleyue**, Fr. a spear, lance, 1770, 1844, 1981. *Gleives*, *Gleyues*, *pl.* 267, 1748, 1864. Dr Merriek explains it, "A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff." See R. Gl. p. 203; Guy of Warw. R. iii.; Chauc. Court of Love, 544; Percy, A. R.
- Glem**, *n.* S. gleam, ray, 2122. See Stem.
- Glen**, *n.* S. game, skill, 2332. Properly, says Sir W. Scott, the joyous science of the minstrels. Cf. Sir Tr. p. 24, 35, 150.
- Gleymen**, *n. pl.* S. gleemen, 2329. *Glewemen*, Sir Tr. p. 110.
- Whar bin thi glewmen** that schuld thi *glewe*,
- With harp and fithel, and tabour bete.  
*Disp. betw. the bodi & saul*, ap. Leyd. Compl. of Scotl.
- Gloutuns**, *n. pl.* Fr. gluttons, wicked men, 2104.
- Va, *Glutun*, envers tei nostre lei se defent.  
*K. Horn*, 1633, MS. Douce.  
Cf. K. Horn, 1124, ap. Rits., Yw. and Gaw. 3247; R. Cœur de L. 5953, and Chauc.
- Gnede**, *adj.* S. niggardly, frugal, 97. Nearly equivalent to *chinche*, l. 1763. Printed *guede* in Sir Tr. p. 169. [Cf. *Gnede* in Halliwell, and A.S. *gneadlicnes*, frugality.]
- God**, *n.* S. gain, wealth, goods, 797, 2034; *pl.* gode, 1221. R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc.
- God**, **Gode**, *adj.* S. good, excellent, 7, &c.
- Goddot**, **Goddoth**, *interj.* god wot! 606, 642, 796, 909, 1656, 2543; cf. 2527. It is formed probably in the same manner as *Goddil*, for God's will, in Yorksh. and Lanc. V. Craven dialect, and View of Lanc. dialect, 1770, 8vo. The word before us appears to have been limited to Lincolnshire or Lancashire, and does not appear in the Glossaries. Other instances are in the *Cursor Mundi*, MS. Cott. Vesp. F. iii. fol. 87, and in MS. Cott. Galba E. ix. fol. 61. It also occurs in a translation of a French Fabliau, written in the reign of Edw. I.

*Godlot!* so I wille,  
And loke that thou hire tille,  
And strek out hire thes.

*La fublet & la cointise de dame*  
*Siriz*, MS. Digb. S6.

Grundtvig told me (adds Sir F. Madden) that it is "undoubtedly the same interjection spelled *Iduth* in the old Danish rime-chronicle."

Gome, *n.* S. man, 7.

Gon, *v.* S. to go, walk, 113, 1045. *Goth*, *imp.* go ye, 1780. *Gon*, *part. pa.* gone, 2692.

Gonge, Gongen. *See* Gange.

Gore, 2497. *See* Grim.

Gos, *n.* S. goose, 1240. *Gees*, *pl.* 702.

Gouen. *See* Yeue.

Goulen, *pr. t. pl.* 2 *p.* S. howl, cry, 454. *Gouleden*, *pa. t. pl.* howled, cried, 164.

An *yollen* mote thu so heye,  
That ut berste bo thin ey.

*Hule and Nihtingale*, l. 970.

Used also by Wickliffe. In Scotland and the North it is still preserved, but in the South *Yell* is used as an equivalent. *See* Jam. and Gl. Lynds.

Gram, *n.* S. grief, 2469.

Graten, *v.* S. [*grátan*] to weep, ery, cry out, 329. *Grede*, 96. *Grete*, *pres. pl.* 454, 2703. *Gret*, *pa. t.* cried out, wept, 615, 1129, 2159. *Gredde*, 2417. *Greten*, *pa. t. pl.* wept, 164, 415, 2796. *Grotinde*, *part. pr.* weeping, 1390. *Gruten*, *part. pa.* wept, 241. *I-groten*, 285. *See* Jam. and Gl. Lynds.

Graue, *v.* S. to bury, 613. *Grauen*, *part. pa.* buried, 2528. Web., Sir Guy, li. iv., Chauc.

Greme, *v.* S. to irritate, grieve, 442. In R. Br. *Gram* is used as a verb, in the same sense.

Grene, *n.* desire, lust, 996. It

is simply the Mæso-Goth. *gairuni*, lust; Icel. *girmi*, desire. V. Jam. in v. Grene. Halliwell suggests *sport*, *play*, to which it is *opposed*.

Gretting, *n.* S. weeping, 166.

Gres, *n.* S. grass, 2698.

Gret, *adj.* S. great, heavy, loud, 807, 1860. *Greth*, 1025; *pl.* grete, 1437, 1862. *Grettere*, *comp.* greater, 1893.

Grete. *See* Graten. }

Grepede, 2003. Explained as *greeted*, *accosted*, by Sir F. Madden; but the use of *p* (not *th*) renders this doubtful. May it not signify *treated*, *handled* (lit. *arrayed*), from the *vb.* *greype*?

Grethet. *See* Greype.

Grette, *pa. t.* S. accosted, greeted, 452, 1811, 2625. *Gret*, *part. pa.* accosted, greeted, 2290.

Greu, *pa. t.* S. grew, prospered, 2333; *pl.* grewe, 2975.

Greue, *v.* S. to grieve, 2953.

Greype, *v.* S. [*gercédian*] to prepare, 1762. *Greype*, *pa. t.* prepared, 706. *Greyed*, *part. pa.* prepared, made ready, 714. *Grethet*, 2615. Lazam. l. 4414. Sir Tr. p. 33. *Se. Graith*. V. Jam. and Gl. Lynds.

Greyue, *n.* S. [*gercfu*] greave, magistrate, 1771. *Greyues*, *g. c.* greave's, 1749. *Greyues*, *pl.* 266. V. Spelm. in v. *Grafio*, and Hiekes, Diss. Epist. p. 21, n. p. 151.

Grim, *adj.* S. cruel, savage, fierce, 155, 680, 2398, 2655, 2761. R. Br., Rits. M. R. *See* Beowulf, l. 204.

Grim, *n.* [smut, dirt, 2497. The explanation is that Godard, on being flayed, did not bear his sentence as one of rank and blood would have done, but began to roar out as if he were mere *dirt* or *mud*, i. e. one of the dregs of the common herd. This curious expression is ascertained to have the meaning here



- assigned to it by observing (1) that *grim* and *gore* must be substantives, and (2) that they must be of like signification; but chiefly by comparing the line with others similar to it. Now the context, in the couplet following, repeats that "men might hear him roar, that *foul vile* wretch, a mile off;" and in l. 682, Godard calls Grim "*a foul dirt*, a thrall, and a churl." The author clearly uses *dirt* and *churl* as synonyms. The word *grim* is the Danish *grim*, soot, lampblack, smut, dirt, answering to the English *grime*; see *grime* in Atkinson's Glossary of the Cleveland dialect. *Gore* is the A.S. *gór*, wet mud, or clotted blood, in the latter of which senses it is still used. See "*Gore. Limus*" in Prompt. Parv., and Way's note.]
- Grip, *n.* griffin, 572. Web. *Graip*, Sc., V. Jam. The plural *gripes* is in Lazam. l. 28062, and K. Alisaund. 4880. Swed. *grip*.
- Grip, *n.* S. [*græp*] ditch, trench, 2102. *Gripes*, *pl.* 1924. V. Jam. in v. *Grape*; and Skinner, v. *Groop*. Cf. Swed. *grop*.
- Gripen, *pr. t. pl.* S. gripe, grasped, 1790. *Gripeth*, *imp.* gripe ye, 1882. *Grop*, *pa. t.* grasped, 1776, 1871, 1890, &c.
- Grith, *n.* S. peace, 61, 511. *Grith-sergeants*, 267, legal officers to preserve the peace. These must not be confounded with the *Justitarii Pacis* established in the beginning of Edw. III. reign, and called *Gardiani Pacis*. V. Spelm. in v. Cf. Icel. *gríð*.
- Grom, *n.* male child, youth, 790; young man, 2472. Belgic *grom* has the same sense of *boy*. Cf. Icel. *gromr*, homuncio. So in *Sir Degore*, A. iv. He lyft up the shete anone And loked upon the lytle *grome*. It generally elsewhere signifies *lad*, *page*.
- Gronge, *n.* Fr. grange, 764. [Halliwell says that, in *Lincolnshire*, a lone farm-house is still called a *grange*. In old English it is sometimes spelt *graunge*, which comes near the form here used. Cf. Fr. *grange*; Ital. *grangia* (Florio), a country-farm.]
- Grop. See Gripen.
- Grotes, *n. pl.* S. [*grɪt*] small pieces, grit, dust, 472, 1414.
- Grotinde. See Graten.
- Grund, *adj. used as adv.* 1027. See Grundlike.
- Grunde, *n.* S. *dat. c.* ground, 1979, 2675.
- Grundun, *part. pa.* S. ground, 2503. Yw. and Gaw. 676. *Grounden*, Chauc.
- Grundlike, *adv.* heartily, 651, 2659; deeply, 2013, 2268, 2307, where it is equivalent to *Deplike*, q. v. The word is undoubtedly Saxon, but in the Lexicons we only find *Grundlinga*, funditus, from Ælf. Gl. It is used by Lazamon, l. 9783.
- Cnihtes heom gereden  
Grundliche feire.
- Gyue. See Giue.
- Hal, all, 2370.
- Halde, *v.* S. to hold, take part, 2308. *Holden*, to keep or observe, 29, 1171. *Haldes*, *pr. t.* 3 p. holds, 1382. *Hel*, *pa. t.* held, 109. *Helden*, *pa. t. pl.* held, 1201. *Halden*, *part. pa.* held, holden, 2806.
- Hals, *n.* S. neck, 521, 670, 2510. Sir Tr. p. 109.
- Halue, *n.* S. side, part; *bi bothe halue*, 2682. See Bi-halue.
- Haluendel, *n.* S. the half part, 460. R. Gl. p. 5; R. Br.; K. Alisaund. 7116; Emare, 444; Chron. of Engl. 515; R. Hood, i. 68.



Handlen, *v.* S. to handle, 347.  
*Handel*, 586.

Hangen, *v.* S. to hang, 335, 695.  
*Hengen*, 43, &c. *Honge*, 2807.  
*Henged*, *part. pa.* hung, 1922,  
 2480. Cf. For-henge.

Harum *for* Harm, 1983, 2408.

Hasard, *n.* Fr. game at dice, 2326.  
*See* Note on l. 2320.

Hatede, *pa. t.* S. hated, 1188.

Hauen, *v.* S. to have, 78, &c.  
*Have*, 1188. *Haue*, 1298. *Haues*,  
*Hauest*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* hast, 688, 848.  
*Haues*, *Haueth*, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* haveth,  
 hath, has, 1266, 1285, 1952, 1980,  
 &c. *Hauct*, hath, 564. *Hauen*,  
*pr. t. pl.* have, 1227. *Hauenet*,  
 have it, 2005. *Hauede*, *pa. t.* had,  
 649, 775, &c. *Hauedet*, 714, had  
 it. *Haueden*, *pa. t. pl.* had, 238,  
 &c. *Aueden*, 163. *Haue*, *Hauede*,  
*Haunen*, *subj.* would have, 1428,  
 1643, 1687, 2020, 2675.

Haui *for* Haue I, 2002.

He, *pron.* S. Is often understood,  
 as in ll. 869, 1428, 1777, and hence  
 might perhaps have been designedly  
 omitted in ll. 135, 860, 1089, 2311,  
 though the metre seems to require  
*he* in 135 and 1089. *He*, *pl.* they,  
 54, &c.

Heie, *n.* *See* Eie.

Heie, *adj.* S. tall, 987. *Hey*,  
 1071, 1083; high, 1289. *Heye se*,  
 719. *Heye curt*, 1685. *Heye and*  
*lowe*, 2431, 2471, &c.

Hel, Helden. *See* Halde.

Helde, Heldeste. *See* Eld.

Helen, *v.* S. [*h  lan*] to heal,  
 1836. *Hele*, 2058. *Holed*, *part.*  
*pa.* heal  d, 2039.

Helm, *n.* S. helmet, 379, 624,  
 1653, &c. *Helmes*, *pl.* 2612.

Helpen, *v.* S. to help, 1712.  
*Helpes*, *imp. pl.* help ye, 2595.  
*Holpen*, *part. pa.* helped, 901.

Hem, *pron.* S. them, 367, &c.

Hend. *See* Hond.

Hende *for* Ende, 247.

Hende, *n.* S. a duck, 1241. A.S.  
*ened*; Lat. *anas* (*anat-is*); Du.  
*eend*; Icel. *  nd*. "Ende mete,  
 for dookelyngys, *Lenticula*;" and  
 again, "Ende, dooke byrde, *Anas*."  
 Prompt. Parv.

Hende, *adj.* courteous, gentle,  
 1104, 1421, 1704, 2793, 2877,  
 2914; skilful, 2628. It certainly  
 is the same word with *hendi*, *hendy*.  
*See* Tyrwh. on C. T. 3199; Gl. R.  
 Glouc.; Amis and Amil. 1393;  
 Ly Beaus Desc. 333; Morte Ar-  
 thur, ap. Ellis, M. R. V. i. p. 359,  
 &c.; Dan. and Sw. *h  ndig*, dex-  
 terous.

Hende, *adv.* S. near, handy, 359,  
 2275. Web.

Hendeleik, *n.* courtesy, 2793. Cf.  
*Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris, B. 860.

Henged, Hengen. *See* Hangen.

Henne, *adv.* S. hence, 843, 1780,  
 1799. In the same manner is  
 formed *Whenne*, K. Horn, 169,  
 which Ritson thought a mistake  
 for *whence*.

Henne, *n.* S. hen, 1240. *Hennes*,  
*pl.* 702.

Her. *See* Er.

Her, *adv.* S. here, 689, 1058,  
 &c. *Her offe*, 2585, hereof.

Her, *n.* S. hair, 1924. *Hor*, 235.

Herboru, *n.* S. habitation, har-  
 bour, lodging, 742. *Herberowe*,  
 Web.; *Herbegerie*, R. Br.; *Har-*  
*broughe*, Sq. of Lowe Degre, 179;  
*Herberwe*, Chauc.; *Herbry*, Wynt.;  
*Herberye*, Lynds. Gl. q. v. and Jam.

Herborwed, *pa. t.* S. lodged, 742.  
 Lazam., Chauc., V. Jam. in v.  
*Herbery*.

Here, *pron.* S. their, 52, 465, &c.

Here, *n.* S. army, 346, 379, 2153,  
 2942. R. Br., K. Alisaund., 2101.

Here, Heren, *v.* S. to hear, 4,

- 732, 1640, 2279, &c. *Y-here*, 11.  
*Herd, Herde*, *pa. t.* heard, 286,  
 465, &c. *Herden*, *pa. t. pl.* 150.
- Herinne, *adv.* S. herein, 458.
- Herkne, *imp. s.* S. hearken, 1285.  
*Herket*, *imp. pl.* hearken ye, 1.
- Herles. *See* Erl.
- Hernes, *n.* Fr. armour, harness,  
 1917. R. Br., &c.
- Hernes, *n. pl.* S. brains, 1808.
- Hern-panne, *n.* S. skull, 1991.  
 Yw. and Gaw. 660; R. Cœur de  
 L., 5293. *Hardynpan*, Compl. of  
 Scotl. p. 241; V. Gl.
- Hert, *n.* S. hart, deer, 1872.
- Herte, *n.* S. heart, 479, 2054,  
 &c. *Herte blod*, 1819. Lajam. l.  
 15846; Sir Tr. p. 93; Chauc.
- Hertelike, *adv.* S. heartily, 1347,  
 2748.
- Het, *pa. t.* S. hight, named, 2348.  
*Hoten*, *part. pa.* called, named, 106,  
 284.
- Het, Hete, Heten. *See* Ete.
- Hetelike, *adv.* S. hotly, furiously,  
 2655.  
 And Guy hent his sword in hand,  
 And *hetelich* smot to Colbrand.  
*Guy of Warw.* ap. Ellis, M. R.  
 V. 2, p. 82.  
 In Sir Tr. p. 172, *Hethelich* is ex-  
 plained *Haughtily* by the Editor,  
 and by Jam. *reproachfully*. Cf.  
*Hetterly* in Gloss. to *Will. of Pa-*  
*lerne*.
- Hethede, *pa. t.* commanded, 551.  
 A.S. *hetan*. The *th* is here pro-  
 nounced like *t*, as elsewhere.
- Heþen. *See* Eþen.
- Heu, *n.* S. hue, colour, com-  
 plexion, 2918. Very common. We  
 may hence explain the "inexplic-  
 able phrase" complained of by Mr  
 Ellis, Spec. E. E. P. V. i. p. 109.  
 "On *heu* her hair is fair enough"  
 —occasioned by Ritson having in-  
 advertently copied it *hen*, from the  
 MS.; *see* Anc. Songs, p. 25.
- Heued, *n.* S. head, 624, 1653,  
 1701, 1759, &c. *Heuedes*, *pl.* 1907.
- Heuere. *See* Euere.
- Heui, *adj.* S. heavy, 808; la-  
 borious, 2456.
- Hew, *pa. t.* S. cut, 2729. Sir  
 Tr. p. 20.
- Hext, *adj. sup.* S. highest, tallest,  
 1080. *Hart*, Lajamon; *Hext*, K.  
 Alisaund. 7961; R. Gl.; Chauc.
- Hey, Heye. *See* Heie.
- Heye, *adv.* S. on high, 43, 335,  
 695, &c.
- Heylike, *adv.* S. highly, honour-  
 ably, 2319. *Heyelike*, 1329.
- Heyman, *n.* S. nobleman, 1260.  
 Sir Tr. p. 82. *Heymen*, *Heyemen*,  
*pl.* 231, 958.
- Hi, Hie. *See* Ich.
- Hider, *adv.* S. hither, 868, 885,  
 1431.
- Hides, *n. pl.* S. hides, skins, 918.
- Hijs, *pron.* S. his, 47, 468. *Hise*,  
 34, &c. *Hyse*, 355. [The final *e*  
 is most used with *plural nouns*.]
- Hile, *v.* S. [*hulan*] to cover, hide,  
 2082. *Hile*, Sir Tr. p. 19, Web.,  
 Rits. M. R., Chauc. *Hilles*, Yw.  
 and Gaw. 741. V. Jam. in v.  
*Heild*.—Somersetsh.
- Him, *pron.* S. them, 257, 1169.
- Hine, *n. pl.* S. hinds, bondsmen,  
 620. Web. *Hinen*, R. Gl., V. Jam.  
 in v.
- Hinne. *See* þer-inne.
- Hire, *pron.* S. her, 127, &c.  
*Hire semes*, it beseems her, 2916.
- His for Is, 279, 1973, 2692.
- Hise. *See* Hijis.
- Hof for Of, 1976.
- Hof, *pa. t.* S. heaved, 2750.
- Hok, *n.* S. hook, 1102.
- Hol, *adj.* whole, well, 2075.
- Holi, *adj.* S. holy, 1361. [*Printed*  
*hoh in the former edition*.]

- Hold, *adj.* S. firm, faithful, 2781, 2816.  
 Ant suore othes *holde*,  
 That huere non ne sholde  
 Horn never bytreye.  
*K. Horn*, 1259.  
 Cf. R. Glouc. p. 377, 383, 443;  
 K. Alisaund. 2912; Chron. of  
 Engl. 730.
- Hold, Holde, *adj.* S. old, 30, 192, 417, 956, &c.; former, 2460.
- Holden. *See* Halde.
- Hole, *n.* S. socket of the eye, 1813.
- Holed. *See* Helen.
- Holpen. *See* Helpen.
- Hond, *n.* S. hand, 2446. *Hon*, 1342. *Dat. c.* hend, 505, 2069; *pl.* hondes, 215, 636. *Hond-dede*, *n.* S. handiwork, 92.
- Honge. *See* Hangen.
- Hor. *See* Her, *n.*
- More, *n.* mercy, 153. *See* Ore.
- Horn, *n.* S. 779. [This probably refers to the *shape* of the *simnel*. Halliwell says, a *Simnel* is "generally made in a *three-cornered* form." Cracknels are still made with pointed and turned up ends, not unlike *horns*.]
- Hors, *n.* S. horse, 2283. *Horse-knaue*, groom, 1019. So in a curious satirical poem, temp. Edw. II.  
 Of rybandz y ryme,  
 Ant rede o my rolle,  
 Of gedelynges, gromes,  
 Of Colyn, & of Colle;  
 Harlotes, *hors knaues*,  
 Bi pate & by polle.  
 MS. Harl. 2253, f. 124 b.  
 Used also by Gower, Conf. Am. *See* Todd's Illustr. p. 279.
- Hosen, *n. pl.* S. hose, stockings, 860, 969. In Sir Tr. p. 94, trowsers seem to be indicated.
- Hoslen, *v.* S. to administer or receive the sacrament, 212. *Hoslon*, 362. *Hosled*, *part. pa.* 364.
- Hoseled*, 2598. Le Bone Flor. 776. Chauc.
- Hoten. *See* Het.
- Houes, *pr. t.* S. behoves, 582. [*Read* bi-houes?]
- Hul, *n.* S. hollow, i. e. vale, 2687 A.S. *hole*. Cf. l. 2439.
- Hund, *n.* S. hound, 1994, 2435. *Hundes*, *pl.* 2331.
- Hungred for Hunger, 2455.
- Hungreth, *pr. t.* hunger, 455. *Hungrede*, *pa. t.* hungered, 654.
- Hure, *pron.* S. our, 338, 842, 1231, &c.
- Hus for Us, 1217, 1409.
- Hus, *n.* S. house, 740. *Huse*, 2913. *Hws*, 1141. *Milne-hous*, mill-house, 1967.
- Hyl, *n.* S. heap, 892. *Hil*, hill, 1287.
- Hw, W, *adv.* S. how, 120, 288, 827, 960, 1646, &c. *Hwon*, 2411, 2946, 2987, &c.
- Hwan, *adv.* S. when, 408, 474, &c. *See* Quan.
- Hware, *adv.* S. where, 1881, 2240, 2579. *Hwar-of*, whereof, 2976. *Hwere*, 549, 1083.
- Hwat, *pron.* S. what, 596, 635, 1137, 2547. *Wat*, 117, 541, &c. *Wat is yr*, 453. *Hwat* or *Wat is þe*, 1951, 2704.
- Hwat. *See* Quath.
- Hwel, *n.* S. whale, or grampus, 755. *Hwæl*, balena, vel cete, vel cetus. Ælf. Gl. *See* Qual.
- Hweþer, *adv.* S. whether, 294, 2098.
- Hwi, *adv.* S. why, 454. *See* Qui.
- Hwil, *adv.* S. whilst, 301, 363, 538, 2137.
- Hwile, *n.* S. time, 722, 1830.
- Hwil-gat, *adv.* S. how, lit. which way, 836. *Hwogates*, Skinner
- Hwit, *adj.* S. white, 1729.

- Hwo, *pron.* S. who, 296, 300, 368, 2604, &c. *See* Wo.  
 Hwor, *adv.* S. whether, 1119. *Hwore-so*, wheresoever, 1319.  
 Hwou. *See* Hw.  
 Hws. *See* Hus.  
 Hyse. *See* Hijs.  
 Ich, *pron.* S. I, 167, &c. *Ihe*, 1377. *Iie*, 305. *Hi*, 487. *I*, 686. *I*, 15, &c.  
 Id *for* It, 2424.  
 I-gret, 163. *See* Grette.  
 I-groten. *See* Graten.  
 Il, *adj.* S. each, every, 818, 1740, 2112, 2483, 2514. *Ile*, 1056, 1921. *Ilke*, 821, 1861, 2959, 2996; (=same), 1088, 1215, 2674, &c. *Ilker*, each (of them), 2352. *Ilkan*, each one, 1770, 2357. *Ilkon*, 1842, 2108. *See* Eueri.  
 Ille, *adv.* S. *Likede hire swithe ille*, 1165, it displeased her much. *Sir Tr.* p. 78. A common phrase. *Ille maked*, ill treated, 1952.  
 I-maked. *See* Maken.  
 Inne, *adv.* S. in, 762, 807. *See* Perinne.  
 Inow, *adv.* S. enough, 706, 911, 931, &c. *Inow*, 563, 1795. *Inou*, 904.  
 Intil, *prep.* S. into, 128, 251, &c. *See* Til.  
 Ioie, *n.* Fr. joy, 1209, 1237, 1278, &c. *Ioje*, 1315.  
 Ioyinge, *n.* gladness, 2087.  
 Ioupe, *n.* Fr. a doublet, 1767. Roquefort gives the form *Jupe*, but *Jupon* or *Gipoun* is more usual. *See* *Jupon* in Halliwell, and *Gipe* in Roquefort.  
 Is *for* His, 735, 2254, 2479.  
 Iuele, *n.* S. evil, injury, 50, 1689. *Iuel*, 2221. *Iuele*, 994. *Iuel*, sickness, 114. *Iuel*, 144, 155.  
     *pa pe he wes ald mon,*  
     *pa com him uel on.*  
         *Lazam.* l. 1982.  
*Ful iuele o-bone*, very lean, 2505; cf. 2525.  
 Iuele, *adv.* S. evilly, 2755. *Me guele like*, displease me, 132. Cf. *Ille* liken.  
 Kam. *See* Komen.  
 Kaske, *adj.* strong, vigorous, 1841. *Sw. karsk.*  
 Kaym, *n. p.* Cain, 2045. *See* note in loe.  
 Kayn, *n.* 31, 1327. Evidently a provincial pronounciation of *Thayn*, which in the MS. may elsewhere be read either *chayn* or *thayn*. By the same mutation of letters *make* has been converted into *mate*, *cake* into *cate*, *wyke* into *wayte*, *lake* into *late* (*R. Hood*, i. 106), &c., or *vice versâ*. *See* *Thayn*.  
 Kaysere. *See* Cayser.  
 Keft, *part. pa.* purchased, 2005. *Sure keft* = sourly (bitterly) purchased it. *See* *Sure and Coupe*.  
 Keling, *n.* 757, cod of a large size, *Jam.* q. v. The *kelyng* appears in the first course of Archb. Nevil's Feast, 6 Edw. IV. *See* Warner's *Antiq. Cul.* Cotgrave explains *Merlus*, A Melwall or *Keeling*, a kind of small cod, whercof stockfish is made.  
 Keme. *See* Komen.  
 Kempe, *n.* S. knight, champion, 1036. *V. Jam.* in v.  
 Kene, *adj.* S. keen, bold, eager, 1832, 2115. A term of very extensive use in old Engl. and Sc. poetry, and the usual epithet of a knight.  
 Kesten, *v.* S. to cast in prison, or to overthrow, 81, 1785 (used passively). *Casten*, cast, throw, 2101. *Keste*, *part. t.* cast, 2449. *Keste*, *part. pa.* cast, placed, 2611; [or it may be the infin. mood.]  
 Keuel, *n.* S. a gag, 547. *See* *Kevel* in Hall., *Keul* in *Jam.* A. S. *cæfti*, a halter, headstall.



- Kid, *part. pa.* S. made known, discovered, 1060. Sir Tr. p. 150; R. Br.; Yw. and Gaw. 530; Minot, p. 4; Chauc. From *cyþan*, notum facere.
- Kin, Kyn, *n.* S. kindred, 393, 414, 2045.
- Kines, *n.* S. *gen. c.* kind, 861, 1140, 2691. *None kines* = of no kind; *neugre kines* = of never a kind.
- Kinneriche. *See* Cunneriche.
- Kippe, *v.* S. [*cépan*] to take up hastily, 894. *Kipt*, *Kipte*, *pa. t.* snatched up, 1050, 2407, 2638.  
Horn in is armes hire *kepte*.  
*K. Horn*, 1208.  
*Kypte* heore longe knyues, and slowe faste to gronde.  
*Rob. Glouc.* p. 125.  
*Kept up*, snatcht up, Gl. R. Br. Jamieson derives the word from Su.-G. *kippa*, to take anything violently. V. in v. *Kip*. Ihre quotes the Icel. *kipti up* = snatch-ed up.
- Kirke, *n.* S. church, 1132, 1355. *Kirkes*, *pl.* 2583. V. Gl. Lynds. and Jam.
- Kiste. *See* Chiste.
- Kiste, *pa. t. s.* kissed, 1279. *Kisten*, *pa. t. pl.* S. kissed, 2162.
- Kiwing, *n.* 1736. [Respecting this word I can only record my conviction that it is not safe to quote it, as the MS. is indistinct. I read the word as *kilþing*, which I believe to be merely miswritten for *ilk þing* (which the scribe also spells *il þing*), and I suppose the sense of the line to be—"when they had there distributed *everything*."]
- Knaue, *n.* S. lad, 308, 409, 450, &c. Attendant, servant, 458. *Cokes knaue*, scullion, 1123.  
Heore cokes & heore *cnaues*  
Alle heo duden of lif dægen.  
*Lazam.* l. 13717.
- V. Jam. in v. Gl. Lynds. and Gl. Todd's Illustr. Chauc.
- Knawe, *v.* S. to know, 2785. *Knawe*, *pr. t. pl.* know, 2207. *Kneu*, *pa. t.* knew, 2468. *Knawed*, *part. pa.* known, 2057.
- Knieth, Knith, *n.* S. knight, 77, 343, &c. *Knictes*, *pl.* 239. *Knithes*, 1068. *Knihthes*, 2706.
- Kok, *n.* a cook, 873, 180, 891, 903, 921, 2898. *See* Cok.
- Komen, *v.* S. to come, 1001. *Comes*, *Cometh*, *imp. pl.* come ye, 1798, 1885, 2247. *Kam*, *pa. t.* came, 766, 863. *Kom*, 1309. *Cam*, 2622. *Komen*, *pa. t. pl.* came, 1012, 1202. *Comen*, 2790. *Keme*, 1208. *Comen*, *part. pa.* come, 1714.
- Kope, *n.* Lat. cope, 429. *Copes*, *pl.* 1957.
- Koren, *n.* S. corn, 1879.
- Kouel. *See* Couel.
- Koupen. *See* Coupe.
- Kradel-barnes, *n. pl.* S. children in the cradle, 1912.
- Kraken, *v.* S. to crack, break, 914. *Krake*, 1857. *Crake*, 1908. *Crakede*, *pa. t.* cracked, broke, 568. *Kraked*, *part. pa.* 1238.
- Krike, *n.* S. creek, 708.
- Kunne. *See* Canst.
- Kuneriche, Kunerike, Kunrik. *See* Cunneriche.
- Kyne-merk, *n.* S. mark or sign of royalty, 604. In the same manner are compounded *cine-helm*, *cine-stol*, &c.  
& Cador þe kene  
scal beren þas *kinges marke*;  
hæbben hæze þene drake,  
biforen þissere duzeðe.  
*Lazam.* l. 19098.
- Thyll ther was of her body  
A fayr chyld borne, and a godele,  
Hadde a dowbyll *kynges marke*.  
*Emare*, 502.



- Lac, *n.* S. fault, reproach, 191, 2219. Yw. and Gaw. 264, 1133. *Lak*, R. Br., Rom. of Merlin, ap. Ellis, M. R. V. i. p. 252. Sir Orpheo, 421. *Lakke*, P. Plowm. Chauc. So in Sc. V. Jam. and Gl. Lynds. v. *Lak*, *Lack*.
- Ladde, *n.* S. lad, 1786. *Ladden*, *pl.* 1038. *Laddes*, 1015, &c. A term subsequently applied to persons of low condition. "When *laddes* weddeth leuedis—" Prophecy of Tho. of Essedoune, MS. Harl. 2253, f. 127.
- Large, *adj.* Fr. Lat. liberal, bountiful, 97, 2941. R. Gl. Yw. and Gaw. 865. Sir Orpheo, 27. Sevyñ Sages, 1251. Chauc.
- Late, *v.* S. [*létan*] *pres. subj.* let, suffer, 486. *Late*, *pr. t.* let, permit, 1741. *Late*, *imp.* let, suffer, 17, 1376, 2422. *Leth*, *pa. t.* let, suffered, 2651; caused, 252. *Late*, *part. pa.* or *inf.* put, 2611.
- Laten, *v.* S. [*létan*] to leave, 328. *Late be*, *imp.* leave, relinquish, 1265; *inf.* 1657. *Iet*, *pa. t.* left, 2062. *Laten*, *part. pa.* left, abated, 240, 1925.
- Lath, *n.* S. injury, 76. *Lathe*, 2718, 2976.
- Lauhwinde, *part. pr.* S. laughing, 946.
- Laute, *pa. t.* S. [*læccan*, *læhte*] received, took, 744. *Lauthe*, 1673. *Lauth*, *part. pa.* received, taken, 1988. *I-lahte*, Lazam. l. 29260.  
Horn in herte *lazte*  
Al þat he him *tazte*.  
K. Horn (ed. Lumby), 243.  
*Laght*, Yw. and Gaw. 2025. *Laught*, K. Alisaund. 685, 1109. *Lauht*, R. Br. (See Hearn's blundering Gl. in voc.) Rits. A.S. p. 46. *Laucht*, Wall. ix. 1964.
- Laumprei, *n.* S. lamprey, 771. *Laumprees*, *pl.* 897.
- Lawe, Lowe, *adj.* S. low, 2431, 2471, 2767, &c.
- Lax, *n.* S. [*læx*] salmon, 754, 1727. *Laxes*, *pl.* 896. V. Spelm. and Somn. in v. Jamieson says, it was "formerly the only name by which this fish was known." Cf. Dan. Sw. Icel. *lax*.
- Layke, *v.* S. [*lúcan*] to play, 1011. *Leyke*, *Leyken*, 469, 950, 997. *Leykeden*, *pa. t. pl.* played, 954. In the same sense the verb is found in P. Plowman, and Sevyñ Sages, 1212. So in Sc. and N.E. V. Jam. v. *Laik*, Ray, Brockett, and Crav. Dial. v. *Lake*.
- Leche, *n.* S. physician, 1836, 2057.
- Led, a caldron, kettle, 924. Chauc. Prol. 202.
- Lede, Leden, *v.* S. to lead, 245, &c.; *utlede*, 89. Cf. 346, 379. *Ledes*, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* uses, carries, 2573. *Ledde*, *pa. t.* led, 1686. *Ledden*, *pa. t. pl.* led, 2451.
- Lef, *adj.* S. agreeable, willing, *lef and loth*, 261, 440, 2273, 2313, 2379, 2775. A very usual phrase. See Beowulf, l. 1026. Chauc. C. T. 1839. R. Hood, i. 41. *Leue*, 431, 909. Sir Tr. p. 187. K. Horn, 949, &c. *Leuere*, *comp.* more agreeable, rather, 1193, 1423, 1671, &c. *Lef*, used as *adv.* willingly, in the phrase "Ye! lef, ye!" = yes, willingly, yes, 2606; cf. l. 1888.
- Leidest. See Leyn.
- Leite, *adj.* S. light, 2441.
- Leme, *n.* S. limb, 2555. *Lime*, 1409. *Limes*, *pl.* 86.
- Leman, *n.* S. mistress, lover, 1191. *Lenman*, 1283, 1312, 1322. Used by all the old writers, and applied equally to either sex.
- Lende, *v.* S. to land, 733. Sir Tr. p. 13. R. Br. See Jam. in v. *Leind*.
- Lene, *v.* S. [*leanian*] to lend, grant, 2072.  
I sal *lene* the her mi ring.  
Yw. and Gaw. 737

- Lenge, *n.* the fish called *ling*, 832. [*Asellus longus*, or *Islandicus*, Ray.] It was a common dish formerly. Thus we have *Lyng* in *jelly*, in Archb. Nevil's Feast, 6 Edw. IV., and *Lyng* in *foyle*, in Warham's Feast, 1504. See Pegge's *Form of Cury*, p. 177, 184, and MS. Sloane, 1986.
- Lenge, *v.* S. to prolong, 1734, 2363. P. Plowm.
- Leoun, *n.* Lat. lion, 573. *Leun*, 1867.
- Lepe, *v.* S. escape from (?) 2009. *Loupe*, to leap, 1801. *Lep*, *pa. t.* leapt, 891, 1777, 1942. *Lopen*, *pa. t. pl.* 1896, 2616.
- Lere, Leren, *v.* S. to learn, 797, 823; to teach, 2592. *Y-lere*, 12.
- Lese, *v.* S. *imp. s.* 3 *p.* loose, 333. Sir Tr. p. 110.
- Leth. See Late.
- Lette, *v.* S. [*létan*, *lettan*] to hinder, retard, 1164, 2253, 2819; to stop, cease, 2445, 2627. *Let*, *pa. t.* stopped, stayed, 2447, 2500. *Leten*, *pa. t. pl.* stopped, delayed, 2379.
- Leue, *n.* S. leave, 1387, 1626, 2952, &c.
- Leue, *adj.* See Lef.
- Leue, *v.* S. [*lýfan*] *imp. s.* grant, 334, 406, 2807. K. Horn, 465, MS.; R. Gl., Erle of Tol. 365. Guy of Warw. ap. Ellis, M. R. V. 2, p. 77, where it is misprinted *lene*. It is very frequently used in the old Engl. Metrical Lives of the Saints, MS. Laud, 108. [The true distinction between *leue* and *lene* is, that the former is the A.S. *lýfan*, G. *erlauben* = grant in the sense of *allow*, *permit*, and is invariably intransitive; whilst *lene* is the A.S. *lænan*, G. *leihen* = grant in the sense of *give*. The confusion between the senses of *grant* has led to confusion between *leue* and *lene*, and in at least five passages of Chaucer (C. T. 7226, 13613; Tro. ii. 1212, iii. 56, v. 1749, ed. Tyrwhitt) many editions wrongly have *lene*. In the last three instances Tyrwhitt rightly prints *leve*, but unnecessarily corrects himself in his Glossary. I regret to add that I have thrice made a similar mistake. In Piers Plowman, A. v. 263, and in Pierce the Ploughman's Crede, ll. 366 and 573, for *lene* read *leve*. Halliwell's remark, that "the [former] editor of Havelok absurdly prints *leve*" is founded upon the same misconception, and he is wrong in his censure. See the use of *lefe* in the Ormulum, ed. White.]
- Leued, *pa. t.* S. left, 225.
- Leuedi, *n.* S. lady, 171, &c. *Leuedyes*, *pl.* 239. V. Hickes, Diss. Ep. p. 52, n.
- Leuere. See Lef.
- Leues, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* S. believes, 1781, 2105. From *lefan*.
- Leuin, *n.* S. lightning, 2690. R. Br. p. 174. Yw. and Gaw. Chauc. C. T. 5858. Doug. Virg. 200, 53.
- Lewe, *adj.* S. warm, 498, 2921.  
A opened wes his breoste,  
þa blod com forð luke.  
*Lazam.* l. 27556.
- Leyd, Leyde. See Leyn.
- Leye, *n.* S. lie, falsehood, 2117.
- Leye, *v.* S. to lie, speak false, 2010.
- Leyke, Leyken. See Layke.
- Leyk, *n.* S. game, 1021, 2326.  
So in Beowulf, l. 2084, *sweordageldc*, and Sir Tr. p. 118, *love-laike*. In the *pl. laykes*, Minot, p. 10. In Lanc. a player is still called a *laker*.
- Leyn, *v.* S. to lay, 718. *Leyde*, *pa. t.* laid, 50, 994, &c.; stopped, 229. *Leidest*, *pa. t.* 2 *p.* laicest, 636. *Leyden*, *pa. t. pl.* laid, 1907. *Leyd*, *part. pa.* laid, 1689, 1722, 2839.

- Lich, *adj.* like, 2155.
- Liet, Lith, *n.* S. light, 534, 576, 588, &c.
- Lift, *adj.* S. left (*lævus*), 2130.
- Ligge, Liggen, *v.* S. to lie down; 802, 876, 882, 1374. *See* Lye.
- Lime, Limes. *See* Leme.
- Lite, *adj.* S. little, 276, 1730. *Litel*, 1858, &c. *Little*, 2014.
- Lith. *See* Liet.
- Lith, *imp.* S. light (thou), 585.
- Lith, *adv.* S. lightly, 1942.
- Lith, *n.* S. alleviation, comfort, peace, 1338. *Lyte*, 147. It also occurs as a sb. in *Lazam*. l. 5213. As an *adj.* it occurs in *Lazam*. l. 7242. *Sir Tr.* p. 43, 82. *R. Cœur de L.* 2480, and *Emare*, 348, from the *v.* *liðian*, alleviare. Cf. *Icel.* *lið*, sometimes used to mean *help*. *See* *Leathe* in Atkinson's *Cleveland Glossary*.
- Lith, *n.* S. 2515. This word is explained by *Ritson plains*, by *Hearne tenements*, and by *Jamieson a ridge or ascent*. Its real signification seems unknown, but may be conjectured from the following passages.
- No asked he lond no *lithe*.  
*Sir Tristr.* p. 101.
- Ther wille not be went, ne lete  
ther lond ne *lith*.  
*R. Brunne*, p. 194.
- where it answers to the Fr. *Ne volent lesser tere ne tenement*.
- Who schall us now geve londes or  
*lythe*. *Le Bone Flor.* 841.
- Here I gif Schir Galeron, quod  
Gaynour, withouten ony gile,  
Al the londis and the *lithis* fro laver  
to layre.  
*Sir Gaw. and Sir Gal.* ii. 27.  
[*See* Glossary to *William of Palerne*, s. v. *Lud*.]
- Lithes, *n. pl.* S. the extreme points of the toes, or articulations, 2163. *Fingres lith*, extremum digiti, *Luc.* 16, 24.
- Lipes, *imp. pl.* S. listen, 1400, 2204. *Lytes*, 2576. The verb in the Sax. is *hlystan*, but in *Su.-G.* *lyda*, and *Isl.* *hlyda*, which approaches nearer to the form in the poem. So also in *K. Horn*, 2; *wilen lithe*, MS.; *R. Br.* p. 93; *R. Hood*, i. p. 2; *Minot*, p. 1. Still used in *Sc.* and *N.E.* *V. Jam.* and *Brockett*.
- Littene, *part. pa.* [or *inf.* ?] 2701. "*Qu.* cut in pieces, from the same root as to *lith*, divide the joints. *V. Jam. Suppl.*"—*M.* [Or it may mean disgraced, wounded, defeated. Cf. *Su.-Goth.* *lyta*, to wound; *Icel.* *lyta*, to disgrace; *Sw.* *lyte*, a defect, *litt*, deformed; *Dan.* *lyde*, a blemish.]
- Liue, *n.* S. *dat. c.* life, 232; *brouth of liue*, dead, 513, 2129. *K. Horn*, 188. *Of liue do*, kill, 1805. *Liues*, *gen. c. as adv.* alive, 509, 1003, 1307, 1919, 2854. *See* *On-liue*.
- Liuen, *v.* S. to live, 355. *Liuede*, *Liueden*, *pa. t. pl.* lived, 1299, 2044.
- Lof, *n.* S. loaf, 653.
- Loke, Loken, *v.* S. to look after, take care of, to behold, 376, 2136. *Lokes*, *pr. t. 2 p.* lookest, 2726. *Loke*, *imp.* look, 1680, 1712. *Lokes*, *imp. pl.* look ye, 2240, 2292, 2300, 2579, 2812. *Lokede*, *pa. t.* looked, 679, 1041.
- Loken, Lokene, *part. pa.* S. fastened, locked, closed, 429, 1957. So in the *Const.* *Othonis*, *Tit. de habitu Clericorum*; "In mensura decenti habeant vestes, et *cappis clausis* utuntur in sacris ordinibus constituti." *V. Spelm.* in *v. Cappa clausa*. So also in the *Ancrer Ricle*, fol. 17—"gif he haues a wid hod and a *lokin* cape, &c."
- Lond, Londe, *n.* S. land, 64, 721, &c. *Lon*, 340.
- Long, *adj.* S. tall, 987, 1063. So *K. Horn*, 100.



- Longes, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* S. belongs, 396. R. Br., Chauc., &c.
- Lopen. *See* Lepe.
- Loth, *adj.* S. loath, unwilling, 261, 440, &c. *See* Lef.
- Louede, *pa. t.* S. loved, 71. *Loueden, pa. t. pl.* 955.
- Louerd, *n.* S. lord, master, 96, 483, &c. *Lowerd*, 621.
- Louerdinges, *n. pl.* S. lordings, masters, 515, 1401. *See* Note in Warton's Hist. Engl. Poet. V. i. p. 19. Ed. 1840.
- Loupe. *See* Lepe.
- Low, *pa. t.* S. laughed, 903. K. Horn, 1502. *Lowen, pa. t. pl.* 1056.
- Lowe, *n.* S. [*hleu*] hill, 1291, 1699. Rits. M. R., Web., &c. V. Jam. and Brockett's Gl. v. *Lawe*.
- Lune, *n.* S. love, 195. [*Lune-drurye* seems here to be a compound word, meaning *love-courtship*. *Lufedrouwrie* also = love-token, *Lyndesay's Sq. Meidrum*, 1003. *See* Drurye.]
- Lyen, *v.* S. to lie (in bed), 2134. *Leyen, pt. pl.* lay, 475.
- Lype. *See* Lith.
- Maght, Mait. *See* Mowe.
- Make, *n.* S. mate, companion, wife, 1150. K. Horn, 1427. K. Alisaund. 3314. Ie Bone Flor. 881. Chauc. Sc. *Maik*. V. Jam.
- Maken, *v.* S. to make, 29, &c. *Make*, 676. *Makeden, pa. t. pl.* made, 554. *I-maked, part. pa.* made, 5.
- Male, *n.* Fr. a budget, bag, wallet, 48. Lazamon, l. 3543. Web., Chauc., R. Hood.
- Malisun, *n.* Fr. malediction, curse, 426. Sir Tr. p. 179.
- Manred, Manrede, *n.* S. homage, fealty, 484, 2172, 2180, 2248, 2265, 2312, 2774, 2816, 2847, 2850. Leg. of S. Gregori, ap. Leyd. Compl. of Scotl. *See* Jam. for further examples.
- Marz, *n.* Lat. March, 2559.
- Maugre, Fr. in spite of, 1128, 1789. *See* Tyrwh. Gl. to Chauc. and Jam. in v.
- Maydnes, *n. pl.* S. maidens, 467, 2222.
- Mayster, *n.* Fr. master, 1135; chief, 2028, 2385.
- Mayt, Mayth. *See* Mowe.
- Mede, *n.* S. reward, 102, 685, 1635, 2402.
- Mele, *n.* S. oat-meal, 780.
- Mele, *v.* Fr. to contend in battle, 2059. Gaw. and Gol. ii. 18. *Mellay*, Wynt. viii. 15, 19. V. Jam.
- Meme, 2201, *probably miswritten for neme; see* Nime.
- Men (used with a sing. vb. like the Fr. *on*), men, people, 390, 647, 2610.
- Mene, *v.* S. to mean, signify, 2114. *Menes, pr. t.* 3 *p.* means, 597.
- Menie, *n.* Fr. family, 827. *Meynie*, 834. This word is to be found from the time of Lazamon to Shakespeare. Jamieson attempts to derive it from the North. V. in v. *Menzie*. *See maisnie* in Roquefort.
- Mere, *n.* S. mare, 2449, 2478, 2504.
- Messe, *n.* Fr. Lat. the service of the mass, 243, 1176. *Messe-bok*, mass-book, 186, 391, 2710. *Messe-gere*, all the apparel, &c., pertaining to the service of the mass, 188, 389, 1078, 2217.
- Mest, *adj. sup.* S. greatest, 233. *Moste*, 1287; tallest, 983.
- Mester, *n.* Fr. trade, 823. K. Horn (ed. Lumby), 229.
- Met, *pp.* S. dreamt, 1285.
- Mete, *n.* S. meat, 459, &c. *Metes, pl.* 1733.

- Meynie. *See* Menie.
- Michel, *adj.* S. much, 510, 660.  
*Mik*, 2342. *Mike*, 960 (cf. Horn Childe, ap. Rits. V. 3, 292), 1744, 1761, 2336. *Mikel*, 122, 478, &c.
- Miete, Mieten, Micthe, Mithe, Mithest, Mithen. *See* Mowe.
- Mieth, *n.* S. might, power, 35.
- Middelerd, *n.* S. the earth, world, 2244. *Middelærd*, Lazam., Rits., Web., R. Gl., Minot, &c. So in Sc. V. Jam.
- Mik, Mike, Mikel. *See* Michel.
- Milce, *n.* S. [*mildse*] mercy, 1361. A! me do pine *milce*, Lazam. l. 4681; R. Gl. It is usually coupled with *ore*.
- Milne-hous. *See* Hus.
- Mirke, *adj.* S. dark, 404. R. Br., Lynds.; *merke*, Chauc. Still used in Sc. and N.E. V. Jam.
- Misdede, *pa. t.* S. did amiss, '337; injured, 992, 1371. *Misdo*, *part. pa.* misdone, offended, 2798.
- Misferde, *pa. t.* S. behaved, or proceeded ill, 1869. *See* Faren.
- Misgos, *pr. t. 2 p.* S. goest or behavest amiss, 2707.
- Misseyd, *part. pa.* S. spoken to reproachfully, 1688.
- Mithe, Mythe, *v.* S. [*miðan*] to conceal, hide, dissemble, 652, 948, 1278. Sche might no lenger *mithe*. Horn Childe, ap. Rits. M. R. V. 3, p. 310.
- Mixed, *adj.* vile, base, 2533. From S. *myx*, *finus*. Cf. *Mix* in *William of Palerne*.
- Mo, *adj. comp.* S. more, 1742, 1846.
- Mod, *n.* S. mood, humour, 1703.
- Moder, *n.* S. mother, 974, 1388, &c.
- Mone, *n.* S. moon, 373, 403.
- Mone, *n.* S. mind, say, opinion, 816. Cf. A.S. *myne*, *monian*, *monung*; Icel. *munr*. Hence, to *mone*, to relate, R. Cœur de L. 4636, and to *animadvert*, in Barbour. It appears to express the Fr. phrase *par le mien escient*, K. Horn, 467, MS. Douce. In nearly the same sense *mone* may be found in K. Alisaund. 1281, R. Gl. pp. 281, 293. Cf. ll. 1711, 1972.
- Mone, *v. pl.* [Isl. *mun*] must, 840. *Maun*, Sc. *Mun*, Yorksh. Cumb. V. Jam.
- Morwen, *n.* S. morning, 811, 1131, 2669, &c. *To-morwen*, 530, 810. *Amorwe*, Sir Tr., K. Horn.
- Moste. *See* Mest.
- Mote, *v.* S. may, 19, 406, 1743, 2545. *Moten*, *pl.* 18.
- Moun. *See* Mowe.
- Mowe, *v.* S. *pres. sing.* may, be able, 175, 394, 675. *Mowen*, *pl.* 11. *Moun*, 460, 2587. *Mait*, *pr. t. 2 p.* mayest, 689. *Mayt*, 845, 852, 1219. *Mayth*, 641. *Maght*, *pa. t. 2 p. s.* mightest, 1348. *Mithe*, *Mithest*, 855, 1218. *Miete*, *Micthe*, *Mithe. pa. t. 3 p.* might, 42, 233, 1030, 1080. *Mouchte*, *Moucte*, *Mouthe*, *Mowcte*, 145, 356, 376, &c. *Miete*, *Mieten*, *Mithen*, *pl.* 232, 516, 1929, 2017. *Mouhte*, *Mouthe*, *Mouthen*, 1183, 2019, 2039, 2328, 2330, &c. V. Pegge's Anecd. of Engl. Lang. p. iii.
- Na, *adv.* S. no, 2363, 2530.
- Nam. *See* Nime.
- Nayles, *n. pl.* S. nails, 2163.
- Ne, *adv.* S. nor, 44, &c.
- Nede, *n.* S. need, necessity, 9, &c. *Nedes*, *pl.* 1692.
- Neme. *See* Nime.
- Ner, *adv.* S. near, 990, 1949.
- Nese, *n.* S. nose, 2450.
- Nesh, *adj.* S. [*nesc*] soft, tender, 2743. *Neys*, 217. Web., Rits. M. R., Rob. Br., Chauc. Still used in N.W. part of England.



- Neth, *n.* S. net, 752, 808, 1026 ; *pl. netes*, 783.
- Neth, *n.* S. neat, cattle, 700, 1222. *Netes*, *g. c.* neat's, 781.
- Nepeles, *conj.* S. nevertheless, 1108, 1658.
- Neue, *n.* S. fist, 2405. *Neues*, *pl.* 1917. V. Jam.
- Neure, *adv.* S. not, never, 80, 672; *neuere a polk*, ne'er a pool, 2685. *Neuere kines*, of no kind, 2691.
- Ney, *adv.* nigh, near to, nearly, 464, 640, 2619.
- Neys. *See* Nesh.
- Neyper, Nepe, *pron.* S. neither, not either, 458, 764, 2970, &c. *Noper*, 2623. *Noyper*, 2697.
- Newhen, *v.* S. [*nehwan*] to approach, 1866. In the more recent form to *neigh* it is used in several of the old Romances, Chauc., and Minot.
- Nicht, Nieth, *n.* S. night, 533, 575. *Niht*, 2669. *Nith*, 404, 1247, 1754. *Nithes*, *g. c.* of night, 2100. *Nihtes*, *nithes*, *pl.* 2353; *nihtes*, 2999.
- Nime, *v.* S. *pr. s.* take, or go, 1931. *Nim*, *imp.* take, 1336. *Num*, *pa. t.* took, 900; went, 2930. *Neme*, *pl.* went, 1207; cf. l. 2201. *Nomen*, took, 2790. *Nomen*, *Numen*, *part. pa.* taken, 2265, 2581. *Nimes*, *imp. pl.* go ye, 2594; *nime*, go we, 2600. In the first sense this verb is common in all the Glossaries, but in the latter sense *To go* it occurs nowhere but in the Gl. to Rob. Brunne, who, from being a Lincolnshire man, approaches nearer to the language of the present poem than any other writer. [In N. E. to *nim* is to walk with quick, short steps.]
- Nis, *for* Ne is, is not, 462, 1998, 2244.
- Nither-tale, *n.* S. night-time, 2025. *See* Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 97.
- Noblelike, *adv.* S. nobly, 2640.
- Nok, *n.* [Belg. *nock*] nook, corner, 820; *nouth a ferthinges nok*, not the value of a farthing. The same phr. is in the *Manuel des Pechés* of Rob. of Brunne, MS. Harl. 1701, fol. 39.
- Nomen. *See* Nime.
- Non, *adj.* S. no, 518, 685, 1019; no one, 934, 974.
- Note, *n.* S. a nut, 419. *Nouth*, 1332.
- Noper. *See* Neyper.
- Nou, *adv.* S. now, 328, 1362, &c. *Nu*, 2421, 2460, 2650, &c.
- Nout, Nouth, Nouht, *n.* or *adv.* S. not, naught, nothing, not at all, 249, 505, 566, 648, 1733, 2051, 2822. *Nowt*, *Nowth*, 770, 2168, 2737.
- Nouth. *See* Note.
- Noyper. *See* Neyper.
- Nu. *See* Nou.
- Numen. *See* Nime.
- Nytte, *v.* S. make use of, require for use, 941. A.S. *nyttian*, *neotan*, G. *nützen*, Du. *nutten*.
- O. *See* On.
- Of, *prep.* S. off, 130, 216, 603, 857, 1850, 2444, 2626, 2676, 2751, &c. *Of lond*, out of the land, 2599. Sir Tr.
- Offe, *prep.* S. of, 435. *Of*, 436.
- Offrende, Dan. Fr. offering, 1386.
- Ofte, *adv.* S. often, 226, &c.
- Ok. *See* Ek.
- On, *adj.* S. one, 425, 1800, 2028, 2263, &c.
- On, *in* But on. *See* But.
- On, *prep.* S. in, on. *On liue*, 281, 363, 694, 793, &c. *O line*, 2865. *On two*, 471, 1823, 2730, in two; *a two*, 1413, 2643. *O lond*, 763, on, or in land. *On knes*, 1211,

- 1302, 2710, on knees; *o knes*, 2252, 2796. *On brenne*, 1239, in flame, on fire. *O nith*, 1251, in the night. *On nithes*, 2048. *O worde*, 1349, in the world (*see* Werd). *O mani wise*, 1713, in many a manner. *On gamen*, 1716, in sport. *On lesse hwile*, 1830, in less time. *O bok*, 2307, 2311, on the book. *Wel o bon*, 2355, 2525, 2571, strong of body. *Iuele o bone*, 2505, lean. *On hunting*, 2382. *O stede*, 2549, on steed. *Up-o the dogges*, 2596, on the dogs. From these examples, added to those which occur in every Glossary, it is evident the Sax. prep. *On* was subsequently corrupted to *O* and *A*. *See* Tyrwh. and Jam. *A nycht* in Barb. xix. 657, explained by the latter *one* night, is according to the above rule *In the night*, as confirmed by l. 1251. Sir Tr. pp. 47, 114. R. Glouc.
- One*, *adj.* S. alone, singly, 815, 936, 1153, 1710, 1742, 1973, 2433.  
There hue wonede al *one*.  
*K. Horn*, 80.  
*See* Tyrwh. Gl., Chauc. v. *On*.
- Ones*, *adv.* S. once, 1295.
- Onfrest*, *v.* delay, 1337. From Su.-G. *fresta*, to delay, A.S. *firstan*, from Su.-Goth. *frest* or *frist*, A.S. *fyrst*, a space of time. Cf. Dan. and Sw. *frist*, a truce. *Frest*, delay, Barb. vii. 447.
- Onlepi*. *See* Anilepi.
- Onne*, *prep.* S. on, 347, 1940.
- Onon*, *adv.* S. anon, speedily, 136, 447, 1964, 2790.
- Ontil*, *prep.* S. unto, for, 761.
- Or*, *adv.* S. previously, before, 728, 1943, 1356, 1688, &c. *Or outh longe*, 1789, before any long time.
- Ore*, *n.* S. favour, grace, mercy, 153, 211, 2443, 2797. Ich hadde of hire milse an *ore*. Hule and Nihtingale, l. 1081. Sir Tr. p. 24. *K. Horn* (ed. Lumby), 1509. *See* Tyrwhitt's Note on Chauc. C. T. 3724, and Ritson's Note, Metr. Rom. V. iii. p. 263. A.S. *ár*.
- Ore*, *n.* S. oar, 718, 1871, &c. *Ores*, *pl.* 711.
- Used for* Hosed, 971.
- Oth*, *n.* S. oath, 2009, 2272, &c. *Opes*, *pl.* 2013, 2231, &c.
- Ope for* Oper, 861, 1986, 2970.
- Oper*, *conj.* S. either, or, 94, 674, 787, &c. *See* Ayther.
- Oper*, *adj.* S. [*alter*] the other of two, second, 879. *þe oper day*, 1755, the following day.  
Day hit is igon & *oper*,  
Wipute sail & roþer.  
*K. Horn*, ed. Lumby, 187.  
So also R. Br. p. 169, and Wynt.
- Oper*, *adj.* S. [*alius*] other, 2490. *Opre*, *pl.* others, 1784, 2413, 2416.
- Ouer-fare*, *v.* S. to pass over, cease, 2063. *See* Fare.
- Ouer-go*, *v.* S. to be disregarded, 2220.
- Ouer-gange*, *v.* S. to get the superiority over, 2587.
- Ouer-þwert*, *adv.* S. across, 2822. *Ouerthuert*, R. Br. p. 241. *Ouertwert*, Ly Beaus Desc. 1017. *Overtwarte*, Syr Eglamore, B. iii. Chauc. C. T. 1993.
- Oune*, *adj.* S. own, 375, 2428.
- Oure*, *n.* bank, shore, 321. G. *ufer*. A.S. *ofer*. Cf. "to þan castle of Deoure on þere sæ *oure*." *Lazamon*, l. 31117.
- Outh*, *n.* S. [*awiht*] any space of time, aught, 1189; cf. l. 1789; anything, 703. [*Outh douthe* = was worth anything, was of any value.]
- Palefrey*, *n.* Fr. saddle-horse, 2060. *See* Gl. on Chauc. in v. Pegge's Anec. Engl. Lang. p. 289.
- Pappes*, *n. pl.* Lat. breasts, 2132.

- Parred, *part. pa.* confined, fastened in, barred in, 2439. We have met with this word only in one instance, where Ritson leaves it unexplained.
- Yn al this [tyme] was sir Ywayn  
Ful straitly *parred* with mekil payn.  
*Yw. and Gaw.* 3227.
- [It is undoubtedly equivalent to O.E. *sperre*, or *spere*. Halliwell, s. v. *Parred*, quotes "3e are *parred* in . . . 3e are so *spered* in." So, too, the Ital. *sbarra* is the Fr. *barre*. Cf. A.S. *sparran*, O.N. *sperra*, Sc. *spar*. Hence the derivation of *park*, O.E. *parrock*, an enclosure.]
- Pastees, *n. pl.* Fr. pasties, patés, 644.
- Ther beth bowris and halles,  
Al of *pasteis* beth the walles.  
*Land of Cokaygne*, MS. Harl. 913, f. 5.
- Pateyn, *n.* Lat. the Plate used in the service of the Mass, 187.
- Pape, *n.* S. path, road, 2381, 2390. *Papes*, *pl.* 268.
- Patriark, *n.* Lat. patriarch, 428.
- Payed, *part. pa.* Fr. satisfied, content, 184. Rits. M. R., Web., R. Gl., R. Br. *Apaied*, Chauc.
- Pelle, *v.* drive forth (*intr.*), hurry forth, 810. Deriv. uncertain, unless it be connected with Lat. *pello*, Eng. *impel*. Cf. Eng. *pelt*.
- Peni, *n.* S. penny, 705, 2147. *Penies*, *pl.* 776, 1172.
- Per, *n.* Fr. peer, equal, 989, 2241, 2792.
- Pike, *v.* to pitch (used passively), 707. Teut. *pecken*, Lat. *picare*. The verb in Saxon is not extant, but only the *n. pic*.
- Pine, *n.* S. pain, grief, 405, 540, 1374. Sir Tr. p. 12. V. Jam.
- Pine, *v.* S. to grieve, 1958.
- Plat. See Plette.
- Plattinde, *part. pr.* tramping
- along, moving noisily or hurriedly, 2282. From the beating noise of the feet, like Sc. *platch* (q. v. in Jam.). See Plette.
- Plawe, *v.* S. to play, 950. *Pleye*, 951.
- Playces, *n. pl.* plaice, 896.
- Pleinte, *n.* Fr. complaint, 134. *Pleynte*, 2961.
- Plette, *v.* S. [*plættian*] to strike, 2444. *Plat*, *pa. t.* struck, 2755. *Plette*, 2626; *pl. plette*, hurried, moved noisily, 2613. [Cf. *Plattinde*, and note the double use of Sc. *skelp*, to beat, to hurry, and O.E. *strike*, to beat, to move along.]
- Plith, *n.* S. [*pliht*] harm, 1370, 2002. *Lazam.* l. 3897.
- Poke, *n.* S. a bag, 555, 769. *Pokes*, *pl.* 780.
- Poles, *n. pl.* S. pools, ponds of water, 2101.
- Polk, *n.* S. pool, puddle, 2685. *Pow*, Sir Tr. p. 171. *Pulk*, Somersetsh.
- Pouere, Poure, *adj.* Fr. poor, 58, 101, 2457, &c.
- Poureluke, *adv.* poorly, 323.
- Prangled, *part. pa.* compressed, 639. Cf. Du. *prangen*, to pinch; Dan. *prange Seil*, to crowd sail.
- Preie, *pr. t.* S. pray, 1440. *Prey*, *imp.* pray (thou), 1343. *Preide*, *pa. t.* prayed, 209.
- Prest, *n.* S. priest, 429, 1829. *Prestes*, *pl.* 2583.
- Priken, *v.* S. to spur a horse, ride briskly, 2639.
- Prud, *adj.* S. proud, 302.
- Pulten, *pa. t. pl.* so reads the MS. l. 1023, instead of *putten*. Both have the same signification. So in the Romance of *Rob. of Cecyle*, Harl. MS. 1701, f. 94, c. 1, *pulte* occurs for *put*, placed, and *pyll* in R. Cœur de L. 4085; *pelte*, Sir Tr. p. 95. In the *imp.* *Pult*



- for *put*, *place*, is used in *Hending the Hende*, MS. Digb. 86. In the signification of *drove forward*, which is nearer to the sense we require, we find *pylte* in K. Horn, 1433, and R. Glouc. Hence the Engl. word *pell*. See *Putten*. Cf. *Pult* in Gl. to *Will. of Palerne*.
- Pund*, *n. pl.* S. pounds, 1633.
- Put*, *n.* cast, throw, 1055. *But*, 1040.
- Putten*, *v.* to cast, throw, propel forward, 1033, 1044. *Puten*, 1051. *Putte*, *pa. t.* cast, 1052. *Putten*, *pa. t. pl.* cast, threw, 1023, 1031, 1844. From the Fr. *bouter*, Teut. *buitten*, or Belg. *botten*, to drive or propel forward, or, as others suggest, from the Br. *putiaw*, which has the same meaning, or Isl. *potta*. From the same root are derived both *Put* and *But*. Thus to *butt* in Sc. is to drive at a stone in curling, and to *put* in Yorksh. is to push with the horns. In the passage before us it is applied to a particular game, formerly in great repute. See Note on l. 1022. Cf. Ramsay's Poems, ii. 106. The word is still retained in the North, and Sc. V. Jam. and Brockett. See *But* and *Pulten*.
- Putting*, *Puttinge*, *n.* casting, 1042, 1057, 2324.
- Pymment*, *n.* B. L. spiced wine, 1728. See Note on l. 1726.
- Qual*, *n.* S. [*hwæl*] whale or grampus, 753. See *Hwel*.
- Quan*, *Quanne*, *adv.* S. when, 134, 204, 240, &c. See *Hwan*.
- Quath*, *pa. t.* S. quoth, 606, 642, &c. *Hwat*, 1650, 1878. *Wat*, 595. *Quod*, 1888. *Quodh*, 1801. *Quot*, 1954, 2808. *Couth*, 2606.
- Queme*, *adj.* S. agreeable, 130, 393. Web., Rits. M. R., Rob. Br., R. Glouc., Gower, Chauc.
- Quen*, *n.* S. queen, 2760, 2783, &c. *Quenes*, *pl.* 2982.
- Qui*. See *Hwi*.
- Quic*, *Quik*, *adj.* S. alive, 612, 613, 1405, 2210, 2476, &c., *quik and ded*. This is the usual language of the Inquisitiones post mortem, which commence at the early part of Henry III. reign. For the usage of the term, see Gl. to Sir Tr. p. 98. Yw. and Gaw. 668. Chron. of Engl. 762, &c. The word is preserved in the vulgar version of the Scriptures, and Creed. *Quike*, quick, alert, 1348. *Al quic wede*, 2641. Cf. l. 2387.
- Quiste*, *n.* S. [*cwide*] bequest, will, 219, 365. *Quede*, K. Alisaund. 8020.
- Quod*, *Quodh*, *Quot*. See *Quath*.
- Radde*. See *Rede*.
- Ran*. See *Renne*.
- Rang*, *adj.* S. [*ranc*] perverse, rebellious, 2561.
- Rath*, *n.* S. counsel; hence, an adviser, 75. *Dat. c. rathe*, in the phrase *to rathe*, 2542; for the meaning of which, see *Red*.
- Rape*, *adv.* S. speedily, readily, quickly, 358, &c. (In l. 1335, I prefer considering it as a verb.)
- Rathe*, *v.* S. [*raedan*] to advise, 1335. A provincial pronunciation of *Rede*. In l. 2817, it is still broader, "Yif ye it wilen and ek *rothe*." In the same manner *Rode* is spelt. and was undoubtedly pronounced *Rothe*, Ly Beaus Desc. 425, and *Abode* is spelt *Abothe*, ib. 1118. Cf. ll. 693, 1681, 2585, of the present poem, in all which instances the *d* in *rede* has the sound of *th*.
- Recke*, *pr. t. subj.* S. may reckon, may care, 2047, 2511. Sir Tr. p. 124, &c.
- Red*, *n.* S. advice, counsel, 180, 518, 826, 1194, 2871, &c. *To rede*, lit. for a counsel, i.e. advisable, 118, 693; spelt *to rathe*, 2542.

- Rede, *v.* S. to direct, advise, 104, 148, 361, 687, &c. *Radde*, *pa. t.* advised, 1353. V. Jam. in *v.* and Hearne's Gl. to R. Glouc.
- Reft, Refte, Reftes. *See* Reue.
- Regne, *pr. t. pl.* Fr. Lat. reign, assume the superiority, 2586. *Reng*, *Ring*, *Sc.* V. Jam. in *v.*
- Renne, *v.* S. to run, 1161, 1904. *Ran on blode*, *pa. t.* 432. So in Sir Tr. p. 176, *His heued ran on blod*; and in MS. Harl. 2253, f. 128, Lutel wot hit any mon hou loue hym haueth y-bounden, That for vs o the rode *ron*, ant bohte vs with is wounde.
- Reue, *n.* S. magistrate, 1627. *See* Greoue.
- Reue, Reuen, *v.* S. [*reafian*] to take away, bereave, rob, 480, 2590, 2991. *Refte*, *pa. t.* took away, bereaved, 2223, 2485. *Reftes*, *pa. t.* 2 *p.* took away, 2394. *Reft*, *part. pa.* taken away, bereaved, 1367, 1672, 2483; spoiled, 2004. Still used in the North.
- Reures, *n. pl.* S. robbers, bereavers, 2104.  
Alle bacbiteres wendet to helle,  
Robberes & reures & the mon-  
quelle.  
*A lutel sermun*, MS. Cal. A. ix. f. 246, b.  
V. Jam. in *v.* *Reyffar*.
- Reunesse, Rewnesse, *n.* S. compassion, 502, 2227.
- Rewe, *v.* S. to have pity, to compassionate, 497, 967. *Rewede*, *pa. t. (impersonal)* 503.
- Richelike, *adv.* S. richly, 421.
- Rieth, Riethe. *See* Rith, Rithe.
- Riethwise, *adj.* S. [*rihtwis*] righteous, just, 37. Rits., Web. M. R., Rob. Br., Minot, Lynds., R. Hood. [MS. *has* rirth wise.]
- Riden, *v.* S. to ride, 10, &c.
- Rig, *n.* S. back, 1775. So in *Lazam*. l. 6718. Burne he warp on *rigge*.
- Rike, *n.* S. kingdom, 290. *Heuene riche*, 133, 407. *See* Cunn-riche.
- Rim, Rym, *n.* S. Fr. rhyme, poem, 21, 2995, 2998. So Chauc. *Rime of Sire Thopas*. [The modern false spelling *rhyme* is due to confusion of Eng. *rime* with the Gk. *rhythm*.]
- Ringen, *v.* S. to ring, 242, 1106. *Ringes*, *pr. t. sing.* ring, 390. *Rungen*, *part. pa.* rung, 1132.
- Ringes, *n. pl.* S. rings of mail, 2740. *See* Brini.
- Rippe, *n.* fish-basket, 893. Hence a *Rippar*, B. Lat. *riparius*, is a person who brings fish from the coast to sell in the interior. V. Spelm. in *v.* Nares prefers the etymology of *ripa*, but without reason. *Rip* is still provincial for an osier basket. *See* Jam. and Moore. So also in a curious Latin and English Vocabulary, written out by Sire John Mendames, Parson of Broomenstrophe [Broomsthorp, Co. Norf.] in the middle of the 15th cent., and now preserved in the valuable MSS. library of T. W. Coke, Esq. *Cophinus* is explained *A beryng lepe, or ryppe*, terms still retained in the county. Jam. gives Icel. *hrip*, a basket.
- Rith, Rieth, *n.* S. right, justice, inheritance, 36, 395, 1099, 1383, 2717.
- Rith, *adj.* S. right (*dexter*), 604, 1812, 2140, 2545, 2725.
- Rithe, Riethe, *adj.* S. right (*rectus*), 772, 846, 1201, 2235, 2473.
- Rith, Rithe, *adv.* S. rightly, 420, 1701, 2611, &c.; exactly, just, 572, 2494, 2506.
- Ritte, *v.* to rip, make an incision, 2495.  
The breeche adoun he threst,  
He *ritt*, and gan to right.  
*Sir Tristr.* p. 33.  
[Cf. Sw. *rista*, Dan. *riste*, to slash, cut; G. *ritzen*. Perhaps connected also with Du. *rijten*, G. *reissen*, to tear.]



- Robben, *v.* S. to rob, 1958.
- Rode, *n.* S. the rood, cross, 103, 431, 1357, &c. V. Todd's Gl. Illustr. Chauc.
- Rof, *n.* S. roof, 2082.
- Rome, *v.* S. to roam, travel about, 64.
- Rore, *v.* S. to roar, 2496, &c. *Rorede*, *pa. t.* roared, 2438.
- Roser, *n.* Fr. rose-bush, 2919. Chauc., Pers. Tale, *De luxuria*.
- Rothe. *See* Rathe.
- Rowte, *v.* S. [*hrutan*] to roar, 1911. R. Cœur de L. 4304. V. Gl. Lynds. and Jam. in *v.* Cf. Icel. *hrjota*, Sw. *ryte*. The word is still retained in the provinces. V. Brockett and Wilbr.
- Runci, *n.* B. Lat. a horse of burden, 2569. V. Du Cange and Spelm. The word is common both in Fr. and Engl. writers. Cf. Span. *Rozin-ante*.
- Rungen. *See* Ringen.
- Rym. *See* Rim.
- Sal *for* Shall, 628.
- Same *for* Shame, 1941. V. Jam.
- Samen, *adv.* S. together, 467, 979, 1717, &c. Web., Rits. M. R., Rob. Br. So also in Sc. V. Jam.
- Samened, *part. pa.* S. assembled, united, 2890. Web., R. Br. p. 2.
- Sare, *adv.* S. sore, sorrowfully, 401.
- Sat, *pa. t.* S. opposed, 2567. *See* Atsitte. In Sc. is *Sit*, *Sist*, to stop, from Lat. *sistere*. V. Jam.
- Sautres, *n. pl.* Fr. Lat. Psalters, Hymns for the Office of the Dead, 244.
- Sawe, *written for* sa we, i. e. say we, 338.
- Sawe, Sawen, Say. *See* Se.
- Sayse, *v.* B. Lat. to seise, give seisin or livery of land, 251, 2518. *Seysed*, *pa. t.* seised, 2931, *part. pa.* 2513. Horn Childe, ap. Rits. M. R. V. 3, p. 309.
- Scabbed, Skabbed, *adj.* S. Lat. scabby, scurvy, 2449, 2505.
- Scape, *n.* S. harm, injury, 1352. *Scapes*, *pl.* 269. R. Br., V. Gl. *Skaith*, Sc. V. Jam.
- Sche, Scho, Sho, *pron.* S. she, 112, 126, 649, 1721, &c.
- Schifte *for* Shrift, absolution, 1829.
- Schoten, Shoten, *pa. t. pl.* S. shot, cast, 1838, 1864. *Scuten*, 2431.
- Schulle, *n.* a plaice, 759. Sw. *skolla*, a plaice. *See* Coleridge's Glossarial Index.
- Se (*the* S. *art.*) the, but perhaps a mistake of the scribe, l. 534, as it is not elsewhere used.
- Se, *n.* S. sea, 535, &c.; *gen.* seis, 321.
- Se, Sen, *v.* S. to see, 1021, 1273, &c. *Sest*, *pr. t.* 2 p. seest, 534. *Sen*, *pr. t. pl.* see, 168, 1217. *Sawe*, *Sowe*, *pa. t.* saw, 1182, 1323. *Say*, 881. *Saven*, *Sowen*, *pa. t. pl.* 957, 1055, 2255. *Sene*, *part. pa.* 656.
- Seckes, *n. pl.* S. sacks, 2019.
- Segges, *n. pl.* Fr. [*seches*] 896. In Cotgr. the *Seche* is explained the Sound, or Cuttle fish. The *Seches de Coutance* were held in the highest estimation. V. Le Grand. *See* also Jam. *v.* *Sye*.
- Sei, *v.* *See* Seyen.
- Seis. *See* Se.
- Seken, *v.* S. to seek, 1629. The reading is confirmed by an old poem in MS. Digb. 86.
- Sire, we ben knizttes fer i-fare, For to *sechen* wide-ware. *La vie saint Eustace, qui out noun Placidus*.
- Selcouth, *n.* S. wonder, strange thing, 124, 1059. *Selcuth*, 2119. It was in all probability originally

- an *adj.* as *Selkuth*. Strange, wonderful, 1284.
- Sele, *n.* S. seal, 755.
- Seli, *adj.* S. simple, harmless, 477, 499. R. Gl., Chauc.
- Selthe, *n.* S. success, 1338. A.S. *sēlð*. [Cf. *selehðe* in *Lazam.* l. 25136, and see *selehðe* in Stratmann's Dictionary of Old English. The line seems to be a proverb, and the meaning is—"Rest and success are companions." Goldborough tells him to avoid delay, since rest may accompany success, but cannot precede it.]
- Sembling, *n.* Fr. assembling, 1018. It may also be compared with the Su.-G. *samlung*, conventus.
- Semes, *pr. t.* in the phrase, *hire semes* = it beseems her, it becomes her, 2916. *Semedede*, *pa. t.* was suitable, was fit, 976. See *Seem* in Wedgwood.
- Sen, Sene. See *Se*.
- Sendes, *pr. t.* sendeth, sends, 2392. *Sende*, *pa. t.* sent, 136, &c.
- Serf-borw, *n.* S. surety, pledge, 1667. In MS. Soc. Antiq. No. 60, known by the name of *The Black Book of Peterborough*, is an instrument in which many names both of Saxon and Danish origin appear as the *Borhhanda*, or Sureties, otherwise called *Festermen*. See Jam. and the Glossaries, for further examples.
- Serganz, *n. pl.* Fr. attendants, officers, 2088, 2091, 2116. *Sergaunz*, 1929, 2361, 2371. *Seriaunz*, 2066. V. Spelm. in v. *Servientes*, and Hickes, Thes. T. i. p. 148.
- Serges. See *Cerges*.
- Serk, *n.* S. shirt, 603. Emare, 501. R. Br.
- Seruen, *v. S.* to serve, 1230.
- Seruede, *pa. t.* S. deserved, 1914. Web. M. R. So in Sc. V. Jam.
- Sest. See *Se*.
- Sette, *v. S.* to set, descend, 2671.
- Sette, *pa. t.* S. set, placed, 2405; appointed, 2571. *Setten*, *pa. t. pl.* set, 1211. *Sette*, *part. pa.* set, placed, 2612.
- Seyen, *v. S.* to say, 2886. *Seyst*, *pr. t.* 2 p. sayest, 2008. *Seyde*, *pa. t.* 3 p. said, 117, &c. *Seyden*, *pa. t. pl.* said, 376, 1213. *Seyden*, have said, 456. *Sey*, *part. pa.* said, 2993.
- Seysed. See *Sayse*.
- Seyst. See *Seyen*.
- Seyt, *pr. t. s.* put for *seyt* it, i. e. say it; or else put for *seyth*, i. e. say, 647. So in Sir Tr. p. 117, For mani men *seyt* ay whare.
- Shaltou, shalt thou, 1800. *Shaltow*, 1322. *Shaltu*, 2180, 2186, 2882, 2901.
- Shameliike, *adv. S.* shamefully, disgracefully, 2825. *Schamliche*, Sir Tr. p. 93
- Shankes, *n. pl. S.* legs, 1903. *Sconke*, *Lazam.* l. 15215. See Rits. A.S. p. 16, and Diss. p. xxxi. *Schankis*, Sc. V. Jam.
- Shar, *pa. t. S.* share, cut, 1413. So in Am. and Amil. 2298, Her throtes he *schar atro*.
- Shauwe, Shawe, *v. S.* to shew, 2206, 2784. *Sheu*, 1401.
- Shel, Sheld, *n. S.* shield, 489, 624, 1653, &c.
- Shende, *v. S.* to ruin, destroy, 1422. Bevis of H. ap. Ellis, M. R. V. 2, p. 99. Chauc. *Shent*, *pa. t.* shamed, disgraced, 2749; *part. pa.* shend, 2845. The more common sense of this verb is the latter. V. Jam.
- Shere. Clearly miswritten for *she were*, 1250.
- Sheu. See *Shauwe*.
- Shides, *n. pl. S.* It here expresses pieces of wood cleft at the end, 917. In Doug. Virg. *Schide* signifies a billet of wood, 223, 10;

- or a chip, splinter, 207, 8. So in *Rauf Coilzear*, st. 39, Schaftes of schene wode they scheueride in *schides*. So also in P. Pl. The word is preserved in Lanc. This custom of skinning eels by inserting the head in a cleft stick, is still practised, we are informed, in the fish markets.
- Shir, *adj.* S. bright, 588, 916, 1253, &c.
- Shireue, *n.* S. sheriff, 2286. *Schireues*, *pl.* 266.
- Sho, *pron.* See Sche.
- Sho, *v.* S. to shoe, 1138.
- Shof, *pa. t.* S. shoved, pushed, 871, 892.
- Shol, 1 *p. s.* (if I) shall, 1782. *Sal*, I shall, 628. *Shole*, *pl.* shall, 562, 645. 1788. *Shul*, 328. *Sholen*, 621, 1127, 1230, &c. *Shulen*, 731, 747, &c. *Shoren* (so in MS.), 1640. *Sule*, shall ye, will ye, 2419. *Shude*, I should, 1079. *Sholdest*, shouldst, 2712. *Sholden*, *pl.* 1020, 1195. *Shulden*, 941.
- Sholdre, *n.* S. shoulder, 2738. *Shuldre*, 604, 1262. *Shudre-blade*, 2644. *Sholdres*, *pl.* shoulders, 1647, 1818. *Shuldren*, 982.
- Shon, *n. pl.* S. shoes, 860, 969.
- Shop, *qu.* Shok, shook, struck, destroyed, 1101. But Sewel gives Du. *schoppen*, to strike. Cf. Eng. *chop*.
- Shotshipe, *n.* S. [*scot*, symbolum, *scipe*, societas] An assembly of persons who pay pecuniary contribution or reckoning, 2099.  
For al Sikelines quiden  
*Sotscipe* heo heolden,  
And swa longe swa beoð æwere,  
Ne scal hit stonde næwere.  
*Lazam.* l. 23177.  
Cf. *sotschipes*, *pl.* in Leg. of St. Kath. MS. Cott. Tit. D 18, fol. 144 b. See Nares, *v.* *Shot-clog*.
- Shrede, *n.* S. a fragment, piece cut off, 99. [As it was given off the "board," to "feed the poor," it must mean a piece of bread or meat. Correct "*shrede* = clothing" in Coleridge's Glossarial Index.]
- Shres, *n.* S. shears, 857.
- Shride, *v.* S. to clothe (himself), 963. *Shrid*, *part. pa.* clothed, 978.
- Shriue, Shriuen, *v.* S. to confess, make confession, 362, 2598. *Shriue*, *Shriuen*, *part. pa.* 364, 2489.
- Shrud, *n.* S. clothing, 303.
- Shude, Shul, Shulen. See Shol.
- Shuldre, Shuldren. See Sholdre.
- Shuldreden, *pa. t. pl.* S. shouldered, 1056.
- Sibbe, *adj.* S. related, allied, 2277. Sir Tr. p. 44. See Fremde.
- Siden, *n. pl.* S. sides, 371.
- Sike, *v.* S. to sigh, 291.
- Siking, *n.* S. sighing, 234.
- Sikerlike, *adv.* S. surely, 422, 625, 2301, 2707, 2871. *Sikerly*, Sir Tr. p. 35, &c.
- Sikernesse, *n.* S. surety, security, 2856. R. Glouc., R. Br., Chauc.
- Simenels, *n. pl.* Fr. 779, a finer sort of bread, "q. a *simila* h. e. puriori farinæ parte." *Spelm.* Assis. pan. 51 Hen. III. *Symnellus* vero de quadrante ponderabit 2 sol. minus quam Wastellum. It elsewhere appears to be a sort of cake, or cracknel. So in the *Crieries de Paris*, v. 163, Chaudes tartes et *siminiaus*. V. Nares in v.
- Sinne, *n.* S. fault, 1976. *Ne for loue ne for sinne*, 2375. *Wolde he nouth for sinne lette*, 2627. Traces of this phrase may be elsewhere found:  
Neyther for *love* nor yet for *awe*  
Lyuinge man none than they saw.  
*Sir Degore*, c. iv.
- Maboun and Lybeaus  
Faste togedere hewes.  
And stente for no *synne*.  
*Iy Beaus Desc.* 1957.



- Sire, Syre, *n.* Fr. The term in ll. 310, 1229, is used not only to express respect, but command. A parallel passage is in R. Cœur de L. 2247. It simply means *Sir*, ll. 909, 2009.
- Site, *v.* S. to sit, 2809. *Sittes*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* sittest, 1316. *Sitten*, *pr. t. pl.* sit, 2098. *Site on knees*, i. e. kneel, 2708.
- Sipe, Sipen, *adv.* S. then, afterwards, after, 399, 472, 1414, 1814, 1988, &c.
- Sipe, *n.* S. time, 1052. *Sipe*, *Sipes*, *pl.* 213, 778, 1737, 2189. *Sybe*, *Sybes*, 2162, 2843. Sir Tr. p. 55, &c.
- Sket, *adv.* quickly, soon, 1926, 1960, 2303, 2493, 2513, 2574, 2736, 2839. Sir Tr. pp. 36, 40, &c.; Ly Beaus Desc. 484; K. Alisaund. 3047; R. Cœur de L. 806; Rom. of Merlin, ap. Ellis, M. R. V. i. p. 228. [Icel. *skjótt*, quickly, from *skjótr*, quick, swift. The adj. is still preserved in the surname Skeat or Skeet.]
- Skirming, *n.* Fr. skirmishing, 2323. Web. M. R. See Note on l. 2320.
- Slawe, Slawen. See Slo.
- Slenge, *v.* S. to sling, cast out, 2435. *Slenget*, *part. pa.* slung, 1923.
- Slepes, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* sleepest, 1283.
- Sleie, Sley, *adj.* skilful, expert, 1084, 2116. Sir Tr. pp. 23, 28; Horn Childe, ap. Rits. M. R. V. 3, p. 296; Emare, 67; R. Glouc. p. 350; Barb. xix 179; Doug. 137, 12. Jamieson derives it from Su.-G. *slug*, Isl. *slægr*. Cf. Sw. *slug*.
- Slike, *adv.* or perhaps *adj.* smoothly, or smooth, 1157. "*Slyke*, or smothe. *Lenis*." Prompt. Parv.
- Slo, *n.* S. sloe, berry, 849, 2051.
- Slo, *v.* S. to slay, 512, 1364, 1412, &c. *Slou*, 2543. *Slos*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* slayest, 2706. *Slos*, *imp. pl.* strike ye, 2596. *Slou*, *Slow*, *pa. t.* slew, 501; struck, 2633. *Slowe*, *Slowen*, *pa. t. pl.* slew, 2414, 2427, 2432; struck, fought, 2683. *Slawe*, *Slawen*, *part. pa.* slain, 1803, 1928, 2000, &c. In l. 2747 (as in 2596, 2633, 2683) it has only the sense of *struck*, wounded, agreeably to the signification of the original word, *sleán*, *sledhan*, *Cædere*, *ferire*.
- Smerte, *adj. pl.* S. painful, 2055.
- Smerte, *v.* S. to smart, 2647.
- Smot, *pa. t.* S. smote, 2654.
- So, a large tub, 933. See *So* in Halliwell. Dan. *saa*, a pail.
- So, *conj.* S. as, 279, 349, *et pass.*
- Softe, *adj.* S. of a mild disposition, 991.
- Softe, *adv.* S. gently, 2618.
- Somdel, *adj.* S. somewhat, in some measure, 240. *Sumdel*, 450, 497, 1054, 2306, 2950. Web., R. Gl., Chauc.
- Sond, *n.* S. sand, 708, 735.
- Sone, *n.* S. son, 660, 839. *Sones*, *pl.* 2980.
- Sone, *adv.* S. soon, 78, &c.; so soon as, 1354.
- Sor, *n.* S. sorrow, 234. *Sorwe*, 1374; pain, sore, 1988.
- Sor, *adj.* S. sore, detestable, 2229. [Perhaps it should be *sori*.]
- Sorful, *adj.* S. sorrowful, 151, 2541.
- Sori, *adj.* S. sorrowful, 151, 477.
- Soth, Sothe, *n.* S. truth, 36, 647, 2008, &c.
- Soplike, *adv.* S. truly, 276.
- Soupe, *v.* Fr. to sup, 1766.
- Southe, *pa. t.* S. sought, 1085.
- Sowe, Sowen. See Se.
- Sowel, *n.* victuals, 767, 1143, 2905. Properly, anything eaten with bread as a relish. See *Sool* in Halliwell. Dan. *saul*.



Span-newe, *adj.* quite new, 968.

This is the earliest instance on record of the use of this word. For its disputed etymology see Jam., Nares, Todd's Johns., and Thoms. Etymons; but especially Wedgwood's Etym. Diet. *Span* = chip; *Span-new*, chip-new. A.S. *spōn*. It occurs in Chauc. Troil. iii. 1671.

Sparkede, *pa. t.* S. sparkled, 2144.

Spede, *v.* S. to speed, prosper, 1634.

Speke, *n.* S. speech, 946.

Speke, Speken, *v.* S. to speak, 326, 369, 548, 1070, &c. *Spak*, *pa. t.* spoke, 2389, 2968. *Speken*, *part. pa.* spoken, 2369.

Spelle, *n.* S. story, relation, 338. K. Horn, 951.

Spelle, *v.* S. to relate, tell forth, 15, 2530.

Spen for Spent, 1819.

Sperd, Sperde, *part. pa.* S. barred, bolted, 414, 448. Still common in the North. V. Brockett.

Spille, *v.* S. to perish, 2422. Of *limes spille*, 86, suffer the loss of limbs. K. Horn, 202. Web., Chauc.

Spired, *part. pa.* S. speered, inquired, 2620. V. Jam. in v.

Spore, *n.* S. spur, 2569.

Sprauleden, *pa. t. pl.* S. sprawled, 475.

Sprong, *pa. t.* S. sprung, 959. See the Note. *Sprongen*, 869. *Sprungen*, *part. pa.* risen, 1131.

Sprote, *n.* S. sprout, 1142. A.S. *sprote*, a sprig, sprout.

Spuse, Spusen, *v.* S. to espouse, marry, 1123, 1170, 2875. *Spusede*, *pa. t. pl.* espoused, 2887. *Spused*, *part. pa.* 1175, 2928. *Spuset*, 1266.

Spusing, *n.* S. espousals, marriage, 1164, 1177, 2886.

Stac, *n.* S. 814. [This I believe to mean simply a stack, or heap,

like the Dan. *stak*, Sw. *stack*. I add Sir F. Madden's note in the edition of 1828.] A stack, or, more properly, *stick* of fish, a term applied to eels when strung on a row, 'sic dicta, quod trajectory vine (quod *stic* dicimus) connectebantur.' *Spelm.* A *stica* consisted of 25 eels, and 10 *Sticæ* made a *Binde*. Glanv. lib. 2, c. 9.

Stalworpi, Stalworpe, Stalwrthe, *adj.* S. strong, valiant, courageous, 24, 904, 1027, &c. *Stalworpeste*, *sup.* 25.

Stan-ded, *adj.* S. dead as a stone, completely dead, 1815. *Stille als a ston*, 928. Cf. K. of Tars, 549; Erle of Tol. 754; Launfal, 357. See Gl. to *Partenay*.

Star, *n.* Icel. a species of sedge, 939. Icel. *stör*; Sw. *starr*; Dan. *stær*. See the Note.

Stareden, *pt. t. pl.* 1037. Probably miswritten for Stradden, contended. Cf. Su.-Goth. and Sw. *strida*, to contend.

Starinde, *part. pr.* staring, 508.

Stark, *adj.* S. stiff, stout, strong, 341, 380, 608, &c. V. Jam. in v.

Stede, *n.* S. steed, horse, 10, &c.

Stede, *n.* S. place, 142, 744. *Stedes*, *pl.* 1846.

Stem, *n.* S. a ray of light, beam, 591. It is equivalent to *Glem*, l. 2122.

Therewith he blinded them so close, A *stime* they could not see.

R. Hood, i. 112.

Cf. Brockett's Gl. in v. *Stime*.

Sternes, *n. pl.* stars, 1809. *Ageyn pe sternes* = exposed to the sky, or to the open air.

Stert, *n.* S. leap, 1873. Chaucer has at a *stert* for immediately, C. T. 1707.

Stert, *n.* S. [*steort*, cauda] tail, 2823. *Start* is still retained in the North.

Steuene, *n.* S. voice, 1275.

- Sti, *n.* S. road, way, 2618. Sir Tr. p. 192; Yw. and Gaw. 599; Emare, 196; Sevnyn Sages, 712; R. Br. Chaucer uses *stile* in the same sense, C. T. 12628, and Minot, p. 5, in both which passages the respective Editors have made the same mistake in explaining it. [Cf. G. *steg*, a pass.]
- Stille, *adj.* S. quiet, 955, 2309.
- Stille, *adv.* S. in a low voice, secretly, 2997. Sir Tr. p. 55; K. Horn, 315.
- Stirt, Stirte, *pa. t.* S. started, leaped, 398, 566, 873, 1049, &c. *Stirte, Stirten, pa. t. pl.* started, hurried, 599, 1964, 2609. Derived by Skinner from S. *astirian*, move, by Jam. from Teut. *steerten*, volare. See Astirte. Cf. G. *stürzen*; and see *Start* in Wedgwood.
- Stith, *n.* S. anvil, 1877. Chauc. Still provincial. V. Moore, and Brockett.
- Stiward, *n.* S. steward, 666.
- Stonden, *v.* S. to stand, 689. *Stondes, pr. t. 3 p.* standeth, stands, 2240, 2983. *Stod, pa. t.* stood, 591, 679. *Stoden, pa. t. pl.* 1037.
- Stor, *adj.* S. hardy, stout, 2383. Lazam. l. 9126; Yw. and Gaw. 1297; Chron. of Engl. 464; Sq. of Lowe D. 658; Ly Beaus Desc. 1766. *Steir, Sture*, Sc. ap. Jam. Cf. Sw. *stor*.
- Stra, *n.* S. straw, 315, 466. A.S. *streow, streaw*. Cf. Strie.
- Strenes, *pr. t. 3 p.* S. begets, 2983. From *streónan*, gignere. Cf. K. Alisaund. 7057.
- Strie, *n.* a straw, 998. See Stra.
- Strout, *n.* dispute, contention, 1039. Cf. A.S. *strúdan*, and *Strother* in Atkinson's Cleveland Glossary.
- Stroute, *v.* S. to make a disturbance, 1779. Bosworth explains A.S. *strúdan*, *strútian*, as having originally the sense to bustle about.
- Stunde, *n.* S. short space of time, 2614. V. Gl. to R. Glouc. See Vmbestonde.
- Sturgiun, Sturgun, *n.* sturgeon, 753, 1727. Cf. Sw. *stör*, Dan. *stör*.
- Suere, Suereth. See Sweren.
- Suete, *adj.* S. sweet, 1388. Cf. l. 2927.
- Sueyn, Sweyn, *n.* S. swain, villain, 343, 1328, &c. *Sweynes, pl.* 371, 2195. It is generally used in opposition to *knight*.
- Svich, *adj.* S. such, 60.
- Suilk, *adj.* such (things), 644. See Swilk.
- Sule. See Shol.
- Sumdel. See Somdel.
- Sunne-bem, *n.* S. sun-beam, 592, 2123.
- Swerd, *n.* S. sword, 1759, &c. *Swerdes, pl.* 1769, 2659.
- Sweren, *v.* S. to swear, 494. *Suereth, pr. t. s.* swear, 647. *Swor, pa. t.* swore, 398, 2367. *Suere, pr. subj. 2 p. s.* 388.
- Swike, *n.* S. deceiver, traitor, 423, 551, 626, 1158, 2401, 2451, &c. *Swikes, pl.* 2834, 2990. Lazam. l. 12942; R. Gl. p. 105.
- Swikel, *adj.* S. deceitful, 1108.  
For alle pine witen  
Beoð swiðe swikele.  
Lazam. l. 15848.  
Hoe beth of swikele kunne  
Ther mide the witherwinne.  
The sawe of Seint Bede, MS.  
Digb. 86.  
He was swikel, fals, ant fel.  
Chron. of Engl. 791.
- Swilen, *v.* S. [*swilian*, Ps. vi. 6] to wash, 919. It occurs also in Rob. of Brunne's *Handling Sinne*, l. 5828. Still provincial.
- Swilk, *adj.* S. such, 1118, 1625, 2123, 2684, 2783. *Suilk*, 644.

- Swinge, *v.* S. to beat, chastise (used *passively*), 214. *Swngen*, *part. pa.* beaten, 226. *Lazani*. l. 21070. So in *Syr Bevys*, C. ii. All at ones on him they *swonge*. In the North the verb retains the same meaning; *v.* Brockett.
- Swink, *n.* S. labour, 770, 801, 2456.
- Swinken, *v.* S. to labour, 798. *Swank*, *pa. t.* laboured, 788.
- Swire, *n.* S. neck, 311. Formerly in universal use, and still preserved in the provinces.
- Swipe, Swype, *adv.* S. very, exceedingly, 110, 217, 341. Quickly, 140, 682, 690; *ful swithe*, 2436, appears a pleonasm. *Swithe forth and rathe*, quickly forth, and soon, 2594.
- Swot, *n.* S. sweat, perspiration, 2662. The word has the same meaning in *Cædmon*, f. 24, ed. Thorpe, p. 31, l. 8, which seems to contradict Mr Price's assertion to the contrary, in Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetr.* p. lxxi., ed. 1840.
- Swngen. See Swinge.
- Syre. See Sire.
- Sype, Sypes. See Sipe.
- Sype, *n.* S. scythe, 2553, 2699.
- Tabour, *n.* Fr. tabor, 2329.
- Tale, *n.* S. number, 2026.
- Taleuaces, *n. pl.* Fr. large shields, 2323. See the Note on l. 2320.
- Tarst (so in MS.), 2688; almost certainly an error for *faste*, which appears in the next line. Also, the movements of Godard are compared to the course of lightning.
- Tauhte, *pt. s.* committed, 2214, probably an error for *bitauhte*. See Bitaken.
- Tel, *n.* S. deceit, reproach, 191, 2219. A.S. *tálu*.
- Telle, *v.* S. to count, number, 2615. *Told*, *part. pa.* numbered, esteemed, 1036.
- Tene, *n.* S. grief, affliction, 729.
- Tere, *v.* S. to tar (used *passively*), 707.
- Teth, *n. pl.* S. teeth, 2406.
- Teyte, *adj.* S. 1841, 2331. [Explained "lively" by Coleridge, Stratmann, and Morris, as if from Icel. *teitr*, *hilaris*. This I believe to be completely wrong. The word occurs in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, B. 871, with reference to *tight* lasses, and in l. 1841 of *Havelok* we have a reference to *tight* lads. In l. 2331 it may also mean *flawless*, *staunch*. "*Theet*, *adj.* water-tight. O.N. *piettr* or *pétrr*, *densus*, *solidus*. O. Sw. *thæter*, Sw. Dial. *tjett* or *tjætt*, Dan. *tætt*, Germ. *dicht*. Ihre gives . . . *ett tätt fat*, a flawless vessel. '*Thyht*, hool fro brekyng, not brokyn. *Integer*, *solidus*. Prompt. Parv.'" Atkinson's Glossary of the Cleveland dialect.]
- þa, written for þat, 175.
- þan, þanne, *adv.* S. then, 51, 1044, &c.; when, 226, 248, *et sapius*; than if (*quàm*), 944, 1867.
- þar, *adv.* where (?) 130. See the Note; and cf. þer.
- þare, *adv.* S. there, 2481, 2739. Cf. þer, þore.
- þarne, *v.* to lose, be deprived of, 2492, 2835. *þarnes*, *pr. t.* wants, is deprived of, 1913. *þarned the ded*, 1687; [clearly miswritten for *poled þe ded*, suffered death. The scribe was thinking of *þarned þe lif*; cf. l. 2492.] The verb only exists in the Sax. in the *pt. t.* *þernode*, Chron. Sax. p. 222, ed. Gibs., which is derived by Lye from the Cimbr. *At thuerna*, or *thorna*, *diminui*, *privari*. V. Hickes Thes. i. p. 152. [I. e. it is from the root of the Sw. *tarfva*, Icel. *thurfa*, Goth. *thaurban*, with the *f* dropped, and



- with the addition of the *passive* or *neuter* infinitive-ending denoted by *-ne*, like *-na* in Sw., *-nan* in Mæso-Gothic. See *parrnenn* in Gl. to Ormulum.]
- pas*, *read* Was, 1129. [As *p* at the beginning of a word is never put for *t*, it is not = Sc. *tas*, takes, as some have suggested.]
- paue*, *v. S.* [*paſian*] to grant, 296; bear, sustain, 2696. Ormulum, 5457.
- Thayn, *n. S.* nobleman, 2184. *Thein*, 2466. *Thaynes*, *pl.* 2260. *Theynes*, 2194. See Kayn.
- pe*, *n. S.* thigh, 1950. *phe*, 1984. *pes*, *pl.* 1903. *phes*, 2289.
- pe*, *adv. S.* (*written for per*), there, 142, 476, 863, 933. *Pe with*, therewith, 639. See *per*.
- pe*, *conj. S.* though, 1682. *pei*, 1966. *pey*, 807, 992, 1165, 2501. See *pou*.
- pede*, *n. S.* country, dwelling, 105; place, 2890. Web., Le Bone Flor. 246. R. Br. p. 18. V. Jam.
- pef*, *n. S.* thief, 2434. *peues*, *pl.* 1780.
- pei*, *pron. S.* they, 1020, 1195, &c.
- pei*, *hey*, *conj.* though. See *pe*.
- penke*, *pr. subj. S.* think, 2394. *penkeste*, *pr. t. 2 p.* thinkest thou, 578.
- penne*, *adv. S.* thence, 1185. [Perhaps in l. 777, we should put the comma after *penne*; "when he came thence," &c.]
- per*, *adv. S.* where, 318, 448, &c.; there, *passim*; the place whence, 1740. *Perinne*, therein, 535, &c. *perhinne*, 322. *perof*, *peroffe*, thereof, 372, 466, 1068, &c. *perporu*, by that means, 1098. *pertil*, *perto*, thereto, 396, 1041, 1045. *perwit*, *perwith*, therewith, 1031, 1046. See *pe*, *pore*.
- pere*, *pron. S.* their, 1350.
- perl for þe* erl, the earl, 178.
- bertekene*, 2878. [Coleridge's Glossarial Index has "Thertekene = mark thereto. A.S. *tæcnian*." But this is a very awkward phrase, and I should prefer to suppose *þer-tekene* = by the token, i. e. in token. *Tekene* answers to the Sw. *tecken*, a token; and *þer* is found as a prefix in *P. Plowman* in the phr. *þer-while* = *þe while*, i. e. in the time that. The only difficulty is that *þer* is properly *feminine* (A.S. *þære*), whilst *tecken* in Sw. and *tæcen* in A.S. are *neuter*. In *tokne* (= in token) occurs in Shoreham's poems, ed. Wright, 131.]
- þet*, *conj. S.* that (*quòd*), 330.
- þet*, *pron. S.* that, 879.
- þepe*, *þepen*, *adv. S.* thence, 2498, 2629.
- þeu*, *þewe*, *n. S.* in a servile condition or station, 262, 2205. R. Gl.
- þewes*, *n. pl. S.* manners, 282. *Lazam.*, *Rits. M. R.*, *Web.*, *P. Plowm.*, *Chauc.*, *Gl. Lynds.*, *Percy*, A. R.
- þi*. See *Forþi*.
- þi for þy*, thy, 2725.
- þider*, *adv. S.* thither, 850, 1012, 1021, &c.
- þigge*, *v. S.* [*þicgan*] to beg, 1373. This word is chiefly preserved in the Sc. writers. *Wall.* ii. 259; *Doug. Virg.* 182, 37; *Evergreen*, ii. 199; *Bannatyne Poems*, p. 120; *V. Jam.* in *v.*, who derives it from *Su.-G. tigga*, *Alem. thigen*, *petere*. [See *tigga* in *Ihre*. "Thyggyng or beggyng, *Mendicacio*." *Prompt. Parv.*]
- þis for þise*, these, 1145.
- þisternesse*, *n. S.* darkness, 2191. *Dalden* from *þan flhte*  
*Al bi þustere nihte*.
- Lazam.* l. 7567; cf. *Gen. and Ex.*, 58.
- Thit*, *pp.* 2990. [The rime shews that the *i* is long; and, whether



- the *th* is sounded like *t*, or (which is more likely) the word should have been written *tiht* or *tith*, we may be tolerably confident that it is equivalent to the O.E. *tight* or *tizt*, a pp. signifying *intended, purposed, designed*, which is the exact sense here required. Stratmann gives five instances of it, of which one is—"To brew the Crystene mennys banys Hy hadden *tyght*;" Octovian, 1476.]
- þo*, *pron.* S. those, 1918, 2044.
- þo*, *pron.* thou. See *þu*.
- þo*, *adv.* S. then, 930; when, 1047. *Thow*, 1669.
- þore*, *adv.* S. there, 741, 922, 1014, &c. *Portil*, thereto, 1443. *þorwit*, therewith, 100. See *þe*, *þer*.
- þoru*, *adv.* S. through, 627, 774, 848, &c. *þoruth*, 1065, 2786. *þorw*, 264, 367, 2646. *þuruth*, 52.
- þoruthlike*, *adv.* S. thoroughly, 680.
- þou*, *conj.* S. though, 124, 299, &c. *þo*, 1020. See *þe*.
- þoucte*, *pa. t.* S. thought, 504, 507, &c. *þouthte*, 1073. *þowthe*, 1869. *þouthte*, 1166. *þat god thoucte*, 256, that seemed good. Cf. Sir Tr. pp. 30, 36. And so in MS. Vernon, Bodl.
- Riche metes was forth brouht  
To all men that gode thouht.  
*Disp. betw. a Crystene mon and a Jew*, f. 301.
- [Or, if we read "*þat god him þoucte*," this would mean "that seemed good to him;" cf. l. 197.]
- þouth*, *n.* S. thought, 122, 1190.
- þral*, *n.* S. slave, villain, 527, 684, 1097, 1158, 2564, 2589. In an opprobrious sense, 1408. Sir Tr. p. 175.
- þrawe*, *n.* S. space of time, moment, 276, 1215. Web., Rits. M. R., Rob. Br., Doug. Virg. *þrow*, Chauc., Gower, &c.
- þredde*, *þridde*, *adj.* S. third, 867, 2633.
- þrette*, *pa. t.* S. threatened, 1163.
- þrie*, 730. [In the former edition it is glossed "trouble, affliction; apparently the same as *Tray* or *Treye*;" cf. A.S. *tréga*. But this renders the construction difficult, nor is it clear that *treye* and *þrie* can be identified. Without doubt, the usual meaning of *þrie* is *thrice*, which is easily construed, only it remains to be shewn why *thrice* should be introduced; unless perhaps it signifies *in a threefold degree*.]
- þrinne*, *num.* S. three, 716, 761, 1977, 2091.
- þrist*, *þristen*, *v.* S. to thrust, 1152, 2019, 2725. *þrist*, *part. pa.* thrust, 638.
- þu*, *pron.* S. thou, 527, &c. *þou*, 527, &c. *þo*, 388. *þw* (read *þat þw instead of þw that?*), 1316. *þow*, 1322. *þu*, 2903. It is often joined to the verb which precedes, as *Shaltow, Wiltu*, &c. The *gen.* is *þin*, 1128; the *acc.* is *þe*, 529.
- þurte*, *pt. t. s.* need, might, 10. [It answers to the A.S. *þurfan*, *pt. t. ic þorfte*, Icel. *þurfa*, *pt. t. þurfsti*, Mæso-Goth. *þaurban*, *pt. t. þaurfta*. See Ormulum, l. 16164, and Sir F. Madden's note to *þort* in Gl. to *Will. of Palerne*.]
- þuruth*. See *þoru*.
- þus for þis*, 785, 2586. (*In comp. þus-gate*.)
- Tid*, *n.* S. time, hour, 2100.
- Til*, *prep.* S. to, 141, 762, 864, &c. See *Intil*, *pertil*.
- Til*, *v.* S. to tell, 1348.
- Tilled*, *part. pa.* S. obtained, acquired (lit. drawn, taken), 438. V. Gl. R. Br. in *v. tille*, and see quotation under *Goddot*.
- Tinte*, *pa. t.* S. lost, 2023. Sir Tr. p. 104. V. Jam.

Tirnedden, *pa. t. pl.* S. turned, 603.

Tipandes, *n. pl.* Icel. tidings, 2279.

To-, in composition with verbs, is usually augmentative, or has the force of the Lat. *dis-*. *To-brised*, *part. pa.* very much bruised, 1950. (*See* Brisen.) *To-cruhsse*, *inf.* crush in pieces, 1992. *To-deyle*, *inf.* divide, 2099. (*See* Deled.) *To-drawen*, *part. pa.* dragged or pulled to death, 2001. (*See* Drou.) *To-frusshe*, *inf.* break in pieces, 1993. *To-hewen*, *part. pa.* hewn in pieces, 2001. *To-riuen*, *part. pa.* torn or riven in pieces, 1953. *To-rof*, *pa. t.* burst open, 1792. *To-shiuere*, *inf.* shiver in pieces, 1993. *To-shiuered*, *part. pa.* shivered to pieces, 2667. *To-tere*, *inf.* tear in pieces, 1839. *To-torn*, *part. pa.* torn in pieces, 1948, 2021. *To-tusede*, *part. pa.* entirely rumpled or tumbled, 1948. In one case only we find it to be merely the prep. *to* in composition; viz. in *To-yede*, *pa. t.* went to, 765. (*See* Yede.) [*See* note on this prefix in Gloss. to *William of Palerne*.]

To, *adv.* S. too, 303, 689, 691, &c.

To, *n.* S. toe, 1743, 1847, &c. *Tos*, *pl.* 898, 2163.

To, *num.* S. two, 2664.

To, *prep.* follows its case in ll. 197, 325, 526.

To-frusshe, *v.* Fr. [*froisser*] to dash or break in pieces, 1993.

The Sarezynes layde on with mace,  
And al *to-frussched* hym in the place.

*R. Cœur de L.* 5032. Cf. 5084.

He suld sone be *to-fruschytt* all.

*Barb.* x. 597. So also Doug.

*Virg.* 51, 53. V. Jam. in *v. Frusch.*

Togidere, Togydere, *adv.* S. together, 1128, 1181, 2683, 2891.

Tok, *pa. t.* S. took, 354, 467, 537. *Token*, *pa. t.* 2 p. 1216. *Token*, *pa. t. pl.* 1194. *Token under fote*, 1199.

Told. *See* Telle.

Totede, *pa. t.* peeped, looked, 2106. This verb is thrice found in P. Ploughman's Crede, ll. 142, 168, 339. Although it would appear a rare word from its not appearing in Hearn, Ritson, or Weber, yet in later times it occurs often, and is instanced by Jamieson from Paten's Account of Somerset's Expedition, p. 53, and by Nares from Hall, Latimer, Spenser, and Fairfax. It also occurs four times in the *Ancren Riwle*, ed. Morton, 1853. In Sc. it is pronounced *Tete*, which is derived by Jam. from the same stock as Su.-G. *titt-a*, explained by Ihre, "Per transennam veluti videre, ut solent curiosi, aut post tegmina latentes." V. the authorities quoted, Todd's Johns. and Wilbr. Gl. [Cf. Sw. *titta*; Dan. *tittle*, to peep; Dan. *tittlege*, to play at bopeep.]

To-tusede, *part. pa.* entirely rumpled or tumbled, 1948. *See* Nares, in *v. Tose*, and *Tousle*, *Toozle*, in Jam., Brockett, &c. Cf. G. *zausen*.

Toun, *n.* S. town, 1750, &c. *Tun*, 764, 1001, &c. *Tunes*, *pl.* 1444, 2277.

Tour, *n.* Fr. tower, 2073.

Tre, *n.* S. a bar or staff of wood, 1022, 1821, 1843, 1882, &c. *Doretre*, 1806, 1968, bar of the door.

Trewe, *adj.* S. true, 1756.

Tristen, *v.* to trust, 253.

Tro. *See* Trowe.

Trome, *n.* S. [*truma*] a troop, company, S.

Heo makeden heore sceld-*trome*

*Lazam.* l. 9454.

Bisydes stondeth a feondes *trume*,  
And wailleth hwenne the saules cume.

*Les Unze peyne*, &c. MS. Coll. Jes. 29.

The same mode of expression used above occurs lower down, l. 24,

- "A stalworpi man in a *flok*," which is also found in *Lazamon*, Cador ther wes æc, þe kene wes on *flocke*.—l. 23824. And in *Sir Guy*, H. iii. Then came a knight that hight Sadock, A doughty man in every *flock*.  
 Trone, *n.* Lat. throne, 1316.  
 Trowe, *n.* S. to believe, trust, 1656. *Tro*, 2862. *Trowede*, *pa. t.* believed, 382. Sir Tr. p. 41.  
 Trusse, *v.* Fr. [*trousser*] to pack up, to truss, 2017. R. Gl. Hence to *make ready*, K. Alisaund. 7006. Minot, p. 50, which Ritson was unable to explain.  
 Tuenti, *num.* S. twenty, 259.  
 Tumberel, *n.* a porpoise, 757. In Spelm. *Timberellus* is explained, a small whale, on the authority of Skene, Vocab. Jur. Scot. L. Forest, *Si quis cetum*. In Cotgr. also we find "*Tumbe*, the great Sea-Dragon, or Quadraver; also the Gurnard, called so at Roan." [But the Sw. *tumlare*, a porpoise, *lit.* a tumbler, suggests that the name may be given from its *tumbling* or *rolling*. The Dan. *tumler*, however, is a dolphin.]  
 Tun. See Toun.  
 Turues, *n. pl.* S. turf, peat, 939. Chauc. C. T. 10109. V. Spelm. in v. and Jennings' Somersetsh. Gl.  
 Twel for Twelve, 2455.  
 Ueneysun, *n.* Fr. venison, 1726.  
 Vmbestonde, *adv.* S. for a while, formerly, 2297.  
     & heo seileden forth,  
     þæt inne sæ heo comen,  
     þa *vmbe stunde*  
     ne sæge heo noht of londe.  
                                     *Lazam.* l. 11967.  
 It is equivalent to *umbe-while* or *vmchile*, Sc. *unquhile*. See Stunde.  
 Umbistode, *pa. t.* S. stood around, 1875. See Bistode, Stonden.  
 Vn-bi-yeden, *pa. t. pl.* S. surrounded, 1842. See Yede.  
 Vnblithe, *adj.* S. unhappy, 141. Sir Tr. p. 171.  
 Unbounden, *pa. t. pl.* S. unbound, 601.  
 Underfong, *pa. t.* S. understood, 115. This sense of the verb is not found elsewhere. It is in the present poem synonymous with *Understod* (as Lat. *accipere*, *percipere*).  
 Understonde, *v.* S. to receive, 2814. *Understod*, *pa. t.* received, 1760. *Understonde*, *pr. subj.* receive, 1159. So in K. Horn, 245, ed. Rits.  
     Horn child thou *vnderstond*,  
     Tech him of harpe and song.  
 where the MS. Laud 108 reads *vnderfonge*. See Lumby's ed. l. 239.  
 Unker, *pron. g. c. dual.* S. of you two, 1882.  
 Unkeueleden, *pa. t. pl.* S. ungagged, 601. See Keuel.  
 Unkyndelike, *adv.* S. unsuitably, 1250.  
 Vnornelike, *adj.* S. basely, or degradingly, 1941. The only word in the Sax. remaining to which it can be referred, is *unornlic*, tritus, Jos. 9. 5. The following instances also approach the same stock:  
     Ne speke y nout with Horne,  
     Nis he nout so *vnorne*.  
                                     *K. Horn*, 337.  
     Mi stefne is bold & noȝt *vnorne*,  
     Ho is ilich one grete horne,  
     & þin is ilieh one pipe.  
                                     *Hule and Niztingale*, l. 317.  
 [Ihre shews that Icel. and Su.-Goth. *orna* mean to acquire vital heat, to grow warm. Hence *unorne* means unfervent, spiritless, feeble, old. Thus, in the *Hule and Niztingale* it means *feeble*, *weak*; in Jos. 9. 5, it is used of *old*, *worn-out* shoes. In the Ormulum, *unorne* occurs frequently, in the sense



of *poor, mean, feeble*; see ll. 827, 3668; also *unnornelig*, meaning *meanly, humbly, obscurely*, in ll. 3750, 4858, 7525, 8251.]

**Unride**, *adj.* S. [*ungereod, ungeryde*] It is here used in various significations, most of which, however, correspond to the senses given by Somner. Large, cumbersome (of a garment), 964; unwieldy (of the bar of a door), 1795; deep, wide (of a wound), 1981, 2673; numerous, extensive (of the nobility), 2947. *Unrideste*, *sup.* deepest, widest, 1985. In the second sense we find it in Sir Tristr. p. 167,

Dartes wel *unride*  
Beliagog set gan.

And in *Guy of Warwick*, ap. Ellis, M. R. V. 2, p. 79.

A targe he had ywrought full well,  
Other metal was ther none but steel,

A mickle and *unrede*.

In the fourth sense we have these examples:

Opou Ingland for to were  
With stout ost and *unride*.

*Horn Childe*, ap. Rits. M. R. V. 3, p. 283.

Schir Rannald raugh to the renk  
ane rout wes *unryde*.

*Sir Gaw. and Gol.* ii. 25.

The soudan gederet an ost *unryde*.  
*K. of Tars*, 142.

Cf. also *Sir Guy*, Ee. iv. in Garriek's Collect. 'Ameraunt drue out a swerde *unryde*.' In the sense of huge, or unwieldy, we may also understand it in Sir Tr. p. 148, 164; *Guy of Warw.* ap. Ell. M. R. V. 2, p. 78; *Horn Childe*, ap. Rits. V. 3, p. 295. In R. Brunne, p. 174, it expresses loud, tremendous. Sir W. Scott and Hearn are both at fault in their Glossaries, and even Jamieson has done but little to set them right, beyond giving the true derivation, and then, under the cognate word *Unrude*, Doug. Virg. 167, 35, &c., errs from pure love of theory.

**Vnrith**, *n.* S. injustice, 1369.

**Unwrast**, **Unwraste**, *adj.* S. [*unwræste*] feeble, worthless, 2521; rotten, 547. This word occurs in the Saxon Chron. 168, 4 (ed. Thorpe, p. 321), applied to a rotten ship, and this appears to have been the original meaning. The sense in which it was subsequently used may be learnt by comparing *Lazam.* ll. 13943, 29609; R. Gl. p. 586; Chron. of Engl. 662, 921; *Ly Beaus Desc.* 2118 (not explained by Rits.); K. Alisaund. 878; R. *Cœur de L.* 872, and *Sevyn Sages*, 1917. It is not found in Jam. Cf. A.S. *wræst*, firm.

**Uoyz**, *n.* Lat. voice, 1264.

**Vre**, *pron.* S. our, 13, 596, &c.

**Vt**, *prep.* S. out, 89, 155, &c.  
*Uth*, 346, 1178.

**Ut-bidde**. See *Bidd*.

**Ut-drawe**, **Ut-drawn**, **Vt-drow**,  
**Ut-drowen**. See *Drou*.

**Uten**, *prep.* S. out, exhausted, 842; without, foreign, as in *Utenladdes*, 2153, 2580, foreigners.

**Ut-lede**. See *Lede*.

**Utrage**, *n.* S. outrage, 2837.

**W**. See *Hw*.

**Wa**, *n.* S. woe, wail, 465.

**Wade**, *v.* S. Lat. to pass, go, 2645.  
*Wed*, 2387, 2641. Vid. Nares.

**Wagge**, *v.* S. to wield, brandish, 89.

**Waiten**, **Wayte**, **Wayten**, *v.* Fr. to watch, 512, 1754, 2070. Chauc. Cf. O.Fr. *gaiter*.

**Waken**, *v.* S. to watch, 630.  
*Waked*, *part. pa.* watched, kept awake, 2999. See R. Br., Sq. of L. D. 852. Chauc.

**Wakne**, *v.* S. to wake, awaken, 2164.

**Wan**, *adv.* S. when, 1962.



- War, *adj.* S. aware, wary, 788, 2139.
- Warie, *v.* S. to curse, 433. *Waried*, *part. pa.* cursed, 434. Emare, 667. *Wery*, Minot, p. 7. *Warrie*, Chauc. See Gl. Lynds.
- Warp, *pa. t.* S. threw, cast, 1061.  
 Al swa feor swa a mon  
 Mihte *werpen* ænne stan.  
*Lazam.* l. 17428.  
 So in Sc. Doug. Virg. 432, and  
 Barb. iii. 642. V. Jam.
- Washen, *v.* S. to wash, 1233.
- Waste *for* Was þe, 87.
- Wastel, *n.* Fr. cake, or loaf made of finer flour, 878. *Wastels*, *pl.* 779. See Todd's Illustr. of Chauc., who derives the name from *wastell*, the vessel or basket in which the bread was carried. V. Du Cange, Spelm. Jam. In Pegge's Form of Cury, p. 72, 159, we meet with *Wastels yfarced*.
- Wat, *pron.* See Hwat.
- Wat, *v.* See Quath.
- Wat, *pp.* known, 1674. See Wot.
- Wawe, *n.* S. wall, 474, 2470.  
 The phrase *bith wawe*, 474, is also found in Rits. A.S. p. 46, which is left unexplained by the Editor, and is badly guessed at by Ellis. By the aid of Moor's Suffolk Gl. we are enabled to ascertain the meaning of an expression which is not yet obsolete. "By the walls." Dead and not buried. "A' lie bi' the walls"—said, I believe, only of a human subject. [This remark only applies to l. 474. In ll. 1963, 2470, the phrase refers to the benches placed round the walls in the great hall, whereon men slept at night, and sat in council by day.] *Wowe*, 1963, 2078. Still so pronounced in Lanc., &c.
- Waxen. See Wex.
- Wayke, *adj. pl.* S. weak, 1012.
- Wayte, Wayten. See Waiten.
- We, 115, 287, 392, 772. Apparently an error of the scribe for *wel*, but its frequent repetition may cause it to be doubted, whether the *l* may not have been purposely dropped.
- Wede, *v.* See Wade.
- Wede, *n.* S. clothing, garments, 94, 323, 861. In very general use formerly, and still preserved in the phrase, a widow's *weeds*.
- Weddeth *for* Wedded, 1127.
- Wei, Weie, *n.* S. way, road, 772, 952.
- Weilawa, Weilawei, *interj.* S. woe! alas! 462, 570. See Gl. Sir Tr., Rits. M. R., and Chauc. [A.S. *wá la wá*, woe, lo! woe; now corrupted into *wellaway*.]
- Wel, *adv.* S. full, *passim.* *Wel sixti*, 1747; *wel o-bon*. See On. *Wel with me*, 2878. *Wol*, 185.
- Wel, *n.* S. weal, wealth, prosperity (*for wel ne for wo*), 2777.
- Welde, *v.* S. to wield, govern (a kingdom), 129, 175; (a weapon), 1436; (possessions), 2034. *Weldes*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* wieldest, governest, 1359.
- Wende, *v.* S. to go, 1346, 1705, 2629. *Wenden*, *pr. t. pl. subj.* 1344. *Wende*, *pr. t. pl.* 2 *p.* go, 1440. *Wend*, *part. pa.* turned, 2138.
- Wene, *v.* S. *pres. sing.* ween, think, 655, 840, 1260, &c. *Wenes*, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* thinkest, 598. *Wenestu*, 1787, thinkest thou. *Wend*, *Wende*, *pa. t.* thought, 374, 524, 1091, 1803, &c. *Wenden*, *pa. t. pl.* 1197, 2547.
- Wepen, *pr. t.* or *pa. t. pl.* S. weep, wept, 401.
- Wepne, *n.* S. weapon, 89, 490, 1436, &c.
- Wer *for* Were, 1097.
- Werd, *n.* S. world, 1290, 2241, 2335, 2792, 2968. *O worde*, in the

- world, 1349. Cf. *Ward* = world, in *Lancelot of the Laik*, and *Gen. and Exod.* ed. Morris, ll. 280, 591.
- Were, *v.* S. [*werian*] to defend, 2152, 2298. Sir Tr. p. 156; Yw. and Gaw. 2578; Horn Childe, ap. Rits. M. R., V. 3, p. 289; K. of Tars, 189; Chauc. C. T. 2552, V. Note, p. 182. *Werie*, K. Horn, ed. Lumby, 785, Web., Minot, Gl. Lynds.
- Were, should be, 2782. *Weren*, 3 *p. pl.* were, 156, &c.
- Weren, 784. Sir F. Madden says—Garnett conjectured *weirs* or dams, from Isl. *ver*. If *weren* be really a plural noun, I should prefer to translate it by *pools*; cf. A.S. *war*, Icel. *ver*, Su.-Goth. *wär*. Ihre says—"Wär, locus, ubi congregari amant pisces, ut solent inter brevia et vada. Isl. *ver*, *fisk-aver*. A.S. id. unde *ver-hurde* apud Bens. *custos septi piscatorii*, Angl. *wier*, *wear*, &c." See *wer* in Strattmann. In this case the line means—"in the sea-pools he often set them," and the note on the line (q.v.) is wrong.
- Werewed, *part. pa.* S. worried, killed, 1915. [We should probably insert a mark of interrogation, thus—"Hwat dide he? þorc weren he werewed," i.e. "What did they effect? There were they slain."] Spelt *wirwed*, 1921. Cf. Du. *worgen*, and see Jam. s. v. *Wery*, and *Worry* in Atkinson's Gl. of Cleveland dialect.]
- Werne, *v.* S. to refuse, deny, 1345. *Werne*, *pr. t.* 3 *p. s. subj.* refuses, forbids, 926. Sir Tr. p. 88; K. Horn, 1420, &c.
- Wesseyl, *n.* S. wassail, 1246.
- Wesseylen, *pr. t. pl.* wassail, 2098. *Wosseyled*, *part. pa.* 1737. See Rits. A.S. Diss. p. xxxiii. n. Hearne's Gl. to R. Glouc. in v. *Queme* and *Wasseyl*, Selden's Notes on Drayton's Polyolb. p. 150, and Nares.
- Wex, *pa. t.* S. waxed, grew, 281. *Waxen*, *part. pa.* grown, 302, 791.
- Wicke, Wike, Wikke, *adj.* S. wicked, vile, 66, 319, 425, 665, 688, &c. *Swithe wicke*, 965, very mean. *Swipe wikke clothes*, 2458, very mean clothing. *Wicke wede*, 2825, mean clothing.
- Wieth, With, *n.* S. [*wiht*] whit, bit, small part, 97, 1763, 2500. Lazam. l. 15031; Sevyng Sages, 293. 'The loue of hire ne lesteth no *wyht* longe,' MS. Harl. 2253, f. 128.
- Wieth, With, *adj.* courageous, stout, active, 344, 1008, 1064, 1651, 1692, &c. *Wicteste*, *sup.* 9. An epithet used universally by the ancient poets, and to be found in every Gloss. merely differing in orthography, as spelt *Waite*, *Wate*, *Wight*, *Wich*, &c. [Sir F. Madden suggests a derivation from A.S. *hwæt* (Icel. *hvátr*), acute, brave. Wedgwood suggests Sw. *vig*, nimble. Cf. Su.-Goth. *wig*, Icel. *vigr*, fit for war (A.S. *wig*).]
- Wider, *adv.* S. whither, where, 1139.
- Widuen, Wydues, *n. pl.* S. widows, 33, 79.
- Wif, *n.* S. wife, 2860; woman, 1713. *Wiues*, *pl.* 2855.
- Wike, Wikke. See Wicke.
- Wil, *adv.* S. while, 6.
- Wil, *adj.* lost in error, uncertain how to proceed, 863; at a loss, without experience, 1042. Wynt. vi. 13, 115. V. Jam. who derives it from Su.-G. *wild*, Isl. *villr*. It is radically the same with *wild*.
- Wile, will, 352, 485, &c. *Wilde*, 528, 1135, wilt thou; *Wiltu*, 681, 905. *Wilen*, *pl.* 732, 920, 1345, 2817, &c.
- Wille, *n.* S. will, 528.
- Wimman, *n.* S. woman, 1139, 1168, &c. *Wman*, 281. *Wymman*, 1156.

- Win, *n.* S. wine, 1729. *Wyn*, 2341.
- Winan, *v.* S. to get to, arrive at, 174. V. Gl. to *Will. of Palerne*.
- Winne, *n.* S. joy, gain, 660, 2965. *Muchere winne*, La;am. l. 10233. Horn Childe, ap. Rits. M. R., V. 3, p. 294.
- Wirchen, *v.* S. to work, cause, 510.
- Wirwed. *See* Werewed.
- Wis, *adj.* S. wise, prudent, 180, 1421, 1635; skilled, 282.
- Wislike, *adv.* S. wisely, 274.
- Wisse, *v.* S. to direct, ordain, advise, 104, 361. Sir Tr. p. 29; K. Horn, Chron. of Engl. 499; Chauc., Gl. Lynds.
- Wissing, *n.* S. advice, or conduct, 2902.
- Wiste, *pa. t.* S. knew, 115, 358, 541, &c. *Wisten*, *pa. t. pl.* 1184, 1187, 1200, &c.
- Wit, *prep.* S. with, 52, 505, 701, 905, 1090, 2517, &c.; by, 2489. *Wituten*, 179, 247, 2860, without. *Withuten*, 425, except. *With than*, provided that, 532. *With that*, 1220.
- Wite, *v.* S. [*witan*, discernere] *pres. subj. or imp.* decree, ordain, 19, 1316.
- Wite, *v.* S. *pres. subj. or imp.* preserve, guard, defend, 405, 559. R. Gl. p. 98, 102. So in the *Car-men inter Corpus & Animam*, MS. Digb. 86.  
The king that al this world shop  
thoru his holi miȝtte,  
He *wite* houre soule from then  
heuele wiȝtte.  
And in the French Romance of  
Kyng Horn, MS. Harl. 527, f. 72,  
b. c. 2.  
Ben iurez *Wite God*, kant auerez  
beu tant,  
Kant le vin uus eschaufe, si seez  
si iurant.
- Wite, Witen, *v.* S. [*witan*, cognoscere] to know, 367, 625, 2201, 2786; to recollect, 2708. *Wite*, *pr. t. pl.* 2 p. know, 2808; *imp.* 3 p. *wite*, know, 517. *Wite*, 3 p. *s. subj.* (if) he know, 694. *Witen*, *pr. t. pl.* 2 p. know, 2208. *See* Wot.
- With, *conj.* *See* Wit.
- With, *n.* *See* Wieth.
- With, *adj.* *See* Wieth.
- With, *adj.* S. white, 48, 1144.
- With-sitten, *v.* S. to oppose, 1683. R. Br., Web.
- Wlf, *n.* S. wolf, 573.
- Wluine, *n.* S. she-wolf, 573. Dan. *ulfinde*, a she-wolf.
- Wman. *See* Wimman.
- Wnden, *part. pa.* S. wound, 546.
- Wo, *pron.* S. who, whoso, 76, 79, &c. *See* Hwo.
- Wo, *n.* S. woe, sorrow, 510, &c.
- Wod, *adj.* S. mad, 508, 1777, 1848, &c. *Wode*, *pl.* 1896, 2361.
- Wok, *pa. t.* S. awoke, 2093.
- Wol. *See* Wel.
- Wole, will, 1150. *Wolde*, would, 354, 367, &c. *Wode*, 951, 2310. *Wolden*, *pl.* 456, 514, 1057.
- Wombes, *n. pl.* S. bellies, 1911.
- Wom so, *pron.* S. whomso, 197.
- Won, Wone, great number, plenty, in *phr. ful god won*, in great quantity (*in 1791 it seems to mean with great force*), 1024, 1791, 1837, 1907, 2325, 2617, 2729. R. Gl., Horn Childe, ap. Rits. M. R., V. 3, p. 308, 314; R. Cœur de L. 3747; K. Alisaund. 1468; K. of Tars, 635; Minot, p. 14; Chauc. *Wane*, Yw. and Gaw. 1429; *Wayn*, Wall. viii. 947. Cf. Gl. to *Will. of Palerne*.
- Wone, *n.* S. (probably the same as *ween*, Sir Tr. p. 59, 78), opinion, conjecture, 1711, 1972. Cf. l. 816, and the Glossaries, in *v. Wene*.



- Wone, *v. S.* to dwell, 247, 406.  
*Woneth, pr. t. 3 p.* dwelleth, 105.
- Wone, *part. pa.* wont, 2151, 2297. K. Horn, 36; R. Gl. Chron. of Engl. 632; Web., Chauc. [A.S. *wune*, a custom.]
- Wonges, *n. pl. S.* fields, plains, 397, 1444. Cf. l. 1360. Spelman thinks arable land is meant by the term, rather than pasture.
- Wore, 2 and 3 *p. s.* were, 504, 684, &c. *Wore, Woren, pl.* 237, 448, &c. It is not merely a licentious spelling, as conjectured by Sir W. Scott.
- Worpe, *v. S. imp.* may he be, 1102, 2873. *Wrth*, 434. *Wurpe*, 2221. Lajam. l. 28333. Sir Tr. p. 49, and all the Gloss., including Lynds.
- Wosseyled. See Wesseylen.
- Wot, Woth, *pr. t. 1 p. S.* know, 119, 213, 653, 1345, &c. *Wost, pr. t. 2 p.* knowest, 527, 582, 1384, &c. *Woth, pr. t. 3 p.* knows, 2527. *Wot, pl. 1 p.* know, 2503. *Wat, part. pa.* known, 1674.
- Wowe. See Wawe.
- Wrathe, *n. S.* wrath, anger, 2719, 2977. See Wroth
- Wreieres, *n. pl. S.* betrayers, spoilers, 39.  
 The *wraiers* that weren in halle,  
 Schamly were thai schende.  
*Sir Tristr.* p. 190.
- Wreken, *v. S.* to avenge, revenge, 327, 1901. *Wreke, imp.* revenge (thou), 1363. *Wreken (miswritten for wreke)*, 3 *p. imp.* 544. *Wreke, pr. pl. subj.* 1884. *Wreke, Wreken, part. pa.* revenged, 2368, 2849, 2992. Sir Tr. p. 190, &c.
- Wringen, *v. S.* to wring, 1233.
- Writ, *n. S.* writing, 2486. *Writes, pl.* writs, letters, 136, 2275.- See note to l. 136.
- Wrobberes, *n. pl. S.* robbers, 39.
- Wros, *n. pl.* corners, 68. So in the *Leg. of S. Margrete*, quoted by Dr Leyden:  
 Sche seije a wel fouler thing  
 Sitten in a *wro*;  
 which Jamieson aptly derives from the Su.-G. *wraa*, angulus. Cf. Dan. *wraa*, a nook, corner.
- Wroth, *adj. S.* wrath, angry, 1117. *Wrope*, 2973. See Wrathe.
- Wrouht, *pa. t. S.* wrought, 2810. *Wrouth*, 1352. *Wrowht*, 2453.
- Wrth. See Worth.
- Wunde, *n. S.* wound, 1980, 2673, &c. *Wounde*, 1978. *Wundes, pl.* 1845, 1898, 1986. *Woundes*, 1977, &c.
- Wurpe. See Worpe.
- Y, *pron. I.* See Ich.
- Ya, *adv. S.* yea, yes, 1888, 2009, 2607. *Ye*, 2606. See Rits. note to Yw. and Gaw. l. 43. In l. 2009, we should probably have found *yis* in a more southern work. See the note to *zis* in Gl. to *Will. of Palerne*. The distinction between *no* (l. 1500) and *nay* (l. 1136) is rightly made.
- Yaf. See Yeue.
- Yare, *adj. S.* ready, 1391, 2788, 2954. Sir Tr. p. 28; Rits. M. R., Web., Chauc., Gl. Lynds.
- Yaren, *v. S.* to make ready, 1350. This word in all the Gloss. has the form of *Farken*.
- Yede, *pa. t. S.* went, 6, 774, 821, &c. *Yeden, pa. t. pl.* 889, 952.
- Yeft. See Giue.
- Yelde, *v. S.* to yield, 2712; *imp.* 3 *p.* requite, 803. Very common formerly in this sense. *Yeld, imp.* yield (thou), 2717.
- Yeme, *v. S.* to take charge of, govern, 131, 172, 182, 324, &c. *Yemede, pa. t.* governed, 975, 2276. Sir Tr. p. 115, Rits. M. R., Web., R. Gl., Chauc.
- Yen. See Agen.



- Yerne, *adv.* S. eagerly, anxiously, 153, 211, 880, 925. Web., Rits. M. R., Chauc.
- Yerne, *v.* S. to desire earnestly, 299. Lazam. l. 4427. K. Horn, 1419; R. Br., Chauc., Gl. Lynds.
- Yete, *adv.* S. yet, 495, 973, 996, 1043.
- Yeue, *v.* S. to give, 298, &c. *Yeueth*, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* giveth, 459. *Yif*, *imp.* give (thou), 674; 3 *p.* yeue, 22; *pl.* yeueþ, 911. *Yaf*, *pa. t.* gave, or gave heed, 315, 419, &c. *Gaf*, 218, 418, 1311, &c. *Gouen*, *pa. t. pl.* 164 (in phr. *gouen hem ille*, gave themselves up to grief); Sir Tr. p. 129. *Giue*, *part. pa.* 2488; *gouen*, 220. *Youenet* = *Youen it*, given it, 1643. For *yaf* in l. 1174, see note on the line.
- Y-here. See Here, *v.*
- Yif, *prep.* S. if, 126, 377, 1974, &c. *If*, 1189.
- Yif. See Yeue.
- Y-lere. See Lere.
- Ynow. See Inow.
- Youenet. See Yeue.
- Ys. See note to l. 1174.
- Yuel, Yuele. See Iuele.
- Yunge, *adj.* S. young, 368, &c.
- Yure, *pron.* S. your, 171.

## INDEX OF NAMES TO "HAUELOK."

---

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are in general to the *pages* of the book; otherwise, the references are to the *lines* of the poem.]

- ATHELWOLD** (*spelt* Aþelwald, l. 1077), is king of England, and governs wisely, pp. 2, 3; feels he is dying, p. 4; bequeaths his daughter to the care of Godrich, pp. 6, 7; dies, p. 8. (Mentioned again in ll. 2709, 2803.)
- Auelok**, *another spelling of* Hauelok, 1395, 1793.
- BERNARD BRUN** (i. e. Bernard Brown; so called in ll. 1751, 1945), provides a supper for Havelok, p. 48; his house attacked by thieves, p. 49; fights against them, p. 52; tells Ubbe how well Havelok fought, p. 54.
- BERTRAM** (*named in* l. 2898), is cook to the Earl of Cornwall, and employs Havelok, pp. 27, 28; is made Earl of Cornwall, and marries Levice, Grim's daughter, p. 83.
- BIRKABEYN** (*spelt* Bircabein, l. 494; *gen.* Birkabeynes, 2150, 2209, 2296), is king of Denmark, p. 11; commends his three children to Godard, p. 12; dies, p. 13; his son Havelok's resemblance to him, p. 60.
- Cestre** (Chester), 2607, 2859, 2896.
- Cornwayle** (Cornwall), 178, 2908; Cornwalic, 884.
- Crist**, 16, &c.;—krist, 22; *gen.* kristes, 2797.
- Dauy**, seint, 2863.
- Denemark** (Denmark), 340, 381, 386, &c.
- Denshe**, *sing. adj.* Danish, 1403; *pl.* 2575, 2693, 2938. **Danshe**, 2689.
- Douere** (Dover), 139, 265. **Doure**, 320.
- Engelond** (England), 59, 202, 250, &c.;—Engellond, 1093;—Engelonde, 208;—Englond, 1270;—Engeland, 108, 610;—Hengelond, 999; *gen.* Engellondes, 63.
- Englishe**, *pl. adj.* (*followed by men*), 2766, 2795;—Englis (*used absolutely*), 254;—Henglishe, 2945.
- Giffin** [*Qu.* Griffin] Galle, 2029.
- GODARD** (*gen.* Godardes, l. 2415), is made regent of Denmark, pp. 12, 13; shuts up Birkabeyn's children in a castle, p. 13; kills Swanborow and Helfled, p. 15; spares Havelok, p. 16; but afterwards hires Grim to drown Havelok, p. 17; is attacked by Havelok, p. 67; is taken prisoner, p. 68; condemned, flayed, drawn, and hung, pp. 70, 71.

- GODRICH (*spelt* Godrigh, l. 178), is Earl of Cornwall, p. 6; is made regent of England, pp. 7, 8, 9; shuts Goldborough up in Dover castle, p. 10; makes Goldborough marry Havelok, p. 33; raises an army against Havelok, p. 72; excites his men, p. 73; marches to Grimsby, p. 74; fights with Ubbe, p. 75; fights with Havelok, pp. 77, 78; is taken prisoner, p. 78; taken to Lincoln, and burnt alive, pp. 80, 81.
- GOLDEBORU (*or* Goldeborw, l. 2985), is daughter of King Athelwold, p. 4; is committed to the care of Godrich, pp. 8, 9; shut up in Dover castle, p. 11; is sent for to Lincoln, p. 33; is married to Havelok, p. 36; hears an angel's voice, p. 39; encourages Havelok to go to Denmark, p. 41; rejoices at Godrich's death, p. 81; is queen of England, p. 85. *See* Havelok.
- GRIM, a fisher, is hired by Godard to drown Havelok, p. 17; discovers Havelok to be the right heir to the crown, p. 19; takes Havelok over to England, p. 20; founds Grimsby, p. 23; sends Havelok to Lincoln, p. 26; dies, p. 37. [In l. 2333, there seems to be an allusion to a spectacle, in which the history of Grim is represented.]
- Grimes, *gen. c. of* Grim, 1343, 1392, 2867.
- Grimesbi, 745, 2540, 2579, 2617, 2619;—Grimesby, 1202.
- Gunnild (daughter of Grim, marries Earl Reyner of Chester), 2866, 2896.
- Gunter (an English earl), 2606.
- HAUELOK, son of king Birkabeyn of Denmark, p. 13; spared by Godard, p. 16; but given over by him to Grim to be drowned, p. 17; spared and fed by Grim, p. 20; goes to England, p. 22; sells fish, p. 25; works as a porter, p. 27; puts the stone, p. 31; marries Goldborough, p. 35; returns to Grimsby, p. 36; his dream, p. 39; returns to Denmark, p. 43; trades there, p. 44; is noticed by Ubbe, p. 45; defends Bernard's house against thieves, pp. 48—53; is known to be heir of Denmark by a miraculous light, p. 60; is dubbed knight by Ubbe, p. 65; is king of Denmark, p. 66; defeats Godard, p. 68; invades England, p. 72; defeats Godrich, p. 77; rewards Bertram and others, p. 82; lives to be a hundred years old, p. 83; is crowned king of England at London, p. 84; is king for sixty years, p. 85. [The story is called "*þe gest of Hauelok and of Goldeborw*," l. 2985.]
- Helfled (Havelok's sister), 411.
- Hengelonde (England), 999.
- Henglishe (*pl.* English), 2945.
- Humber (the river), 733.
- Huwe Rauen (one of Grim's sons), 1398, 1868, 2349, 2636, 2677; *spelt* Hwe, 1878.
- Iohan, seint; the patron saint to whom Havelok commits his Danes, 2957; bi seint Iohan! 1112, 2563. *Spelt* Ion, 177.
- Iudas, 319, 425, 1133.
- Lazarun (= Lazarum, *acc. of* Lazarus), 331. Cf. "*Lord*"—said Guy—"that reared *Lazaroun*," &c. Guy of Warwick, in Ellis, *Met. Rom.* (ed. Halliwell), p. 227.
- Leue (Grim's wife), 558, 576, 595, 642.
- Leuiue (Grim's daughter, married to Bertram), 2914.
- Lincolne, 773, 847, 862, 980, 1105, 2558, 2572, 2824.
- Lindeseye (N. part of Lincolnshire), 734.
- Lundone (London), 2943.

Marz (March), 2559.

Reyner (earl of Chester), 2607.

Roberd þe rede (Grim's eldest son), 1397, 1686, 1888, &c.; — Robert, 2405, 2411, &c.; *gen.* Roberdes, 1691.

Rokesborw (explained by Prof. Morley to mean Rokeby, but it is surely Roxburgh), 265; — Rokesburw, 139. Roxburgh is spelt *Rokesburgh* in Walsingham, ed. Riley, i. 340, &c.

Sathanas (Satan), 1100, 1134, 2512.

Swanborow (Havelok's sister), 411.

UBBE, a great Danish lord, p. 44; entertains Havelok, p. 45; takes him to his castle, p. 57; does homage to Havelok, p. 63; dubs him knight, p. 65; his combat with Godrich, p. 75; is sorely wounded, p. 76.

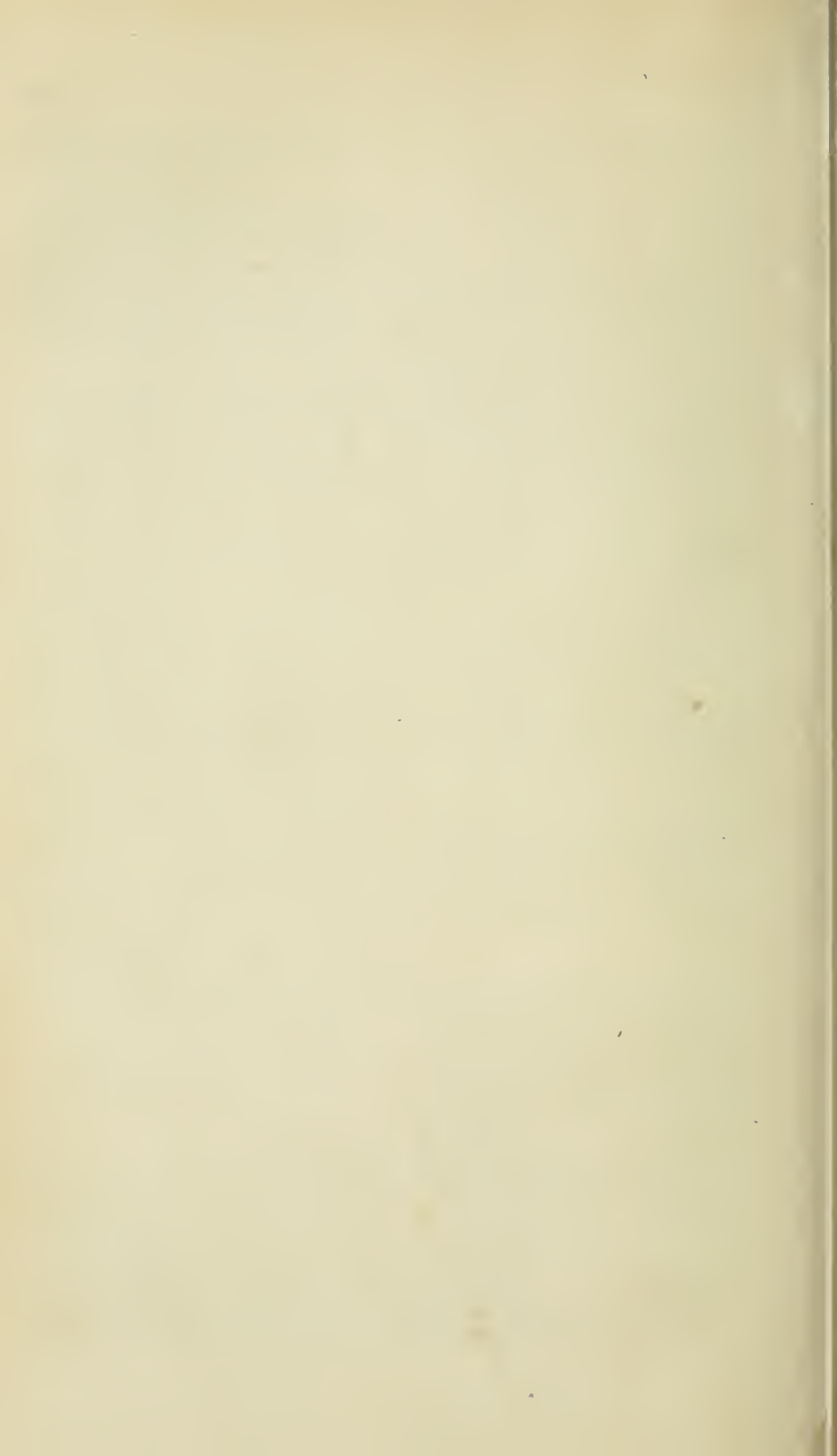
Willam Wendut (one of Grim's sons), 1690, 1881, 1892, 2348, 2632; — Wiliam Wenduth, 1398.

Winchestre, 158, 318.

Yerk (York), 1178.

Ynde, India, 1085.









PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

PR  
2065  
H3  
1868

Havelok the Dane  
The lay of Havelok the  
Dane

46



